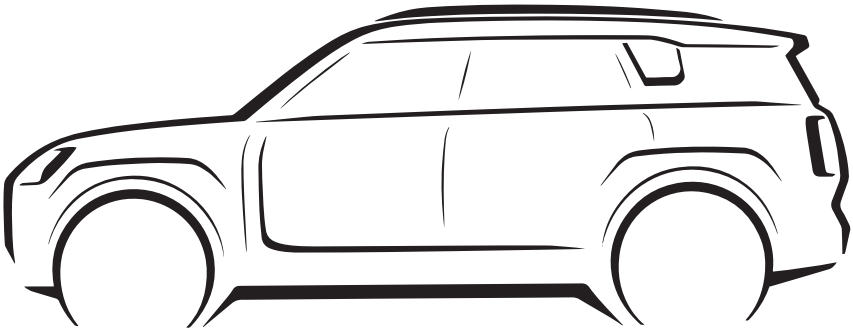
CONTENT

A-Z

OWNER'S MANUAL.
MINI COUNTRYMAN.



Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

WELCOME TO MINI.

OWNER'S MANUAL.

Thank you for choosing a MINI.
The more familiar you are with the vehicle, the better control you will have on the road.
Read the Owner's Manual before you start driving your new vehicle. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of your vehicle's technical features. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and traffic safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of the vehicle.
At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. The Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information after the vehicle software is updated, e.g., after a MINI Remote Software Upgrade.
Get started now. We wish you driving fun and inspiration with your MINI.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

The Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information after the vehicle software is updated, e.g., after a MINI Remote Software Upgrade.

Notes

Information 6

Quick reference

Getting in 18
Set-up and use 21
On the road 24

Controls

Dashboard 32
Sensors of the vehicle 36
Operating state of the vehicle 41
Display and operating concept 45
MINI Remote Software Upgrade 57
Personal settings 61
Opening and closing 69
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 100
Transporting children safely 115
Driving 122
Displays 139
Light and view 156
Safety 170
Driving stability control systems 216
Driver assistance systems 222
Parking 251
Driving comfort 284
Climate control 285

Interior equipment 297
Storage compartments 307
Cargo area 310

Driving tips

Things to remember when driving 318
Trailer and rear carrier 325
Saving fuel 335

Mobility

Refueling 340
Wheels and tires 342
Engine compartment 374
Operating fluids 377
Preventive maintenance 385
Replacing components 388
Breakdown Assistance 393
Vehicle care 401

Reference

Technical data 408
Appendix 411
Everything from A to Z 412

© 2026 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English IDC II/26, -
Printed on chlorine-free bleached and recyclable paper.

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

General information

This Owner's Manual is provided by BMW of North America, LLC (BMW NA), the exclusive distributor of ;MINI vehicles and parts in the United States, to new MINI motor vehicle purchasers in the United States.

When the term Vehicle manufacturer or a similar reference is used in this Owner's Manual, that term is intended as a reference to BMW NA.

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

For an overview of the vehicle, we recommend reading the Quick Reference Guide in the Owner's Manual.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

Depending on the national-market version, there may be differences between the vehicle's printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual due to updates made after going to print.

Depending on national-market version, information on updates may be provided in the appendix to the vehicle's printed Owner's Manual or in the Safety Booklet.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information, depending on the national-market version.

Before setting off, make sure that the Integrated Owner's Manual is available and up-to-date.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as a printed book from an authorized service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Media at a glance

Principle

The Owner's Manual and information about the vehicle are provided in various ways. Depending on national-market version, the Owner's Manual is provided as follows:

- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Safety booklet.

Depending on availability in the respective country, additional information about the vehicle is provided via the following media:

- Online: driversguide.mini.com.
- In the app: MINI Motorer’s Guide.

The current version can be printed out directly, or a printable version of the Owner's Manual can be downloaded.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Interaction Unit.

Functional requirement

The Integrated Owner's Manual is provided depending on national-market version.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. To select the Integrated Owner's Manual, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Owner's Manual".
2. Select the desired method for accessing the contents.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Selecting context help from a menu

1. To bring up the Context Help menu, press and hold the desired menu option.
2. "General help"

Selecting context help from a Check Control message

Directly from the Check Control message on the Interaction Unit:

"Owner's Manual"

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information, depending on the national-market version.

Before setting off, make sure that the Integrated Owner's Manual is available and up-to-date.

Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, a Safety Booklet may be provided with the vehicle instead of the printed Owner's Manual. If necessary, the printed Owner's Manual can be obtained from Service.

Safety Booklet

The Safety Booklet contains important general instructions and specific safety information.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, a printed Owner's Manual may be provided in the vehicle instead of the Safety Booklet.

MINI Motorer’s Guide app

The app shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

MINI Motorer’s Guide Web

The Driver's Guide website shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may

become available in the future, for specific models. Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

Printable Owner's Manual

The current version can be printed out directly from the following media:

- Online: driversguide.mini.com.
- In the app: MINI Motorer's Guide.

When a Remote Software Upgrade is offered in the vehicle, the contents of the MINI Motorer's Guide app and the MINI Driver's Guide website are also updated.

In addition, a printable version of the Owner's Manual can be downloaded, which reflects the production status of the vehicle.

Supplementary documentation

The media included with the Owner's Manual is supplemented by additional documents, e.g., Supplementary Owner's Manuals, brochures, or inserts. Supplementary Owner's Manuals or brochures contain, for example, information on special models or information that must be communicated in printed form due to legal requirements. Inserts may include different information than that given in the media included with the Owner's Manual. Follow all additional documents that may be enclosed with the onboard literature.

Additional sources of information

Authorized service center

An authorized service center, e.g., a MINI dealer or service center, will be happy to answer any questions.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on MINI, e.g., on technology, are available on the Internet: www.miniusa.com.

Icons and displays

Icons in the Owner's Manual

Icon	Meaning
⚠	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
♻	Recycling information.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
››...‹‹	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. These steps must be carried out in the order shown.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Bulletpoint lists

Items or actions without strict order or alternative options are shown as a bulletpoint list.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Icons on vehicle parts

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models, i.e., model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates equipment, systems and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example due to the following situations:

- Selected optional equipment.
- National-market version or national-market equipment.
- Options for later release and software update.

This also applies to safety functions and systems.

Before starting a journey, verify whether the described equipment or function is available in the vehicle. For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

A claim for the availability of equipment, a system or a function in the vehicle cannot be derived based on the description in the Owner's Manual.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any equipment and models not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to any supplementary documentation included, e.g., Supplementary Owner's Manuals, inserts.

An authorized service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of the vehicle pursues a policy of constant development to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may deviate from those in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

Depending on the national-market version, there may be differences between the vehicle's printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual due to updates made after going to print.

Depending on national-market version, information on updates may be provided in the appendix to the vehicle's printed Owner's Manual or in the Safety Booklet.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information, depending on the national-market version.

Before setting off, make sure that the Integrated Owner's Manual is available and up-to-date.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual and Safety Booklet, if applicable.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. Noncompliance with homologation requirements in a certain country may affect warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Preventive maintenance and repair

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The vehicle manufacturer therefore recommends having corresponding work performed by an authorized service center, e.g., a MINI dealer or service center. If a different repair shop is selected, MINI recommends selecting a workshop that performs corresponding work such as preventive maintenance and repair according to MINI specifications with properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Manual, such workshops are referred to as another qualified service center or repair shop.

If work is not carried out properly, for instance preventive maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damages and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paintwork can lead to a failure or fault of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety hazard.

Parts and accessories

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by the manufacturer of the MINI.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from an authorized service center.

MINI parts and accessories were tested by the manufacturer of the MINI for their safety and suitability in MINI vehicles.

The manufacturer of your vehicle warrants genuine MINI parts and accessories.

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with MINI vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for MINI vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California the California law requires vehicle manufacturers provide the following warning:

WARNING

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- MINI maintenance system.

Maintenance, refer to page 385.
- Maintenance Booklet, available online and accessible via a QR code in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle.

A failure to maintain your vehicle or improper maintenance may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance while driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

MINI USA collects, uses, discloses, or otherwise processes your personal information in accordance with its privacy policy, which is available at https://my.miniusa.com/privacypolicy.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities.

In addition, there are other ways to associate data collected from the vehicle with the driver or vehicle owner, e.g., the MINI Connected account used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

This includes, for example:
- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel RPM, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged seat belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself while the vehicle is being operated. Data is not stored beyond the operating time.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the state of a component, a module, a system, or the surrounding area, for instance:
- Operating states of system components such as fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions on important system components, e.g., lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special driving situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to detect and correct malfunctions, and

helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data in event or fault memories for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The diagnostic socket required by law in the vehicle is used to read out data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Vehicle fault and event memories can be reset by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop when performing repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

This includes, for example:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle operating elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile devices can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile devices at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance, position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, it will enable data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's web page. You may find out more about MINI USA privacy practices on our website, specifically https://my.miniusa.com/privacypolicy. MINI USA may collect, use, disclose, or otherwise process your personal information to provide you with its services. However, you may deactivate optional information collection using your vehicle's Data Privacy menu or completely disable all information collection by calling MINI USA.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of this component is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period from up to 30 seconds, typically less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record the following data, for example:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Data from the event data recorder are recorded by the vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded under normal driving conditions and no personal data, e. g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the recorded data with

the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read the recorded data, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle identification number is located in different places on the vehicle. This chapter describes all possible positions for the series.

Engine compartment

The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Right nameplate

The vehicle identification number is located on the nameplate, on the right side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate

The vehicle identification number is located on the nameplate, on the left side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying MINI of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or MINI of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Getting in

Opening and closing

Vehicle key

Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock the vehicle.
	Lock the vehicle. Pre-conditioning.
	Open the cargo area.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting.

Access to vehicle interior

Unlocking with the vehicle key

To unlock the vehicle using the vehicle key, press the unlock button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings in place, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

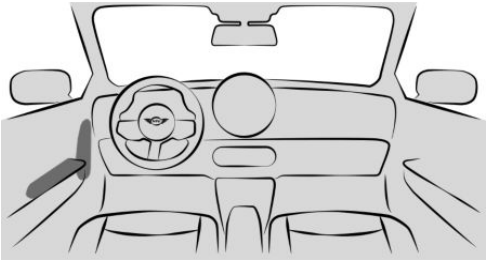
After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

Locking with the vehicle key

1. To lock the vehicle using the vehicle key, close the driver's door.
2. Press the lock button on the vehicle key.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview



The central locking system buttons are located on the driver's door.

The lock button.

The unlock button.

Locking the vehicle from inside

To lock the vehicle from the inside, press the lock button on the driver's door when the doors are closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking the vehicle from inside

To unlock the vehicle from the inside, press the unlock button on the driver's door.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

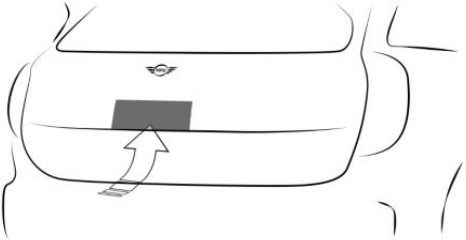
The alarm system can be triggered as follows:

- Press and hold the panic mode button on the vehicle key for at least three seconds.
- Press the panic mode button on the vehicle key three times in quick succession.

To turn off the alarm, press any button.

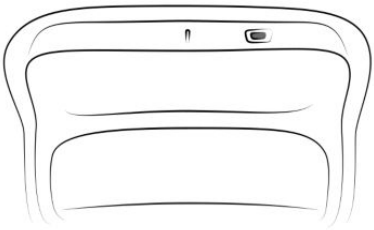
Access to the cargo area

Opening the cargo area



- Unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outer side of the cargo area.
- On the vehicle key, press and hold the open/close button for the cargo area for approx. one second.

Closing the cargo area



Press the button for closing the cargo area on the inside of the tailgate.

Displays, operating elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel

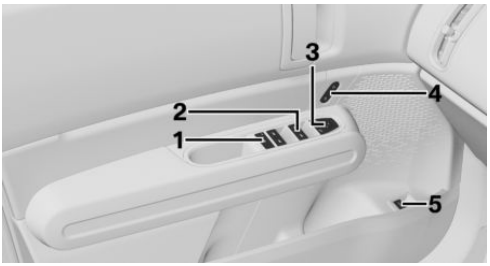
1 Turn signal lever and light
2 Wiper lever
3 Horn

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator/warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

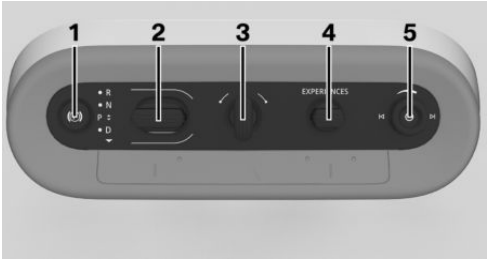
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Driver's door



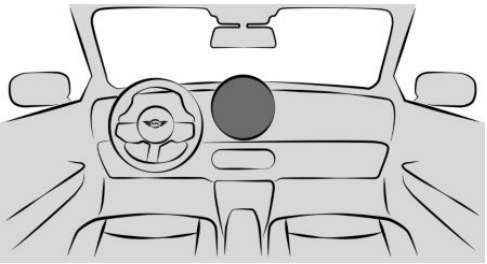
1 Safety switch
2 Power windows
3 Exterior mirror adjustment button
4 Central locking system
5 Cargo area

Switch cluster, MINI Toggle Bar



1 Parking brake
2 Selector lever
3 Start/Stop switch
4 MINI Modes
5 Volume button

MINI Interaction Unit



The Interaction Unit is located on the instrument panel above the center console.

Principle

The Interaction Unit consists of a central round display with functions that can be operated by touch.

The Interaction Unit's main menu is divided into different areas, e.g., menu bar, status information, and widgets.

MINI Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The MINI Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that operates various vehicle functions by means of natural spoken commands.

Activating the voice control system

1. Briefly press the microphone button on the steering wheel.
2. Say the desired command.

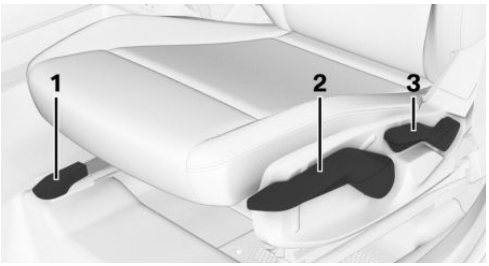
Canceling voice control

– Press the microphone button on the steering wheel again.
– Say the following command: ›Cancel‹

Set-up and use

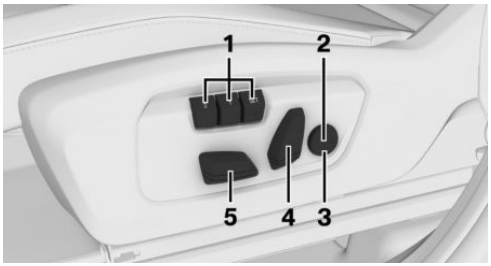
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Manually adjustable seats



1 Longitudinal direction
2 Height
3 Backrest tilt

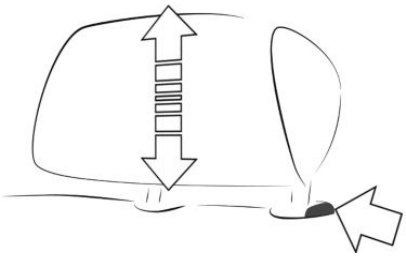
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Memory function
2 Lumbar support
3 Seat massage
4 Backrest tilt
5 Longitudinal direction/height/seat tilt

Adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the height



- To raise the head restraint, push the head restraint upward.
- To lower the head restraint, press the release button on the backrest, then push the head restraint downward, arrow.

Adjusting the distance

The backrest tilt is used to set the distance between the head restraint and the back of the seat occupant's head.

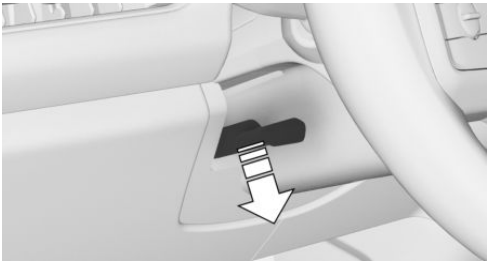
Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

Buttons in the driver's door.

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirrors in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select left exterior mirror. Automatic Curb Monitor.
	Select right exterior mirror.

Adjusting the steering wheel



1. On the steering column, press the release lever all the way down.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and move the steering wheel to a height and angle that suits the seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Infotainment

Navigation and guidance

Guidance can be started via the quick search.

1. Go to the Navigation menu.
2. Select the search field.
3. Enter your desired destination.
4. Start destination guidance.

More information may be displayed.

Entertainment

The following operating elements are provided on the switch cluster and Interaction Unit:

Button	Function
	To adjust the volume, turn the volume control button. To disable the sound output, press the volume control button. Pressing the button again restores the previous volume. To change the radio station or track, push the volume control button once to the left or right.
	Change the entertainment source.

Using a smartphone

Principle

Once a smartphone is paired with the vehicle, this smartphone can be operated using the Interaction Unit and steering wheel buttons.

Enable Bluetooth on the smartphone and the vehicle.

Connecting via Bluetooth®

A smartphone can be paired with the vehicle via Bluetooth.

Google Fast Pair can be used on Android devices that have the necessary software version. To do so, follow the instructions on

the Interaction Unit and on the smartphone display.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Mobile devices" / "Connect new device".

   Devices detected by the vehicle are shown on the Interaction Unit.

   If necessary, select Google Fast Pair on the smartphone display and follow the instructions on the smartphone. Steps 2 and 3 can then be skipped.
2. Select the desired smartphone.
3. Compare the control number shown on the Interaction Unit with the control number shown on the smartphone and make sure that they match.
4. Depending on the smartphone, select the connection mode, e.g., Bluetooth, as necessary.
5. Select the desired function as necessary, e.g., telephone or Bluetooth audio.

The smartphone is connected and shown in the device list.

Accepting a call

A call can be answered as follows:

– Via the Interaction Unit:

  "Accept"

– Press the telephone button on the steering wheel.

The call is conducted via the vehicle's hands-free system.

Dialing a number

To dial a number, proceed as follows:

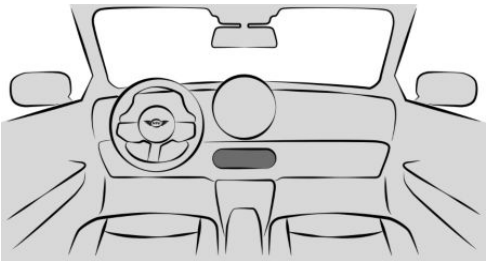
1. Go to the Phone menu.
2. "Dial"
3. Enter the desired digits.
4. Tap the telephone icon. The connection is established using the smartphone that has this function.

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Overview



Start/Stop switch.

Turning on the drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. On the switch cluster, turn the Start/Stop button.

Turning off drive-ready state

After stopping the vehicle:

1. Depress the brake pedal and push the parking brake button.
2. On the switch cluster, turn the Start/Stop button.

   The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

The drive-ready state is switched off automatically if the driver's seat belt is not buckled when the driver's door is opened.

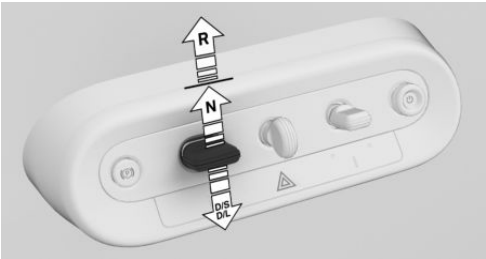
Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function switches the engine off automatically while stationary to save fuel. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- If the accelerator pedal is pressed when Automatic Hold is activated.
- By the driver assistance systems activated, depending on vehicle equipment and driving situation.

Automatic transmission

Engaging a selector lever position



- Gear position D.
- N Neutral.
- R Reverse gear.
- With shift paddles: S is Sport program.
- Without shift paddles: L LOW mode.

Depress and hold the brake pedal until ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when a gear position or reverse gear is engaged.

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

Sport program: Shift characteristics are designed for sportier driving.

LOW mode: The engine braking effect is increased and acceleration is quicker.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Engaging selector lever position P

Only push the parking brake button when the vehicle is stationary.

To engage selector lever position P and the parking brake, press the parking brake button on the switch cluster.

The parking brake is applied and the parking lock is engaged.

Parking brake

Setting the parking brake

To engage the parking brake, press the parking brake button on the switch cluster.

The LED in the button illuminates. The indicator light for the parking brake illuminates red.

The parking brake is applied and parking lock is engaged.

Releasing the parking brake

To release the parking brake, press the parking brake button on the switch cluster with drive-ready state on, selector lever position P engaged, and the brake pedal depressed.

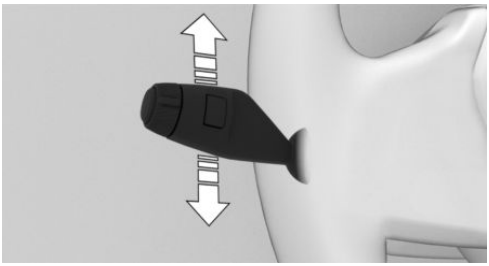
The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Light and view

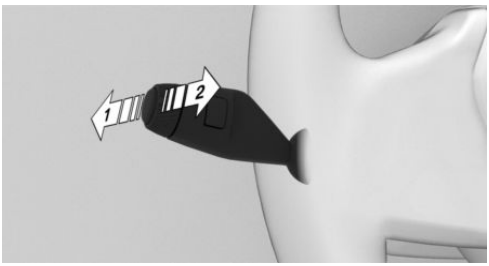
Turn signal, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Turn signal



- To flash the turn signal, push the turn signal lever up or down past the resistance point.
- For one-touch signaling: Lightly tap the turn signal lever up or down.
- To flash the turn signal briefly: Push the turn signal lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher



- To turn on the high-beam headlights, push the turn signal lever forward, arrow 1.

The high-beam headlights illuminate when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

– To turn off the high-beam headlights or operate the headlight flasher, pull the turn signal lever backward, arrow 2.

Lights and lighting

Buttons on turn signal lever

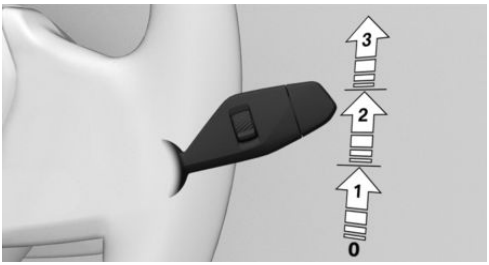
Icon	Function
	Exterior lighting menu.
	Low-beam headlights.
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.

Functions via the Interaction Unit

Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control.
	Low-beam headlights.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.
	High Beam Assistant.
	Parking lights.
	Left roadside parking light.
	Right roadside parking light.

Window wiper system

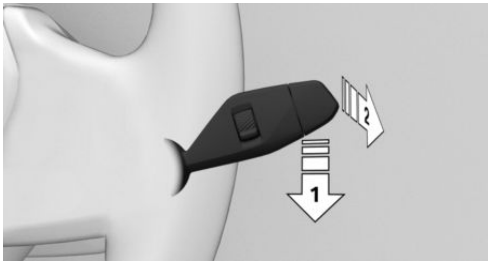
Turning on window wiper system



To turn on the wiper system, push the wiper lever upward to the desired position.

Position	Function
Position 0.	Rest position of wipers.
Position 1.	Rain sensor mode.
Position 2.	Normal wiper speed.
Position 3.	Fast wiper speed.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



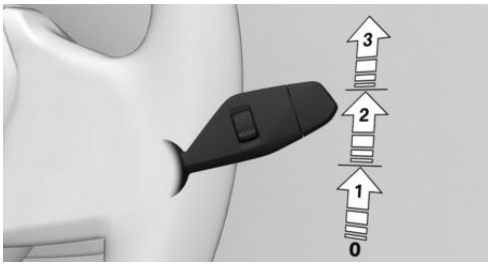
To turn off the wiper system, push the wiper lever down until it reaches position 0, arrow 1.

To flick wipe, proceed as follows:

- Push the wiper lever down from position 0, arrow 1.
- Push the wiper lever up from position 0 or position 1, arrow 2.

The wiper lever returns to its initial position when released.

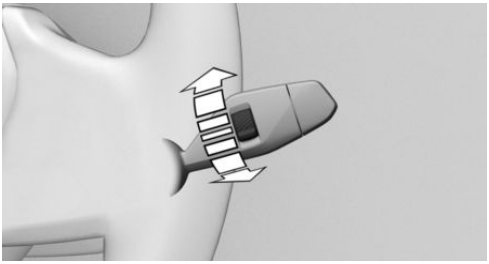
Activating/deactivating rain sensor



To activate the rain sensor: Push the wiper lever upward from position 0, arrow 1, once.

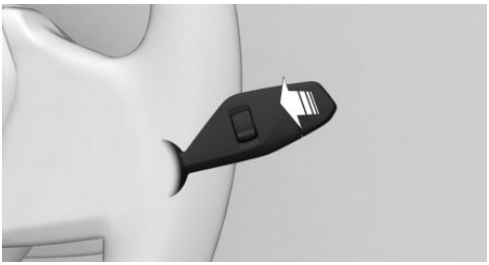
To deactivate the rain sensor: Push the wiper lever back to position 0.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



To adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor, turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever.

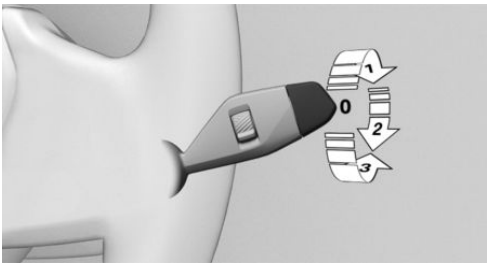
Cleaning the windshield



To clean the windshield, pull the wiper lever back.

Rear wiper

Switching on the rear wiper



To turn on the rear wiper, rotate the outer switch on the wiper lever upward.

Switch position	Function
Position 0.	Rest position of the wiper.
Position 1.	Intermittent operation. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Cleaning the rear window

To clean the rear window, turn the outer switch on the wiper lever as follows:

- In rest position: Turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch returns to its rest position when released.
- In intermittent operation: Turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

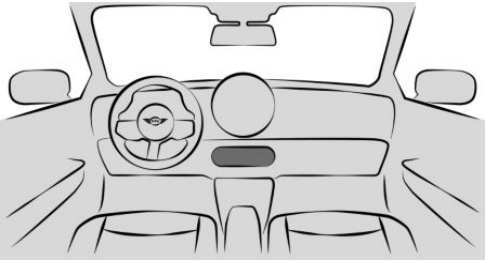
Climate control

Climate control functions

Functions in the Climate menu

Icon	Function
	Turn the air conditioning system on/off.
AUTO	Automatic program.
72.0°F	Temperature in the vehicle interior.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
	Automatic air recirculation.
	Fresh air.
SYNC	SYNC program.
	Seat heating.
	Steering wheel heating.
	Settings.

Buttons, air conditioning system



Icon	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.

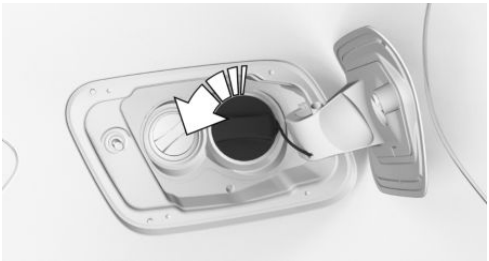
Intermediate stop

Refueling

Opening the fuel filler cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

2. Open the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket on the fuel filler flap.

Washer fluid

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment on the right side of vehicle.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.5 US gal/2 liters.

To refill the washer fluid, proceed as follows:

1. Opening the hood.
   To do so, pull the lever in the footwell twice.
2. Open the cap and refill the washer fluid.
3. Close the cover.

Wheels and tires

Tire pressure specifications

The tire pressure table contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for given tire sizes at ambient temperature.

After correcting the tire pressure

If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the tire settings are correct. When using tires not listed in the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Interaction Unit, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

If equipped with a flat tire monitor, reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

Checking the tire pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- At least twice a month.
- Before embarking on an extended trip.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

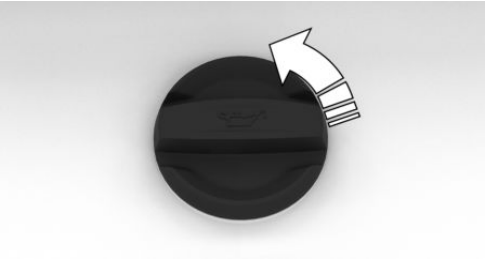
Displaying the engine oil level

To view the engine oil level, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Engine oil level".

Adding engine oil

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

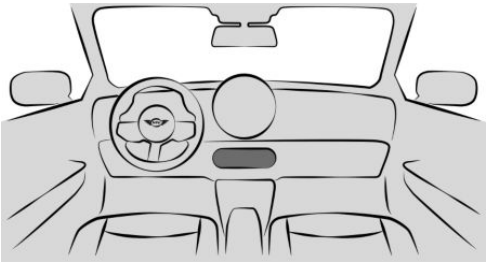
1. Opening the hood.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning system



The button for the hazard warning system is located on the switch cluster.

MINI Assistance

Contact MINI Assistance for information and support for all aspects of the vehicle.

1. To start the service, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "MINI Assist".
2. Select the desired service, as necessary.

   A voice connection to the selected service is established.

Dashboard

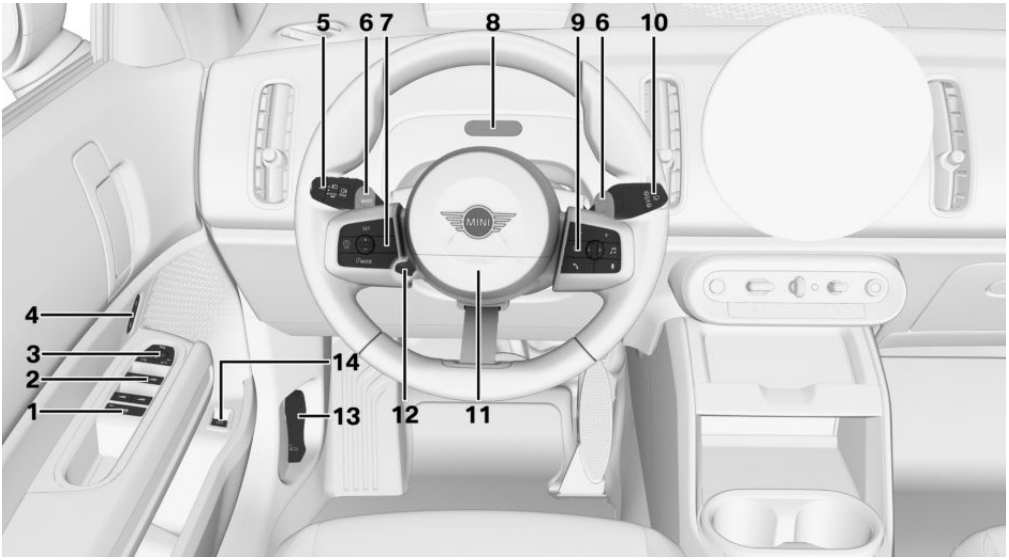
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Safety switch 96

2 Power windows 93

3 Operating the exterior mirrors 110

4 Buttons for the central locking system 88

Unlocking the vehicle

Locking the vehicle

5 Turn signal lever and light

Exterior lighting menu 159

High Beam Assistant 157

Low-beam headlights 160

AUTO Automatic driving lights control 160

Adaptive lighting functions 163

OFF Exterior lighting off 160

Turn signal 156

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher 156

6 Shift paddles 129

Sport Boost function 131

7 Steering wheel buttons, left

I/O Turn speed control systems on/off 224

MODE Select speed control system 224

SET Store speed 224

Adjusting the speed 224

8 Driver Attention Camera 215

9 Steering wheel buttons, right

Shortcuts 48

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Voice control, MINI Intelligent Personal Assistant 51

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Using selection lists 150

Accessing and resetting trip data 139

Resetting the G-Meter values 154

10 Wiper lever

Wipers 166

AUTO Rain sensor 167

Cleaning the windshield 168

Rear wiper 168

Cleaning the rear window 168

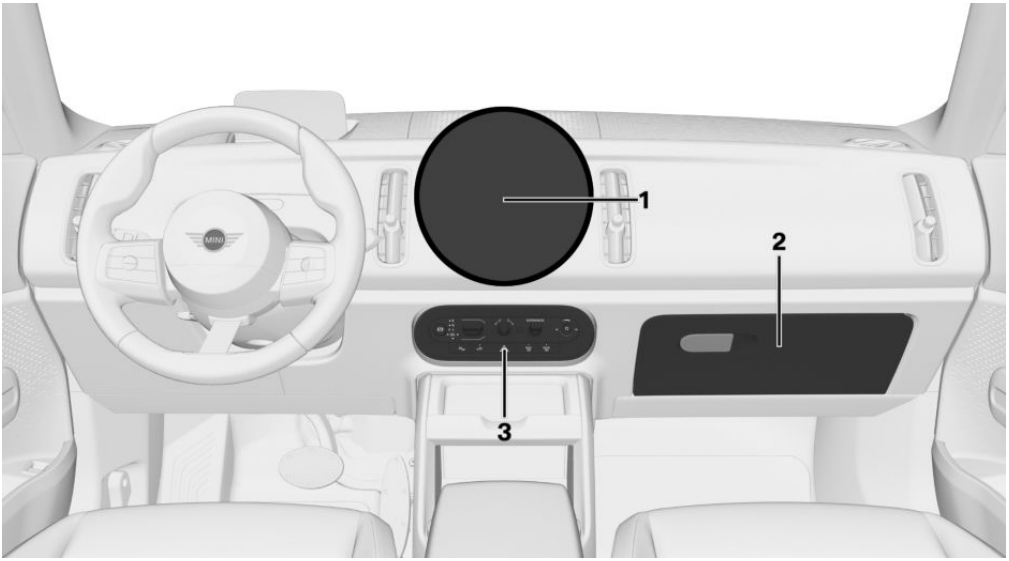
11 Horn, entire surface

12 Adjusting the steering wheel 113

13 Unlocking the hood 375

14 Opening and closing cargo area 84

In the vicinity of the center console



1 MINI Interaction Unit 45

2 Glove compartment 307

3 Switch cluster, MINI Toggle Bar

Parking brake 134

Selector lever 125

Turning drive-ready state on/off 122

MINI Modes 131

Volume button, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Vehicle settings menu 51

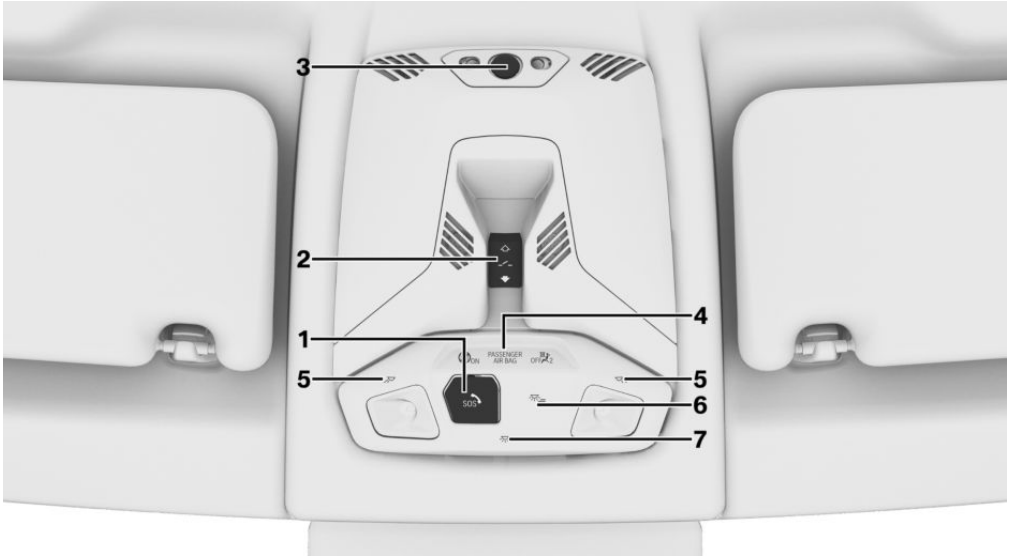
Parking assistance systems 251

Hazard warning system 393

Defrost function 290

Rear window defroster 290

In the vicinity of the headliner



1

Emergency call, SOS 393

2 Glass sunroof 96

3 Interior camera 303

4

Indicator light, front passenger airbag 173

5
Reading lights 164

6
Interior lighting menu 51

7
Interior lights 164

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Overview

Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- Front camera.
- Camera behind the windshield.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.

Cameras

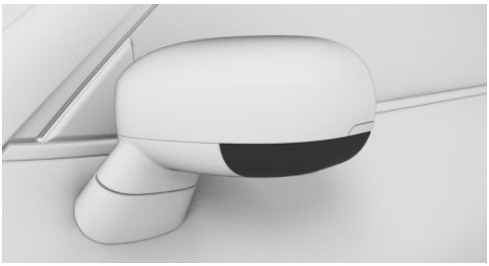
Front camera

The front camera is located above the license-plate carrier.

Camera behind the windshield

The camera behind the windshield is located near the interior mirror.

Top view cameras



One exterior mirror camera is located at the bottom of each exterior mirror housing.

Rear View Camera

The Rear View Camera is located in the handle strip on the rear of the vehicle.

Functional requirements of cameras

For the cameras to function correctly, the area around the cameras must be clean and free.

Additional information:

- Washing the vehicle, refer to page 401.
- Vehicle care, refer to page 403.

System limits of the cameras

The cameras may not work properly, e.g., show something that is incorrect, in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.
- In tight curves.
- When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.
- With open doors or open cargo area.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., setting sun.
- When it is dark outside.
- The camera has overheated due to excessive temperatures and temporarily turned off.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

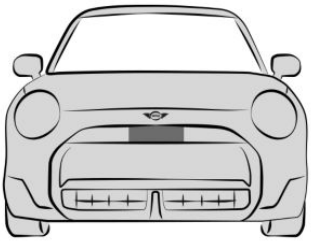
Radar sensors

Safety information

WARNING

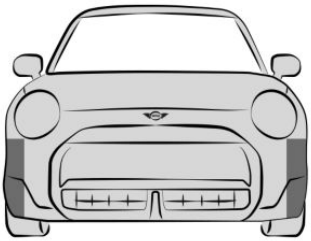
The vehicle radar sensors, and thus the driver assistance systems, can be negatively affected by external influences, e.g., interference. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Front radar sensor



The front radar sensor is located above the license-plate carrier.

Radar sensors, side, front



The radar sensors are located on the side of the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, rear

The radar sensors are located on the side of the rear bumper.

Functional requirements of radar sensors

For the radar sensors to function correctly, the area around the radar sensors must be kept clean and free.

Additional information:

- Washing the vehicle, refer to page 401.
- Vehicle care, refer to page 403.

System limits of the radar sensors

The function of the radar sensors may be restricted or not available, for instance in the following situations:

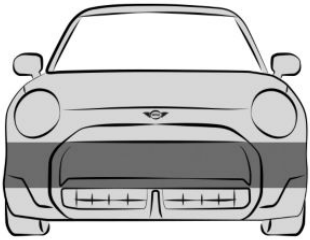
- In case of dirty sensors.
- In case of iced-up sensors.
- If sensors are covered such as by labels, films or a license-plate carrier.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- When the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.
- After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasonic sensors, front

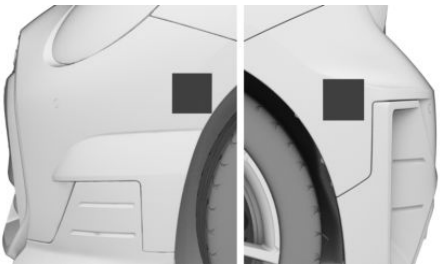


The ultrasonic sensors are located in the front bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, rear

The ultrasonic sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasonic sensors are located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers.

Functional requirements of ultrasonic sensors

For the ultrasonic sensors to function correctly, the area around the ultrasonic sensors must be kept clean and free.

Additional information:

- Washing the vehicle, refer to page 401.
- Vehicle care, refer to page 403.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g., by stickers.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- For small children and animals.
- For people with specific clothing, e.g., coat.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- In case of external interference with the ultrasonics, for instance from passing vehicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.
- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high humidity, wetness, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer hitches of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- For elevated, protruding objects, e.g., wall ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.

- In the case objects with fine surfaces or structures, e.g., wire mesh fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, e.g., boxes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can be outside of the detection ranges of the sensors.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- In car washes and tunnel car washes.
- For bumps, e.g., speed bumps.
- If there are large amounts of exhaust gas.
- Cargo is protruding beyond the vehicle.
- When the trailer hitch cover is not on straight.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Principle

Depending on the situation, the vehicle will be in one of three operating states:

- Idle state, refer to page 42.
- Standby state, refer to page 43.
- Drive-ready state, refer to page 43.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

1 Start/Stop switch
2 Volume button, setting idle state

Idle state

Principle

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off.

The vehicle is in idle state until it is opened from the outside or after it is exited and locked.

Establishing idle state automatically

The vehicle switches automatically to idle state in situations like the following:

- After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- If one or both front doors are opened after driving. This function must be activated on the Interaction Unit.

In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

After a trip, idle state can be established by opening the front doors. All occupants must exit the vehicle.

To activate/deactivate this function when opening the front doors, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Doors and windows" / "Lock/unlock" / "Turn off after opening door".

Establishing the idle state manually

To turn on idle state manually, push and hold the volume button on the switch cluster until all displays go out.

Deep sleep mode

Principle

Deep sleep mode is activated to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging when the vehicle is stationary for several weeks.

In deep sleep mode, the vehicle functions are limited to the essentials.

Use deep sleep mode for long stationary periods.

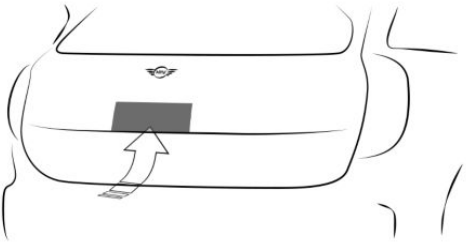
When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, some special measures are necessary. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Activating/deactivating deep sleep mode

1. To enable deep sleep mode, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "System settings" / "Deep sleep mode".
2. Select the desired setting.

Deep sleep mode deactivates automatically when drive-ready state is turned on.

Access to the vehicle



Press the button on the cargo area to access the vehicle while in deep sleep mode. Deep sleep mode remains on in this case.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

The vehicle is in the standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Turning on standby state manually

Standby state can be reactivated manually if the vehicle has been set to idle state automatically.

To turn standby back on manually, turn the Start/Stop switch on the switch cluster.

The Interaction Unit illuminates.

Alternatively, standby can be turned on again by pressing the volume control button on the switch cluster.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If OFF is displayed on the Interaction Unit, drive-ready state is turned off and standby state is turned on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Turning on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

Some vehicle functions can only be used with the drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTICE

Repeatedly attempting to start the engine or repeatedly starting the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid repeated starting of the vehicle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

Turning on the drive-ready state

To turn on the drive-ready state, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. On the switch cluster, turn the Start/Stop button.

   Most indicator lights and warning lights on the Interaction Unit illuminate for different lengths of time.

   Drive-ready state is switched on.

The engine will start automatically for a brief time until the engine is started.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approx. 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Views on the Interaction Unit

When drive-ready state is on, the Interaction Unit indicates this by displaying necessary driving information or READY, depending on vehicle equipment.

Turning off drive-ready state

To turn off drive-ready state, proceed as follows:

1. When the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake pedal and engage the parking brake.
2. On the switch cluster, turn the Start/Stop button.

   The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

   The engine is shut off and the vehicle switches to standby.

The drive-ready state is switched off automatically if the driver's seat belt is not buckled when the driver's door is opened.

Depending on vehicle settings, the parking brake engages automatically when drive-ready state is turned off.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 134.

Display and operating concept

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

MINI Interaction Unit

Principle

The Interaction Unit consists of a central round display with functions that can be operated by touch.

Depending on vehicle equipment, functions can also be operated via the MINI Intelligent Personal Assistant or the operating elements in the vehicle.

The Interaction Unit turns on automatically when it is needed to operate a certain function or when the vehicle is unlocked.

The Interaction Unit's main menu is divided into different areas, e.g., menu bar, status information, and widgets.

Various settings can be configured, e.g., the brightness of the Interaction Unit.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

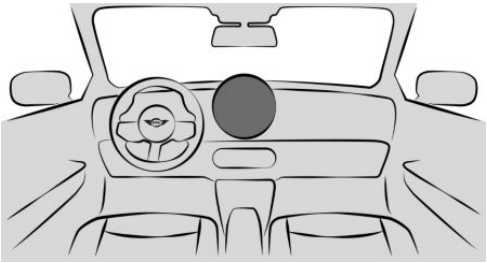
When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

WARNING

Objects in the area in front of a display can slip and damage the display. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not place objects in the area in front of a display.

Overview

Position in the vehicle



The Interaction Unit is located on the instrument panel above the center console.

Display

1 Temperature setting
2 Driving information 50
3 Widgets
4 Status information
Quick access
5 Menu bar
6 Saved messages
Check Control messages 141

Turning the Interaction Unit on/off

The Interaction Unit turns on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or when it is needed to operate another function.

The Interaction Unit turns off automatically in certain situations, e.g., if the vehicle is not operated for several minutes.

Menu bar

Main menu

The main menu can be opened from any menu.

Climate menu

The Climate menu provides access to all climate control functions.

Media menu

The Media menu provides entertainment system functions, e.g., radio stations, and can also be used to pair external devices.

This icon indicates the active media source.

Apps menu

The Apps menu provides access to all apps and vehicle functions. You can use a filter to make it easier to find a specific app. The last selected filter is stored. To display the desired app, change the filter as necessary.

Navigation menu

The Navigation menu provides navigation system functions, e.g., route guidance and traffic information.

If route guidance is activated, the estimated arrival time is displayed on the menu bar.

Apple CarPlay©

The Apple CarPlay menu is displayed in the main menu depending on national-market version and connected function. Apple CarPlay makes it possible to securely use select functions of a compatible Apple iPhone via the Interaction Unit.

Android Auto©

The Android Auto menu is displayed in the main menu, depending on national-market version and associated function. Android Auto makes it possible to securely use select functions of a compatible Android smartphone via the Interaction Unit.

Telephone menu

The Telephone menu provides calling and messaging functions and can also be used to pair and manage mobile devices, e.g., smartphones.

Widgets

The widgets provide real-time information and dynamic content, e.g., the navigation map. Widgets also serve as buttons and allow you to jump to the respective menu or most important functions.

Status information

General information

Status information is displayed in the form of icons on the bottom middle edge of the Interaction Unit. Depending on the equipment and national-market version, different icons are available.

Telephone status information

Icon	Meaning
	Active call.
	Microphone turned on.
	Microphone turned off.
	SIM card not active or not registered.
	Wireless charging active.

Entertainment status information

Icon	Meaning
	Bluetooth audio.
	Time shift.
sxm	Satellite tuner is on.

Status information messages

Icon	Meaning
	Notifications.
	Check Control message.
	Do not disturb.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Other status information

Icon	Meaning
	Sound output deactivated.
	Activation word active.
	MINI ID or driver profile.
—	Go to quick access.

Quick access

Certain functions and individual shortcuts can be opened via quick access.

Function	Operation
Show quick link.	On the Interaction Unit, swipe from bottom to top. — Tap the icon on the status bar.
Hide quick link.	On the Interaction Unit, swipe from top to bottom.

Input and display

Entering letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when inputting destinations, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Interaction Unit or spoken commands.

Icon	Function
⬆ ⇧	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
␣	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
🎤	Use voice control.
OK	Confirm entry.
◀ ▶	Shift the input area to the left or right.
⇤	Tap icon: Delete a letter or a number.
⇤	Press and hold the icon: Delete all letters or numbers.

Entry comparison

When entering data from a database such as contacts, the selection is gradually narrowed down for each character entered, with characters being added as necessary.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Some menu items are preceded by an icon. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

Icon	Meaning
☑ ◉	Function is activated.
☐ ○	Function is deactivated.
	Functions can be activated or deactivated using the button on the Interaction Unit. If the button is highlighted in color, the function is activated.

Shortcuts

Principle

Shortcuts provide quick access to functions such as those that are frequently used. Shortcuts can be created as necessary.

Go to the shortcuts as follows:

- ☆ Using the buttons on the steering wheel.
- Via quick access on the Interaction Unit.

The following functions, for example, are defined as shortcuts:

- Radio stations.
- Navigation destinations.
- Phone numbers.
- Jumps to menus.

Saving shortcuts

Shortcuts can only be created with an active MINI ID or driver profile.

1. Press and hold the desired function.
2. "Add to shortcuts"

Shortcuts can also be saved directly via quick access.

Selecting shortcuts

1. To select a shortcut, swipe up from the middle of the Interaction Unit, from bottom to top.
2. Select the desired shortcut.

The function will work immediately. For example a connection is established when a phone number is selected.

Sorting shortcuts

1. To select a shortcut, swipe up from the middle of the Interaction Unit, from bottom to top.
2. Press and hold the desired shortcut and move it to the desired position.

Deleting shortcuts

1. To select a shortcut, swipe up from the middle of the Interaction Unit, from bottom to top.
2. Tap the three dots for the desired shortcut.
3. Tap the icon for deleting the desired shortcut.

Operation

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. If necessary, tap the main menu icon.
2. On the Interaction Unit, swipe from right to left or from left to right.
3. Select the desired display.

Sorting apps

The order of apps can be adjusted in the Apps menu.

1. Open the Apps menu.
2. Press and hold the desired app icon and move it to the desired position.

Calling up the context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

To bring up the Context menu, press and hold the desired menu item.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- "General help": The Integrated Owner's Manual opens.
- "Add to shortcuts": The menu item is defined as a shortcut.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved on the Interaction Unit.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

Contacts are listed in alphabetical order.

To navigate to a desired initial letter in a list of more than 30 entries, tap the letter on the letter bar and scroll up or down.

Favorites are displayed at the top of the list. Entries with numbers are displayed at the end of the list.

Setting the brightness

1. To adjust the brightness of the Interaction Unit, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Displays" / "Interaction Unit" / "Cockpit brightness".
2. Select the desired setting.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

Enabling/disabling audible feedback

The Interaction Unit's audio confirmation can be activated or deactivated.

1. Go to the Media menu.
2. Select the settings icon.
3. "Sound"
4. "Touchscreen"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

When the Interaction Unit is subjected to very high temperatures, e.g., due to intense sunlight, the brightness may be reduced until the Interaction Unit switches off completely. The normal functions are restored once the temperature decreases, e.g., with shade or the air conditioning system.

Driving information

Principle

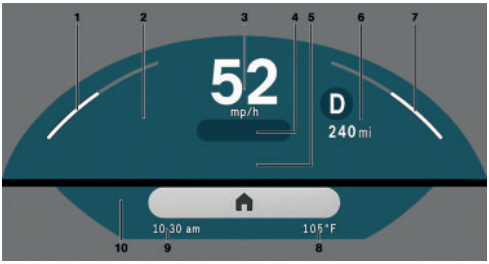
The driving information comprises various digital displays, e.g., speedometer, time, range, and temperature, as well as indicator lights and warning lights.

Safety information

WARNING

If the driving information displays on the instrument cluster fail, e.g., the speedometer, do not use the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe manner. Turning drive-ready state off and on again may correct the malfunction, allowing you to continue driving. If the malfunction cannot be corrected, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview



1 Power gauge 148
Tachometer 149
Efficiency trainer 337
2 Speed Limit Info 222
Speed Limit Assistant 246
3 Operating state of vehicle 41
Speedometer
Speedometer 148
4 Driver assistance systems 222
5 Widgets, detailed information 45
6 Selector lever position 125
Trip data 139
Gear shift indicator 151
Range 152
7 Fuel gauge 152
8 Outside temperature 154
9 Time 155
10 Check Control 141

The layout is adapted to the respective drive mode.

Some views may look different than they are depicted in the Owner's Manual.

Additional information:

Indicator lights and warning lights, refer to page 142.

Showing detailed information

The Interaction Unit can provide additional details for some driving information.

Select the detailed information by tapping the desired area, e.g., tap the speedometer or Speed Limit Info display.

To show selection lists, e.g., current entertainment source, press the desired button on the right side of the steering wheel.

Additional information:

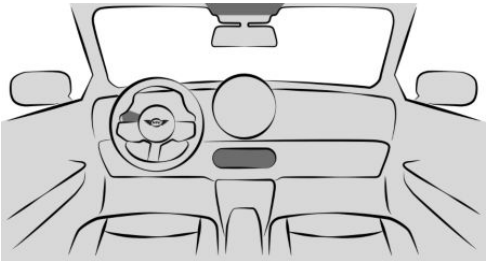
- Selection lists, refer to page 150.
- Assisted View, refer to page 153.
- Displays, trip data, refer to page 139.
- Speedometer, refer to page 148.

Direct access buttons

Principle

There are buttons for jumping directly to certain functions in the vehicle. These buttons can be used to bring up the respective menu directly on the Interaction Unit. Then continue operation on the Interaction Unit.

Overview



The direct jump buttons are located on the switch cluster, turn signal lever, and headliner.

Button	Function
	Go to the Drive Settings menu on the switch cluster.
	Go to the Exterior Lighting menu on the turn signal lever.
	Go to the Interior Lighting menu on the headliner.

MINI Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The MINI Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that operates various vehicle functions by means of natural spoken commands.

The Personal Assistant provides proactive suggestions to make it easier to operate the vehicle. The Personal Assistant is available depending on national-market version. The range of functions and detection may vary depending on national-market version.

You can use supported voice assistants from third parties in your vehicle after pairing your smartphone.

You can configure various settings such as the suggestions from the Personal Assistant.

The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.

Using the voice activation system

›...‹: In the Owner's Manual, commands that can be spoken are indicated by brackets.

When saying commands, note the following:

- Say the commands at a normal volume. Speaking directly into the microphone does not improve voice recognition.
- Say the commands smoothly and with normal intonation and speed.

Functional requirements

The following functional requirements apply for the Personal Assistant:

- To set a system language via the Interaction Unit, this language must be supported by the Personal Assistant.
- Download the corresponding language package before using the Personal Assistant for the first time.
- Commands must always be spoken in the selected system language.

For the full range of functions, the following functions should be activated or purchased:

- Online speech processing is enabled.
- All settings under Data privacy are enabled.
- The activation word is enabled.
- Suggestions are activated.
- A MINI ID or driver profile is activated.
- Corresponding MINI Connected Services are purchased in the MINI Connected Store.

Additional information:

- Setting the system language, refer to page 53.
- Online speech processing, refer to page 54.
- Data protection, refer to page 61.
- Activation word, refer to page 52.
- Get suggestions, refer to page 54.

Activating the voice control system

General information

You can activate voice control as follows:

- Briefly press the microphone button on the steering wheel.
- Say the activation word.

Microphone button on steering wheel

1. To activate voice control with the microphone button, briefly press the voice control button on the steering wheel.

   The microphone on the driver's side is active.
2. Say the desired command.

Activation word

Principle

The Personal Assistant can be started by saying a predefined wake word. The microphones on the driver's or front passenger's side remain on during the subsequent voice dialog, depending on where the activation word was spoken.

Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence.

Enabling/disabling the activation word

The activation word can be enabled and disabled.

To activate/deactivate the activation word, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "General" / "Activation with voice control".

Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on the national-market version, some third-party providers provide digital voice assistants such as Siri or Amazon Alexa.

To use Siri, the smartphone must be connected via Apple CarPlay.

Supported voice assistants can be used in the vehicle after you have connected your smartphone.

The activation word for voice assistants from affiliated third-party providers can be used in addition to the activation word from MINI.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "System settings" / "Voice control" / "Other assistants".
2. Select the desired setting.

Canceling voice control

You can cancel voice control as follows:

- Press the microphone button on the steering wheel again.
- Say the following command: ›Cancel‹

Possible voice commands

Principle

Voice commands can be used to give instructions or ask questions, with the Personal Assistant providing assistance.

The following can be done by voice control, for example:

- Calling contacts.
- Navigating to an address.
- Adjust the settings.
- Operating vehicle functions, e.g., climate control.

In addition, voice commands can be used to bring up the most important features on the Interaction Unit, e.g., menu items or lists.

Help for voice control

You can say the following commands to get help with voice control:

- ›Voice commands‹: Possible commands are announced.
- ›General information on voice control‹: Information on how voice control works is announced.
- ›Help‹: Tips and example commands for voice control are announced.

Sample commands

- ›Call John Smith‹
- ›Drive me to JFK airport‹
- ›Increase volume‹ or ›Decrease volume‹
- ›Activate the climate control‹
- ›What is my remaining range‹

Menu items

The Personal Assistant can open menu items directly. Say the menu items as they are shown on the Interaction Unit. You do not have to follow the order of the menu items when speaking them out loud.

1. Activate voice control.
2. ›Media‹
3. ›Presets‹

   Saved stations are displayed on the Interaction Unit.

Settings

Setting the system language

The system language set must be supported by the Personal Assistant. A language package can be downloaded.

1. To adjust the system language, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "System settings" / "Language".
2. Select the desired setting.

Managing language packages

1. To manage language packages, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "General" / "Language".
2. Select the desired setting.

Suggestions

The Personal Assistant provides helpful, individual suggestions. Suggestions can be enabled or disabled. Suggestions can be customized, e.g., which categories suggestions are based on or whether to emit a signal tone.

1. To configure the settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "Suggestions".
2. Select the desired setting.

Online speech processing

Online speech processing improves the quality of the speech recognition and search results for points of interest. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there. Online speech processing is not available in all languages. Online voice processing can be deactivated depending on national-market version.

To configure the settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "General" / "Online speech processing".

Configuring the visualization

How the Personal Assistant is visualized can be set.

1. To configure the visualization, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Personal Assistant" / "Settings" / "General" / "Visualization".
2. Select the desired setting.

Voice control from third-party providers

Depending on vehicle equipment, third-party voice control can be activated by pressing and holding the microphone button on the steering wheel.

1. To configure the settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "System settings" / "Voice control".
2. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the voice guidance until the desired volume is set.

The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

Using the smartphone's voice control

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice control.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

1. Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   The smartphone's voice control is enabled.

If the activation was successful, a confirmation appears on the Interaction Unit.

2. Press the voice control button on the steering wheel in order to cancel the smartphone's voice control.

Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Principle

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version. Alexa is a digital assistant from Amazon. With Amazon Alexa Car Integration, Alexa can be used in the vehicle. For safety reasons, the use of some Alexa functions may be restricted while driving your vehicle.

Functional requirements

- A MINI ID or driver profile is activated.
- An active Amazon account must exist.

Activating Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is activated in the vehicle.

Follow the instructions from the Amazon Alexa app to set it up in the vehicle.

1. To activate Amazon Alexa Car Integration, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Alexa".
2. Select the desired setting.

After setting it up, use Amazon Alexa in the vehicle as follows:

Say the activation word Alexa and the desired command.

Information about the active function is shown on the Interaction Unit.

System limits

- The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle. This also applies to safety functions and systems.
- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors and windows closed.
- Noises from the front passenger or occupants can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the speech recognition feature.
- A poor data connection affects the response time of the Personal Assistant and search function.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Mobile devices can be used in the vehicle for various functions. Pairing with the vehicle is beneficial when using mobile devices:

- Operating the mobile device via the Interaction Unit.
- Making calls via the hands-free system.
- Better connection to the telephone network and internet using the vehicle's cell phone antennas.
- Listen to music on the vehicle's sound system.
- Surf the internet via personal hotspot on the vehicle's integrated SIM card.
- Operating smartphone apps, e.g., Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

General information

Detailed information on the functions and connection modes is provided in the following media from the Owner's Manual under the specified keyword:

- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- Printed Owner's Manual for navigation, communication and entertainment.

The following information sources can also be used:

- Driver’s Guide app.
- Driver’s Guide Web.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

MINI Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

MINI Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the entire software of the vehicle.

An update can include the following, for example:

- New functions.
- Functional enhancements.
- Quality improvements.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends installing Software Updates as soon as they become available.

The Remote Software Upgrade may not be available in some countries.

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To install a Remote Software Upgrade, the following requirements must be met:

- Active MINI Connected contract.
- The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- The vehicle has mobile network reception.
- Consent to send corresponding data has been granted in the MINI Remote Software Upgrade settings.

Settings

To bring up the Remote Software Upgrade settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "System settings" / "Remote Software Upgrade" / "Settings".

Additional information:

Data protection, refer to page 61.

Search for an upgrade

Functional requirements

Standby must be turned on to search for a Remote Software Upgrade.

Automatic search

The vehicle checks regularly for Remote Software Upgrades in the background.

Manual search

1. To search manually for a Remote Software Upgrade, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "System settings" / "Remote Software Upgrade" / "Search for upgrade".
2. Follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

Downloading an upgrade

Automatic download

If available, the data for a Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle. No download consent is required.

Via the MINI App

When a Remote Software Upgrade is available, the MINI App will provide information on the new software version.

The data for the upgrade can then be downloaded onto a mobile device.

Data can then be sent from the mobile device to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for instance in areas with limited mobile network availability.

You do not need to be present in the vehicle to download the data to a mobile device.

1. On the MINI App, download the upgrade to the smartphone.
2. Follow the instructions in the MINI App.
3. Connect your smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth audio and Wi-Fi.

   Data for the upgrade is sent from the mobile device to the vehicle both while driving and when stopped. Depending on the size of the upgrade, it may be necessary to drive the vehicle to complete the data transfer.
4. Follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates included in the Remote Software Upgrade. Information on the version can be shown on the Interaction Unit while downloading and after the installation is complete.

The version history is also provided on the MINI portal.

Displaying information

1. To display the version history in the vehicle, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "System settings" / "Remote Software Upgrade".
2. – Display currently installed version: "Installed version: "
   – Display new available version: "Version info"
3. Follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

More information is provided on the corresponding MINI website.

Installing the upgrade

General information

Before installing an upgrade, note the following:

– Installation of the Remote Software Upgrade may result in the deletion of

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

software changes, e.g., performance increases not made by the manufacturer of the vehicle.
- The installation may be interrupted if there are modifications to the vehicle's electrical system, e.g., to control units, which were not made by the vehicle manufacturer.
- The installation does not occur until the consent was given.
- The installation may take approx. 20 to 30 minutes.
- The installation cannot be terminated.
- The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- The vehicle can be exited during the installation.

Functional requirements

- Sufficiently charged battery.
- The outside temperature is above 14°F/-10°C.
- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The hazard warning system is turned off.
- The selector lever position P is engaged.
- The engine is turned off and sufficiently cooled down.

Where applicable, note the information on additional requirements given on the Interaction Unit.

If the requirements are not met, the upgrade will not be offered for installation.

If all prerequisites are met, the upgrade can also be installed using the MINI App. Follow the instructions on the MINI App.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Make sure that the vehicle has mobile network reception so that a fault message can be sent to the vehicle manufacturer, e.g., if the installation is canceled.
- Close the windows.
- Close the glass sunroof.
- Close the cargo area.
- Remove devices that consume power, e.g., a mobile phone.
- Disconnect the trailer or load carrier.
- The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle for the consent for installation.
- Turn off the exterior lighting.
- Remove any devices connected to the diagnostic socket.

Install the upgrade immediately

The upgrade can be installed immediately if all prerequisites have been met.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "System settings" / "Remote Software Upgrade" / "Start installation".
2. Follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

Installing an upgrade with the timer

Once the drive is complete, the timer can be used to automatically install the upgrade at a preset time, e.g., during the night. It may be helpful to install the upgrade at a later time so that all functional requirements can be met, e.g., to allow the engine to cool sufficiently.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "System settings" / "Remote Software Upgrade".
2. Select the desired settings.

Installation starts automatically at the specified time if:

- All prerequisites for the installation have been established correctly.
- All prerequisites continue to be met at the time of installation.

The timer is turned off when the drive-ready state is turned on.

Installing via the MINI App

Once all preparations are done and all requirements are met, the MINI App can also be used to start the upgrade installation when the vehicle is parked. The upgrade installation can be started remotely. It is not necessary to be present in the vehicle.

It may be helpful to install the upgrade at a later time in order to meet functional requirements, e.g., to allow the engine to cool sufficiently.

Follow the instructions on the MINI App.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- Hazard warning flashers.
- Central locking system and Comfort Access, as applicable.
- Parking light.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency call.
- Power windows.
- Glass sunroof.
- Locking the tank flap.
- Operating the tailgate or trunk lid.
- Exit Warning if needed.

In vehicles with frameless doors, the window may no longer close completely.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

After successful upgrade

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Purchased services, e.g., Advanced Real Time Traffic Information or Remote Services, are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is driven.

If the vehicle has been stationary for some time, it may be necessary to recharge the vehicle battery by going for a long drive.

Malfunction

If the Remote Software Upgrade malfunctions, follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit or MINI App.

If the malfunction cannot be corrected, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update, for example, via Remote Software Upgrade, the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information, depending on the national-market version.

Before setting off, make sure that the Integrated Owner's Manual is available and up-to-date.

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers various services that must send data to MINI or a service provider in order to be used.

The data transfer can be deactivated for some services. When data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Depending on vehicle equipment, before using certain functions for the first time, it may be necessary to consent to the transfer or use of data required for the function, e.g., camera or GPS coordinates.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. To configure the settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Data privacy".
2. Select the desired setting.

Personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on use, your vehicle stores personal data such as saved radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using the Interaction Unit.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following data is deleted, for example:

- MINI IDs or driver profiles.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored shortcuts.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, e.g., favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice memos.
- Login accounts.
- Digital key.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes. In addition, the vehicle is removed from the MINI App and MINI Connected customer portal so that remote functions can no longer be used.

Functional requirements

To delete personal data in the vehicle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Data can only be deleted while the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting vehicle data, refer to page 62.

Reset vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off. Individual settings can only be deleted while the vehicle is stationary. The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "System settings" / "Reset vehicle data" / "Reset".

If settings synchronization has been enabled for a MINI ID in the vehicle, personal settings are kept in the MINI Cloud.

MINI ID

Principle

In MINI Connected countries, the MINI ID is the personal login for all relevant offers from the MINI brand. The MINI ID can be used to save personal vehicle settings to a profile as well as to apply these settings.

Seven MINI IDs can be saved to the vehicle. If a vehicle is used by several people, each person can use their own MINI ID in the vehicle. Additional profiles can be used to operate the vehicle without a MINI ID, e.g., the guest profile.

The MINI ID must be registered once. Registration can be completed on the MINI App, in MINI portal, or at an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Automatic driver recognition can activate a MINI ID as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. A vehicle key or digital key must be linked to the MINI ID.

Many saved settings can be synchronized with the MINI Cloud. If the same MINI ID is used to log into another vehicle, these settings can be used there.

Functional requirements

To use a MINI ID, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The vehicle must be stationary to create, change, delete, or edit a MINI ID.
- The vehicle must have mobile network reception in order to use a MINI ID to login into the vehicle and synchronize with the MINI Cloud.

Welcome screen

The welcome screen appears on the Interaction Unit after the vehicle is unlocked. The type of welcome depends on the following requirements:

- No MINI ID is saved to vehicle:

  The welcome is neutral. These profiles are provided to use the vehicle without a MINI ID. A new MINI ID can be added.
- The vehicle key or digital key has not been assigned to a MINI ID:

  The welcome is neutral. Saved profiles are shown for selection. A new MINI ID can be added.
- A MINI ID has been assigned to the vehicle key or digital key:

  The welcome is personalized. Saved settings are activated. Available profiles are shown for selection. A new MINI ID can be added.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Adding a MINI ID

1. To add a MINI ID, tap the MINI ID icon or profile image on the status bar.
2. Depending on the profile, select one of the following menu options:
   - The guest profile is active:
     "Guest" / "Add profile"
   - The driver profile is active:
     "Log in with MINI ID"
3. Scan the displayed QR code with your smartphone.
4. Observe the instructions on your smartphone.

   The MINI ID is automatically transferred to the vehicle if the MINI App is installed on the smartphone where the MINI ID is saved.

   If no MINI ID is currently available, a new MINI ID can be registered.
5. Change additional settings as necessary, e.g., automatic driver recognition.

The vehicle is added to the user's MINI App.

Alternatively, the MINI ID can be registered and added to the vehicle by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Confirming a MINI ID

If the MINI ID was registered and added to the vehicle by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, the MINI ID must be confirmed in the vehicle.

1. To select a MINI ID, tap the MINI ID icon or profile picture on the status bar.
2. Scan the QR code shown.
3. Follow the instructions on your smartphone.

It may be necessary to register the MINI ID again.

This icon is displayed on the status bar and indicates when it is necessary to login again.

1. Select the MINI ID.
2. Scan the QR code shown.

Another registration will be attempted. Once successfully logged in, all functions can be used again.

MINI App

If a MINI ID has been added to a vehicle, this vehicle is automatically added to the MINI App. The MINI App provides numerous beneficial functions and settings, e.g., user management.

Alternatively, a vehicle can be added to the MINI App by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. In this case, the MINI ID must then be confirmed on the Interaction Unit in the corresponding vehicle.

In rare cases, the use of MINI App functions for this vehicle may be restricted. More information is given on the Interaction Unit.

Primary user

The primary user is the person who first adds their MINI ID to the vehicle and the vehicle to their MINI App. Alternatively, the primary user can be specified by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The primary user has access to the following settings, for example:

- Removing MINI IDs saved to the vehicle.
- Transferring the primary user role to another MINI ID.
- Configuring vehicle-wide data protection settings.
- Creating the main digital key.

Additional information:

MINI Digital Key, refer to page 75.

Personalized settings

Automatic driver recognition

Principle

Automatic driver recognition can activate a MINI ID as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. A MINI ID must be linked to the vehicle key or digital key. The MINI ID can be changed after unlocking.

If driver recognition has been configured, automatic activation of the MINI ID is triggered by the following:

- By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- By unlocking the vehicle using a door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried with you.
- By unlocking automatically when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried with you. Depending on the country, it may not be possible to recognize the digital key.

If multiple vehicle keys or digital keys are located near the vehicle, MINI IDs are activated according to the following priority:

- The key that triggers the door locks to release also activates the associated MINI ID.
- If a vehicle key and digital key are detected at the same time, the digital key triggers activation of the assigned MINI ID.
- The MINI ID of the key last detected on the driver's door is activated.

If the MINI ID could not be detected when the vehicle was unlocked, select the MINI ID on the welcome screen.

Setting/adjusting automatic driver recognition

1. To set or adjust automatic driver recognition, tap the MINI ID icon or profile image on the status bar.
2. "Profile settings"
3. "Driver recognition"
4. Select the desired setting.

Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key assigned to a MINI ID can be used to view or edit personal settings.

Before giving the vehicle key to another person, make sure to clear the driver recognition settings. Driver recognition can be configured in the MINI ID settings.

With MINI Digital Key, a digital key can be given to other people so that they are able to use the associated vehicle.

Additional information:

MINI Digital Key, refer to page 75.

Selecting a profile picture

The profile picture can be selected from the predefined profile pictures.

1. To select a profile image, tap the MINI ID icon or profile image on the status bar.
2. Select the desired MINI ID.
3. "Profile settings"
4. "My MINI ID"
5. "Picture"
6. Select the desired profile picture.

The personal profile picture from the MINI App profile can be used for MINI IDs. Synchronization with the MINI Cloud must be enabled in the settings in order to use the profile picture from the MINI App. The default pictures can only be selected after deleting the profile picture on the MINI App.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Setting synchronization

Principle

If synchronization is on, settings from the following areas, for example, are synchronized:

- The MINI ID, e.g., the profile picture.
- Navigation, e.g., recent destinations, home address, or map settings.
- The Interaction Unit, e.g., the main menu configuration, language, or units.
- The Personal Assistant, e.g., suggestions or the activation word.
- Exterior lighting, e.g., one-touch signaling and pathway lighting.

Settings from the following areas are only synchronized when logging in for the first time:

- Seat and climate comfort functions, e.g., driver's seat position or temperature setting.
- Privacy menu.

Turning synchronization on/off

1. To enable/disable settings synchronization, tap the MINI ID icon or profile image on the status bar.
2. "Profile settings"
3. "My MINI ID"
4. Select the desired setting.

The profile picture can also be set if it was not already adopted from the MINI App.

Configuring PIN protection

Once saved, MINI IDs can be selected by every user of the vehicle. PIN protection can be configured in order to prevent the settings for a MINI ID from being changed or the data from being viewed.

1. To set a PIN, tap the MINI ID icon or profile image on the status bar.
2. Select the desired MINI ID.
3. "Profile settings"
4. "Lock screen"
5. Configure the desired PIN.

Profile management

Editing profiles

The profile can be changed at any time using the Interaction Unit.

1. Tap the MINI ID icon or profile picture on the status bar.
2. "Change profile"
3. Select the desired MINI ID or profile.
4. If necessary, enter a PIN.

The MINI ID is activated and associated settings are loaded.

Deleting a MINI ID

1. To delete a MINI ID, tap the MINI ID icon or profile image on the status bar.
2. "Profile settings"
3. "Manage profiles"
4. Tap the icon to delete the desired MINI ID.

When deleting MINI IDs, note the following:

- Removing a MINI ID from the vehicle causes the vehicle to be removed from the MINI App. If the MINI ID has been synchronized with the MINI Cloud, data saved to the MINI Cloud is kept after the MINI ID is deleted. If the currently

active MINI ID is removed, another profile must be selected.

- Deleting the primary user's MINI ID may reset the vehicle to factory settings. The vehicle will be removed from each user's MINI App. All MINI IDs are removed from the vehicle.
- Removing a vehicle from the MINI App removes the corresponding MINI ID from the vehicle. If the MINI ID was synchronized with the MINI Cloud, MINI ID data saved to the MINI Cloud is kept.
- If the vehicle is removed from the primary user's MINI App, it will also be removed from the other users' MINI App. The corresponding MINI IDs are removed from the vehicle.

Additional profiles

Principle

Additional profiles can be used to operate the vehicle without a MINI ID.

Driver profile

"Driver ": If no MINI ID is available, vehicle settings can be saved to this profile.

This profile is subject to the following restrictions, among others:

- Automatic driver detection cannot be associated with a user.
- The name and profile image cannot be changed.
- Synchronization with the MINI Cloud is not enabled.
- Certain functions are not available, e.g., individual navigation functions or saving favorites.

The profile, and the settings saved to it, can be transferred to a MINI ID. The MINI ID is then displayed instead of the profile.

Guest profile

"Guest": This profile can be used to operate the vehicle without changing the settings saved for other profiles.

This profile is subject to the following restrictions, among others:

- Changed settings are not saved.
- Automatic driver detection and the PIN cannot be associated with a user.
- The name and profile image cannot be changed.
- Synchronization with the MINI Cloud is not enabled.
- Certain functions are not available, e.g., individual navigation functions or saving favorites.

System limits

It may not be possible to clearly identify the driver using the vehicle key or digital key in the following situations, for example:

- When switching drivers without locking and unlocking the vehicle.
- If multiple vehicle keys or multiple digital keys linked to a MINI ID are located outside the vehicle on the driver's side.
- If the vehicle was unlocked from the MINI App.

There are technical limitations to using the settings for a MINI ID in other vehicles. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available in other vehicles, or available in a non-compatible version.

Driver profiles

Principle

Driver profiles can be used in countries where MINI Connected is not available in order to save and enable personal settings in the vehicle.

Your vehicle can save up to seven driver profiles. If a vehicle is used by several people, each person can use their own driver profile in the vehicle. The guest driver profile can be used when driving the vehicle without a driver profile.

Automatic driver recognition can activate a driver profile as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. A vehicle key must be linked to the driver profile.

Functional requirements

The vehicle must be stationary to create, change, delete, or edit a driver profile.

Welcome screen

A welcome screen appears on the Interaction Unit after the vehicle is unlocked. The type of the welcome depends on the following prerequisites:

- No driver profile is saved to the vehicle:

  The welcome is neutral. A new driver profile can be added.
- Vehicle key has not been assigned to a driver profile:

  The welcome is neutral. Saved driver profiles are shown for selection. A new driver profile can be added.
- A driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key:

  The welcome is personalized, the stored settings are activated. The available driver profiles are shown for selection. A new driver profile can be added.

Driver profile, driver

"Driver": A driver profile allows the driver to save individual vehicle settings as well as create a name for this profile and select a profile image.

Driver profile, guest

"Guest": This driver profile can be used to operate the vehicle without changing the settings saved for other driver profiles.

This profile is subject to the following restrictions, among others:

- Changed settings are not saved.
- Automatic driver detection and the PIN cannot be associated with a user.
- The name and profile image cannot be changed.

Adding a driver profile

1. To add a driver profile, tap the driver profile icon or profile picture on the status bar.
2. "Add profile"
3. Change additional settings as necessary, e.g., automatic driver recognition.

Personalized settings

Automatic driver recognition

Principle

Automatic driver recognition can activate a driver profile as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. A vehicle key must be linked to the driver profile. After unlocking, you can change the driver profile.

If driver recognition has been configured, automatic activation of the driver profile is triggered by the following:

- By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- By unlocking the vehicle using a door handle. You must carry your assigned vehicle key with you.
- By automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle. You must carry your assigned vehicle key with you.

If multiple vehicle keys are located near the vehicle, driver profiles are activated according to the following priority:

- The key that triggers the door locks to release also activates the assigned driver profile.
- The driver profile of the key last detected at the driver's door is activated.

If the driver profile could not be detected when the vehicle was unlocked, select the desired driver profile on the welcome screen.

Setting/adjusting automatic driver recognition

1. To set or configure automatic driver detection, tap the driver profile icon or profile picture on the status bar.
2. "Profile settings"
3. "Driver recognition"
4. Select the desired setting.

Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key assigned to a driver profile can be used to view or change saved personal settings.

Before giving a vehicle key to another person, remove the associated driver detection as necessary.

You can configure driver recognition in the driver profile settings.

Configuring PIN protection

Once saved, driver profiles can be selected by every user of the vehicle. PIN protection can be configured in order to prevent the settings for a driver profile from being changed or the data from being viewed.

1. Tap the driver profile icon or profile picture on the status bar.
2. Select the desired driver profile.
3. "Profile settings"
4. "Lock screen"
5. Enter the desired PIN.

Profile management

Changing driver profiles

The driver profile can be changed at any time using the Interaction Unit.

1. Tap the driver profile icon or profile picture on the status bar.
2. "Change profile"
3. Select the desired driver profile.
4. If necessary, enter a PIN.

The driver profile is activated and associated settings are loaded.

Deleting the driver profile

1. To delete a driver profile, tap the driver profile icon or profile picture on the status bar.
2. "Profile settings"
3. "Manage profiles"
4. Tap the icon to delete the desired driver profile.

System limits

It may not be possible to clearly identify the driver using the vehicle key in the following situations, for example:

- When switching drivers without locking and unlocking the vehicle.
- If multiple vehicle keys linked to a driver profile are located outside the vehicle on the driver's side.

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Vehicle key

Principle

The vehicle comes with one or two vehicle keys, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

MINI Digital Key come with a vehicle key.

Vehicle keys contain a replaceable battery as well as an integrated key.

If the vehicle key cannot be detected, drive-ready state cannot turn on via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

A MINI ID or driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for the button functions. To change the button settings, a MINI ID or driver profile must be assigned to the corresponding vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, service data is saved to the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cell batteries can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and batteries out of reach of children. Immediately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or button cell battery has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

Overview

Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock the vehicle.
	Lock the vehicle. Pre-conditioning, refer to page 294.

Icon	Meaning
	Open the cargo area.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting, refer to page 162.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If a MINI ID or driver profile was assigned to the lost vehicle key, the association to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the MINI ID or driver profile.

Replacing the battery

NOTICE

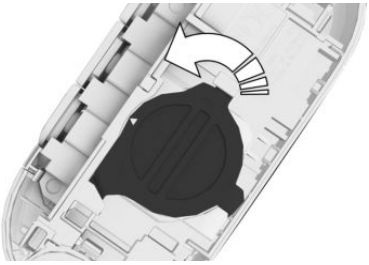
Improper batteries in a battery-operated device can damage the device. There is a risk of property damage. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

To replace the vehicle key battery, proceed as follows:

1. Press and hold the button, arrow 1. At the same time, pull the lower end of the cover out of the detent, arrow 2.

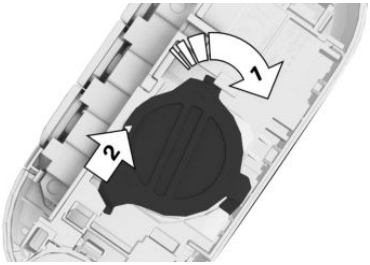
2. Pull the cover out of the upper detent, arrow, then remove the cover.

3. Use a coin to open the battery compartment lid, turning the coin counterclockwise.



4. Remove the battery from the battery housing.

5. Insert a CR2032 3V battery with the positive terminal facing up.
6. Use a coin to close the battery compartment lid, turning the coin clockwise, arrow 1. The lid is fully closed when the arrowheads, arrow 2, point toward each other.



7. Insert the cover in reverse order, arrow 1 and arrow 2. The cover must audibly engage at the top and bottom.

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Batteries contain harmful chemicals. Disposing of batteries with household waste is prohibited by law.

Integrated key

Principle

The integrated key is built into the vehicle key. If the electrical system malfunctions, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked manually using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the glove compartment can be unlocked/locked with the integrated key.

Safety information

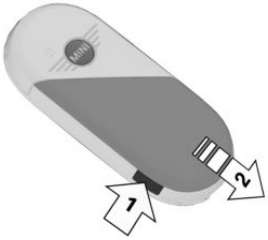
WARNING

There is a risk of injury and danger to life if people or animals remain in the vehicle for a long period of time and are exposed to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

Removing the integrated key

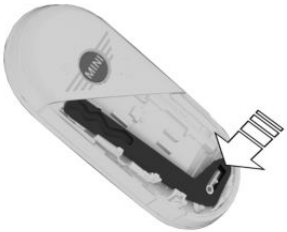
To remove the integrated key, proceed as follows:

1. Press and hold the button, arrow 1. At the same time, push the cover downward and remove it, arrow 2.



2. Push the end of the key head, arrow.

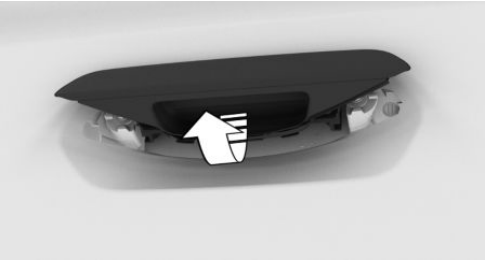
   The integrated key is raised slightly.
3. Remove the integrated key.



Unlocking the vehicle manually

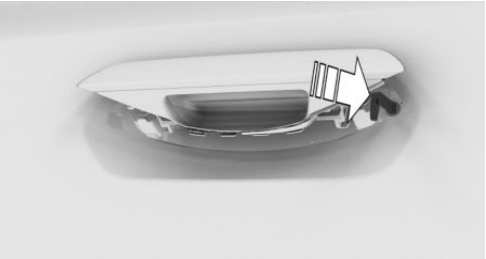
To unlock the vehicle manually, proceed as follows:

1. Pull and hold the driver's door handle outward with one hand.



2. The position of the integrated key in the door lock depends on the vehicle.

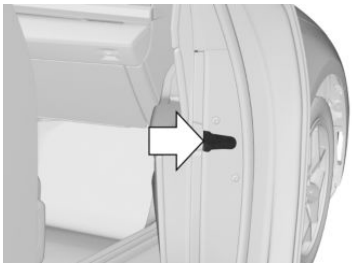
   Unlock the door lock with the integrated key by turning it counterclockwise.



3. Pull out the vehicle key and release the door handle.
4. Open the driver's door.
5. Press the central locking button to unlock the other doors. With the vehicle de-energized: Pull the door opener of the other doors from the inside.

Locking the vehicle manually

Overview



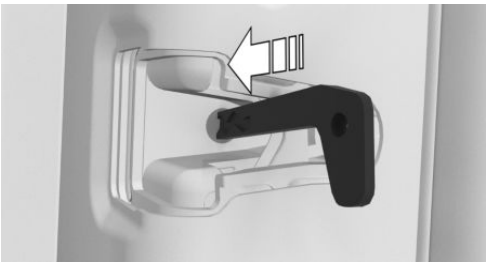
Side door lock for manually locking the doors.

Locking the vehicle

To lock the vehicle, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Enter the vehicle on the front passenger's side and close the front passenger door.
3. Press the central locking button to unlock all doors.
4. Exit the vehicle through the front passenger door.
5. The position of the side key in the door lock depends on the vehicle.

   With the integrated key, close and lock the front passenger door using the side door lock.

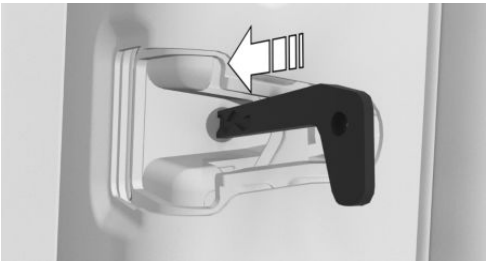


6. Pull the door handles to make sure they are locked. If necessary, repeat the process.

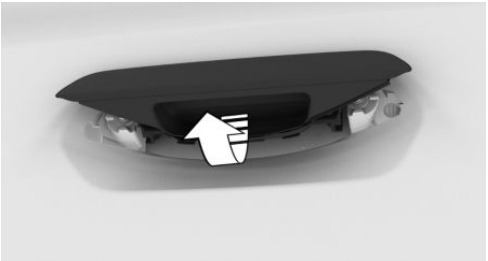
If vehicle is de-energized:

1. The position of the side key in the door lock depends on the vehicle.

   With the integrated key, close and lock all doors, except the driver's door, using the side door lock.

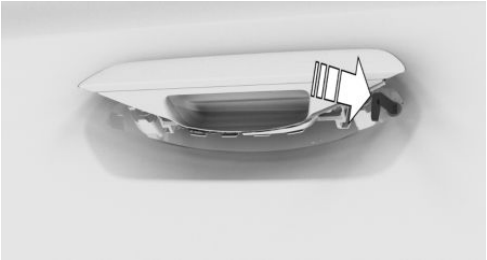


2. Pull and hold the driver's door handle outward with one hand.



3. The position of the integrated key in the door lock depends on the vehicle.

   Lock the door lock using the integrated key, turning it clockwise. Turn the key approx. 50°, beyond the resistance point, to the stop.



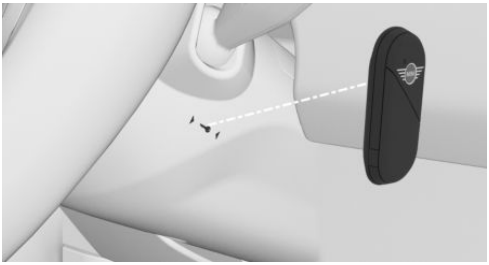
4. Pull out the vehicle key and release the door handle.
5. Close the driver's door.
6. Pull the door handles to make sure they are locked. If necessary, repeat the process.

Emergency detection of the vehicle key

Principle

If the vehicle key cannot be detected, drive-ready state cannot turn on via emergency detection of the vehicle key.

Turning on the drive-ready state



1. To turn on the drive-ready state via emergency detection of the vehicle key, hold the back of the vehicle key to the marking on the steering column.
2. Pay attention to the information shown on the Interaction Unit.
   - If the vehicle key is detected:

     Turn on the drive-ready state within ten seconds.
   - If the vehicle key is not detected:

     Change the position of the vehicle key slightly.

Turning off the alarm system

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key, an alarm may be triggered.

The alarm can be deactivated by emergency detection of the vehicle key.

If the doors are manually locked from the inside, the alarm system is not activated.

Malfunction

The vehicle may be unable to detect the vehicle key. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

The following can cause malfunctions:

- The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- The vehicle key is shielded by a building or metallic object.
- Connection lost due to smartphone or other electronic device located directly next to the vehicle key.
- Radio transmission interrupted by mobile device charging process, e.g., charging a smartphone.
- The vehicle key is in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key. Use the Emergency detection of the vehicle key to turn on the drive-ready state.

MINI Digital Key

Principle

The MINI Digital Key makes it possible to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle using a digital key.

MINI Digital Key availability and range of functions depend on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

MINI Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or other compatible mobile device.

The MINI app is able to check whether the smartphone and vehicle are compatible as well as determine which functions are supported.

Each vehicle can be provided with a main digital key. Additional digital keys can be shared and then deleted.

The Setup Card and Service Card are part of the MINI Digital Key.

A MINI ID or driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone as a digital key, the deactivated Service Card should be located in the vehicle.

The Service Card can be given to other people in situations that require the vehicle to be handed over to another person or to an authorized service center. The Service Card must be activated before it can be handed over.

Additional information:

- MINI ID, refer to page 62.
- Driver profiles, refer to page 66.
- Service Card, refer to page 78.

The respective MINI website provides additional information under the keyword MINI Digital Key.

Functional requirements

The following functional requirements must be met for MINI Digital Key:

- The smartphone is compatible with MINI Digital Key.
- The smartphone's rechargeable battery has sufficient charge. The battery's necessary minimum charge depends on the smartphone.
- The vehicle is linked with the vehicle owner's MINI Connected account.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to unlock/lock the vehicle hands-free with the digital key.

Setup Card

Principle

The Setup Card is used to set up the main digital key. In an emergency, the vehicle can be locked and unlocked manually using the Setup Card. The Setup Card cannot be used to turn on the drive-ready state.

For safety/security reasons, the Setup Card should be stored outside of the vehicle and should only be inside of the vehicle to set up and activate the main digital key.

Vehicle owner's smartphone is enabled as a main digital key in the vehicle. To enable, the vehicle owner must verify their authorization for the vehicle.

Enabling the main digital key with the Setup Card

The Setup Card is used to set up the main digital key. A vehicle key is also required to verify authorization. The Setup Card and the MINI App are used to start the setup process for the main digital key.

1. Hold the Setup Card to the smartphone or scan the QR code using the smartphone camera.
2. Follow the instructions on the smartphone.
3. Complete the activation of the digital master key in the vehicle.
4. Follow the instructions on the smartphone and Interaction Unit.

Sharing digital keys

Principle

The MINI Digital Key makes it possible to share digital keys with other people. This is possible using the vehicle owner's smartphone or a smartphone with the corresponding authorization. This function must be supported by the smartphone.

Sharing a digital key with someone

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for instance in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with another person, the person will receive an invitation. When the invitation is accepted, the digital key on the recipient's smartphone will be activated.

Limiting the range of functions

Certain functions of the digital key can be limited before handing it over. For example, you can disable restrictions for driving stability control systems and reduce the engine power before giving your digital key to a novice driver.

The functional limitations are activated if only the corresponding digital key is in close range of the vehicle and the vehicle is opened at the driver's door. Close range is a radius of approx. 6 ft / 2 m around the driver's door.

To turn on the drive-ready state, place the smartphone in the tray.

A Check Control message appears if there are active functional limitations. This Check Control message can be viewed again in the Message Center.

For more information, refer to the MINI Connected portal and MINI App.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient’s smartphone model, authentication may be required for security purposes.

An authorized vehicle key, a digital key with corresponding authorization, or another method may be used for authentication. Follow the instructions given on the smartphone or Interaction Unit.

Deleting digital keys

Principle

Deleted digital keys will be removed from the list of enabled digital keys. Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

The main digital key can be deleted using the smartphone or via the Interaction Unit. The main digital key is deleted immediately. Any other digital keys remain active.

Shared keys can be deleted using a smartphone with the corresponding authorization, using the smartphone with a shared key, or via the Interaction Unit. A key can only be deleted using a smartphone with corresponding authorization once the vehi-

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

cle is used with a key other than the key to be deleted. Keys are deleted immediately when using the smartphone with shared key or the Interaction Unit to do so.

Deleting a digital key via the Interaction Unit

To delete a digital key via the Interaction Unit, an authorized vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Keys" / "Digital Key".
2. If necessary, select the digital key.
3. "Delete"

Resetting the function

To reset the MINI Digital Key function, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle.

Resetting this function causes all digital keys, including the main digital key, to be deleted.

After the reset, the vehicle can no longer be unlocked, locked or started with a digital key.

The Service Card's digital key will continue to work.

To reset this function, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Keys" / "Digital Key" / "Reset function".

The main digital key must be reactivated in order to use the MINI Digital Key again.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

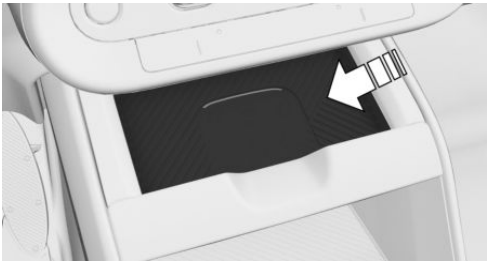
The vehicle can be unlocked and locked as follows:

- Using the door handle.
- With Comfort Access: Depending on the national-market version, the vehicle can be locked and unlocked with no-touch activation.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 79.

Turning on the drive-ready state



1. To turn on the drive-ready state using the MINI Digital Key, place the smartphone in the middle of the tray on the center console with the display facing up.
2. Turn the Start/Stop switch.

With Comfort Access, it is sufficient, depending on the country, for the smartphone with Bluetooth and ultra-wideband enabled to be located inside the vehicle. Turn the Start/Stop switch.

Sale of the smartphone

Delete all digital keys on the smartphone prior to selling the smartphone. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Changing smartphones

To use a new smartphone as the main digital key, first activate the new smartphone according to the instructions for the main digital key. The previous main key can be deleted when the new smartphone is activated.

Sale of the vehicle

Prior to selling a vehicle, reset the MINI Digital Key function or remove the vehicle

from the current vehicle owner's MINI Connected account.

When the vehicle is removed from the MINI Connected account, all digital keys for the vehicle will be deleted. The Service Card's digital key is retained and deactivated.

System limits

If the smartphone turns off due to low battery charge, this smartphone can still be used, for a few hours, to unlock/lock the vehicle and turn on the drive-ready state.

Malfunction

The vehicle may not be able to detect the digital key under the following circumstances:

- The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by a smartphone cover that is not suitable.
- There is an object, e.g., a chip card, between the smartphone and smartphone case.
- Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- The smartphone is shielded by a building or metallic object.
- Some smartphones provide the option to protect the digital key with further authentication. If using the digital key, the user must authenticate themselves, e.g., via PIN, fingerprint, or facial recognition.

  If the recognition system is not functional, the digital key can no longer be used. If neither the vehicle key nor the Service Card is available, the vehicle can be locked/unlocked using Remote Services in the MINI App on another smartphone. Alternatively, the vehicle can be unlocked by the MINI Connected customer call center upon request.

MINI Digital Key Service Card

Principle

The Service Card is part of the MINI Digital Key. A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is stored on the Service Card. The Service Card allows the vehicle to be unlocked/locked and started.

Service Card availability depends on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

The Service Card is required when it is necessary to give other people a physical vehicle key, e.g., for a service appointment. The Service Card must be activated before it can be handed over. If using a smartphone as digital key, the Service Card should be deactivated and kept in the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

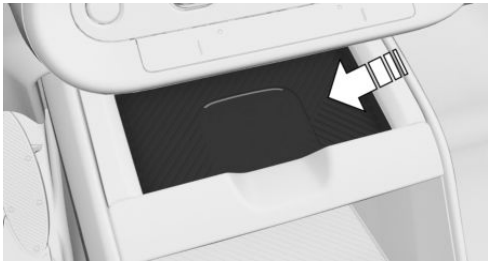
If the Service Card and a mobile device are in the Wireless Charging tray at the same time, the Service Card may become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place the Service Card in the Wireless Charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

Activating/deactivating the Service Card in the vehicle

Functional requirements

A vehicle key or digital key must be located in the vehicle to activate and deactivate the Service Card.

Activating the Service Card



1. To activate the Service Card, place the Service Card in the middle of the tray on the center console.
2. Follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

Deactivating the Service Card

1. To deactivate the Service Card, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Keys".
2. Select the Service Card option.
3. "Deactivate Service Card"

A deactivated Service Card will remain on the list of paired digital keys.

If using a digital key or vehicle key while an activated Service Card is detected, the Interaction Unit will show an additional message to deactivate the Service Card.

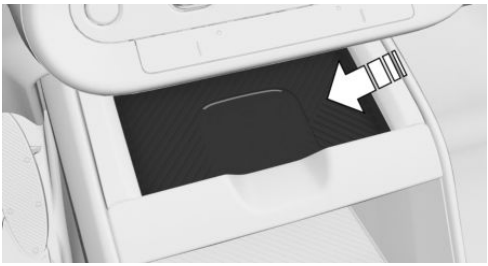
Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked with the activated Service Card.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 79.

Turning on the drive-ready state



1. To turn on the drive-ready state using the Service Card, place the activated Service Card in the middle of the tray on the center console.
2. Turn the Start/Stop switch to activate drive-ready state.

Once drive-ready state is on, the Service Card can be removed from the tray.

Malfunction

The vehicle may not be able to detect the Service Card if there are objects between the smartphone tray and the Service Card, e.g., a wallet or smartphone case.

Access to vehicle interior

Principle

The vehicle can be unlocked/locked as follows:

- With the vehicle key.
- Using the door handle.
- With the Service Card.
- With the MINI Digital Key.
- Hands-free unlocking/locking.
- With the MINI App.

Safety information

WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

WARNING

There is a risk of injury and danger to life if people or animals remain in the vehicle for a long period of time and are exposed to extreme temperatures. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Actions during unlocking

Depending on the settings, unlocking the vehicle from the outside causes the following:

- Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap are unlocked, or all vehicle access points are unlocked.
- Unlocking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- The welcome light can be turned on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a MINI ID or driver profile is assigned to the vehicle key, this MINI ID or driver profile will be activated.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the button inside the vehicle, the exterior mirrors will not fold out when the vehicle is unlocked.
- Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- The alarm system is switched off.

Additional information:

- Settings, refer to page 89.
- Welcome lights, refer to page 161.
- MINI ID, refer to page 62.
- Driver profiles, refer to page 66.

Actions during locking

Depending on the settings, locking the vehicle from the outside causes the following:

- Locking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors can be folded in automatically when locking. The exterior

mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- All doors, the cargo area, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- After locking, the indicator light on the interior mirror flashes every two seconds.
- The alarm system is switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still turned on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn will honk twice. If the vehicle honks twice, turn off drive-ready state using the Start/Stop switch. If selector lever position N is engaged and drive-ready state is turned off, the vehicle horn will sound twice and the vehicle will not lock.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 89.

With the vehicle key

Unlocking the vehicle

To unlock the vehicle using the vehicle key, press the unlock button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings in place, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

After opening one of the front doors, the vehicle is ready for operation.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Locking the vehicle

1. To lock the vehicle using the vehicle key, close the driver's door.
2. Press the lock button on the vehicle key.

On the door handle

Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without using the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Function availability depends on vehicle equipment.

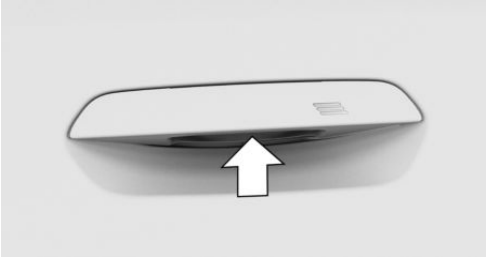
Depending on national-market version, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked via the door handle using a compatible smartphone and digital key.

Functional requirements

To get inside the vehicle using the door handle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to unlock/lock the vehicle with the digital key.
- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- After locking, wait approx. two seconds before unlocking.

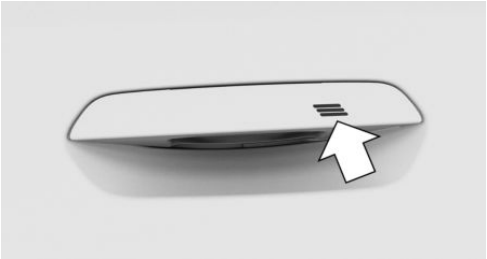
Unlocking the vehicle using the door handle



To unlock the vehicle using the door handle, reach into the recessed grip on one of the front doors.

Locking the vehicle with the door handle

1. To lock the vehicle using the door handle, close the driver's door.
2. With your finger, touch and hold the grooved surface on the closed front door handle for approx. one second without reaching into the recessed grip.



Malfunction

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request detection on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Touchless unlocking/locking of the vehicle

Principle

The vehicle can be unlocked/locked hands-free.

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Depending on the national-market version, touchless unlocking and locking is also possible for compatible smartphones with a digital key. To use the digital key for hands-free locking/unlocking, Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone.

The vehicle will be unlocked when an authorized vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 5 ft / 1.50 m around the side and rear of the vehicle.

The vehicle will be locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 9 ft / 3 m around the side and rear of the vehicle.

Automatic unlocking and locking must be activated in the settings.

If the vehicle key is located in the unlocking zone for an extended period of time without movement, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

If someone is detected on a seat while locking the vehicle, the following restrictions apply:

- The vehicle will be locked but not secured against theft.
- The alarm system is not activated.
- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Actions during unlocking

If the settings specify that only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked, note the following:

The driver's door and fuel filler flap will only be unlocked when the driver approaches the vehicle on the driver's side.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 89.

Functional requirements

To unlock/lock the vehicle hands-free, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to unlock/lock the vehicle hands-free with the digital key.
- Automatic unlocking/locking is enabled in the settings.
- Drive-ready state is switched off.
- If the vehicle has been in idle state for several days, the vehicle must be driven first in order to use hands-free unlocking/locking.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 89.

With the Service Card

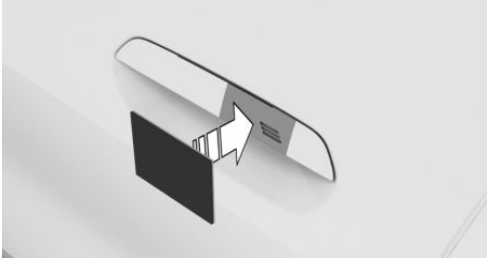
Principle

The Service Card is a chip card on which the digital key is stored. The Service Card can be used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Service Card, refer to page 78.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the Service Card



Hold the activated Service Card directly over the middle of the driver's door handle.

When locking the vehicle with the Service Card, make sure that all doors and the cargo area are closed.

If the Service Card is not detected, change the position of the Service Card slightly and repeat the procedure.

With MINI Digital Key

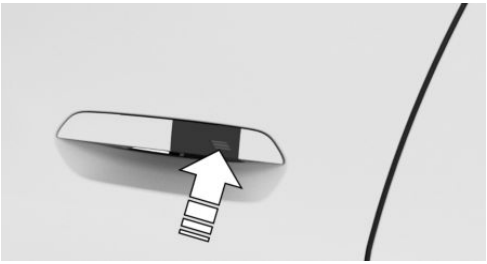
Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, a digital key can be installed on a compatible smartphone and used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

MINI Digital Key, refer to page 75.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the MINI Digital Key



To unlock/lock the vehicle with the MINI Digital Key, hold the smartphone's NFC antenna directly over the middle of the driver's door handle. The position of the near field communication antenna depends on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors and the cargo area are closed.

With the MINI App

The MINI App's Remote Services include options for locking/unlocking a vehicle, among others.

This requires an active MINI Connected contract and the MINI App must be installed on a smartphone.

Access to the cargo area

Principle

The cargo area can be opened and closed as follows:

- With the vehicle key.
- In the cargo area.
- Inside the vehicle.
- Hands-free opening/closing.

The tailgate will be opened to the configured opening height.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

WARNING

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

WARNING

Sharp or pointed objects may strike the window glass and heating elements when driving. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects are not able to strike the window glass.

With the vehicle key

Principle

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the following settings can be changed:

- Unlocking the cargo area with the vehicle key also unlocks the doors.
- Before unlocking the cargo area with the vehicle key, first unlock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To access the cargo area using the vehicle key, the following functional requirements must be met:

- To open, the trailer socket must not be occupied.
- To open, selector lever position P must be engaged.
- Opening with the vehicle key is enabled in the settings.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 89.

Opening the cargo area

To open the cargo area press and hold the open/close button for the cargo area on the vehicle key for approx. one second.

On the cargo area

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, the cargo area can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

The key is detected automatically when near the vehicle rear.

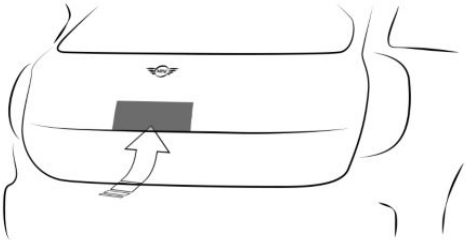
Depending on the national-market version, compatible smartphones with a digital key are also detected automatically. In this case, the cargo area can be opened with a smartphone.

Functional requirements

To access the cargo area using the cargo area, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to detect the digital key.

Opening the cargo area

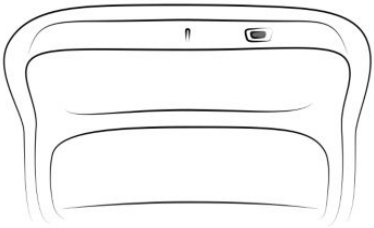


The cargo area can be opened as follows:

- Unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outer side of the cargo area.
- With Comfort Access: Carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the outside of the cargo area.

  Locked doors are not unlocked.

Closing the cargo area



The cargo area can be closed as follows:

- Press the button for closing the cargo area on the inside of the tailgate.
- On the inside of the tailgate, press the lock button.

  The vehicle is locked after closing the cargo area. The driver's door

must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the cargo area.
- Pull the tailgate down slightly. The tailgate closes automatically.

In the interior

Functional requirements

To open the cargo area using the button in the vehicle interior, the trailer socket must not be occupied.

To open the cargo area using the button in the vehicle interior, the vehicle key or digital key must be located in the vehicle interior.

When the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged before the tailgate can be opened using the button in the vehicle interior.

Opening the cargo area

To open the cargo area, press the open/close button for the cargo area in the tray on the driver's door.

Closing the cargo area

To close the cargo area, pull and hold the open/close button for the cargo area in the tray on the driver's door.

An acoustic signal sounds before the cargo area is closed.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening process stops in the following situations:
- When the vehicle starts moving.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the cargo area. Pressing it again closes the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the cargo area. Pressing it again closes the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key.

  Pressing the button again continues the opening process.
- By pressing or pulling the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door. Pressing again continues the opening procedure.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing process stops in the following situations:
- If the vehicle drives off with a jerky movement.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the cargo area. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the cargo area. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing it again opens the cargo area again.
- By releasing the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door. Pulling again and holding continues the closing motion.

Touchless opening and closing of the cargo area

Principle

This function is available with Comfort Access and depends on the national-market version.

Depending on the national-market version, contactless opening and closing of the cargo

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

area is also possible for compatible smartphones with a digital key.

Touchless opening and closing of the cargo area is possible when carrying the vehicle key on your person.

Sensors detect specific foot movements near the center of the rear area, and the cargo area opens or closes.

If contactless opening is used for the cargo area, the locked doors will not be unlocked.

If the vehicle key is located outside of the vehicle rear, the cargo area may open or close inadvertently if any unintentional movement is detected and interpreted as foot movement.

Safety information

WARNING

With hands-free opening of the cargo area, there may be unintentional contact with vehicle parts, e.g., hot exhaust system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To open/close the cargo area hands-free, the following functional requirements must be met:

- To close the cargo area hands-free, the automatic tailgate must be installed.
- Selector lever position P is engaged.
- Hands-free opening/closing of the cargo area is activated in the settings.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to open/close the luggage compartment hands-free with the digital key.
- The trailer socket is not occupied.
- A vehicle key or digital key is located directly behind the cargo area.
- It may not be possible to install trailer hitches depending on vehicle equipment.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 89.

Hands-free opening of the cargo area

1. Carry a vehicle key or digital key with you.
2. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle, approx. one forearm's length from the rear of the vehicle.

3. Move your foot under the vehicle in the driving direction and pull it back immediately. The foot movement is only complete when the foot has reached the ground again.

4. Wait until the hazard warning system flashes to confirm the foot movement. The cargo area opens automatically. If the foot movement is not detected, move your foot slightly to the right or left of center again, as necessary.

Depending on vehicle equipment, moving a foot again will stop the opening process. The subsequent foot movement will close the cargo area again.

Hands-free closing of the cargo area

To close the cargo area hands-free, move your foot in the same way as for opening the cargo area.

The hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving a foot again will stop the closing process. The subsequent foot movement will open the cargo area again.

System limits

The detection of the foot movement may be limited due to the following external conditions:

- Ice, snow or slush on the rear of the vehicle.
- Dirt or road salt on the rear of the vehicle.
- If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g., by stickers or covers.
- After paint work was done incorrectly on the rear of vehicle.

Movement within sensor range may cause the cargo area to open/close unintentionally, e.g., when objects are lifted quickly into the rear of the vehicle, or due to the moving brushes of a car wash. To prevent such unintended opening of the cargo area in such cases, keep the vehicle key at a sufficient distance from the rear of the vehicle.

Malfunction

The vehicle may be unable to detect the vehicle key if there are any objects or electronic devices between the vehicle key and the vehicle. Do not transport the vehicle key together with metallic objects or electronic devices. For example, do not carry the vehicle key together with a smartphone.

Malfunction

WARNING

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can release itself unexpectedly from the blocking. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If the tailgate is experiencing an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate by hand with slow, smooth movements.

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only. Closing occurs automatically.

Buttons for the central locking system

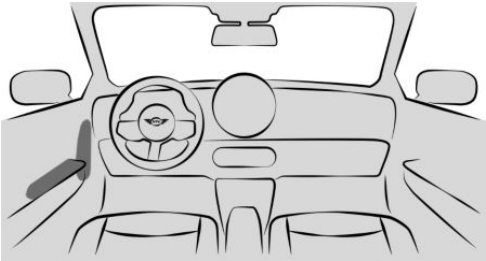
Principle

The vehicle can be locked/unlocked from the inside using the central locking system buttons.

The vehicle is automatically locked when driving off.

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights are illuminated.

Overview



The central locking system buttons are located on the driver's door.

The lock button.

The unlock button.

Locking the vehicle from inside

To lock the vehicle from the inside, press the lock button on the driver's door when the doors are closed.

If the vehicle was locked from the inside, the LED in the button illuminates.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking the vehicle from inside

To unlock the vehicle from the inside, press the unlock button on the driver's door.

Opening the door

When the vehicle is locked, doors can be opened as follows:

- On the front door, press the unlock button to unlock all doors. Then pull the door opener on the door to be opened.
- Front doors: Pull the door opener on the door to be opened. The other doors remain locked.
- Rear doors: Pull the door opener twice on the door to be opened: The first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Settings

Principle

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

Unlocking and locking

Enabling/disabling unlocking/locking of the doors

1. To unlock/lock the doors, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Doors and windows" / "Lock" / "Lock/unlock" / "Unlock".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Touchless unlocking/locking

1. To unlock/lock the vehicle hands-free, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Doors and windows" / "Lock" / "Lock/unlock".
2. Select the desired setting:

- "Unlock when approaching"
- "Lock when walking away"

  Enabling this setting also activates automatic folding of the exterior mirrors. Automatic folding of the exterior mirrors can be deactivated again in the corresponding menu.

Automatic unlocking

1. To unlock the vehicle automatically, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Doors and windows" / "Lock" / "Lock/unlock".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Unlock doors at end of trip"
   - "Doors will unlock automatically when in P."

If locked, the vehicle unlocks automatically when drive-ready state is turned off or selector lever position P is engaged.

Automatic locking

To lock the vehicle automatically, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Doors and windows" / "Lock" / "Lock/unlock" / "Lock after a short time".

The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. To adjust the vehicle confirmation signal, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Doors and windows" / "Lock" / "Lock/unlock".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Flash when unlocking"

     Unlocking is confirmed by two flashes.
   - "Flash when locking"

     Locking is confirmed by one flash.
   - With alarm system:

     "Sound on lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding in the exterior mirrors automatically

To configure the exterior mirrors to fold in automatically, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Doors and windows" / "Lock" / "Lock/unlock" / "Fold mirrors on lock/unlock".

Cargo area

Setting the cargo area button on the vehicle key

It is possible to choose where to assign the cargo area button on the vehicle key.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Keys" / "Vehicle key" / "Tailgate button".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Tailgate"

     Depending on the equipment, the cargo area will be unlocked or opened.
   - "Tailgate and door(s)"

     Depending on the equipment, the cargo area will be unlocked or opened and the doors are unlocked.
   - "Only open when the vehicle has been unlocked beforehand."

     The vehicle must be unlocked before the cargo area can be operated with the vehicle key.
   - "Lock tailgate button"

     Operating the cargo area with the vehicle key is disabled.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate can be opened.

When adjusting the opening height, make sure the clearance above the tailgate is at least 4 in/10 cm.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Doors and windows" / "Tailgate" / "Opening height".
2. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

Opening/closing the cargo area with no-touch activation

1. To configure the settings for hands-free opening/closing of the cargo area, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Doors and windows" / "Tailgate".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Open with foot movement"
   - "Close with foot movement"

Windows

Opening windows automatically

1. To configure the settings for automatic opening of the windows, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Doors and windows".
2. Select the desired setting.

If this setting is enabled, the driver's window opens automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches the saved location.

Alarm system

Principle

The alarm system issues a visual and acoustic signal when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle incorrectly.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are part of the alarm system.

The indicator light on the interior mirror shows the status of the alarm system, e.g., whether the alarm system is on or whether an alarm has been triggered.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Causes of an alarm

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- If a door, the hood, or the cargo area is opened.
- If movement is detected inside the vehicle.
- If the vehicle inclination has changed, e.g., due to an attempt to steal a wheel or when towing.
- If the battery voltage is interrupted.
- If the diagnostic socket is used incorrectly.
- If the vehicle is locked while a device is connected to the diagnostic socket.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Optical alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Turning the alarm system on/off

The alarm system is activated or deactivated as soon as the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

The alarm system does not turn on if the vehicle is locked manually from the inside.

Opening doors with the integrated key

The alarm system triggers when a door is opened if this door is unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key, the drive-ready state must subsequently be turned on via the emergency detection of the vehicle key.

Opening the cargo area with the alarm system switched on

The cargo area can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After closing the cargo area, the cargo area will be locked and monitored again. The hazard warning system flashes once during closing.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

The alarm system can be triggered as follows:

- Press and hold the panic mode button on the vehicle key for at least three seconds.
- Press the panic mode button on the vehicle key three times in quick succession.

To turn off the alarm, press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

The indicator light on the interior mirror shows the status of the alarm system:

- Indicator light flashes every two seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator lights flash for approx. ten seconds, then indicator lights flash every two seconds:

  The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not activated because the doors, hood, or tailgate are not closed correctly. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will turn on when all open access points are closed.
- The indicator light flashes even though all access points have been closed:

  Alarm system error.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- After unlocking, the indicator light flashes until drive-ready state is turned on, but no longer than approx. five minutes:

  The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt alarm sensor is part of the alarm system and monitors the vehicle inclination.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The interior motion sensor is part of the alarm system and monitors the vehicle interior.

The alarm system triggers when movement is detected inside the vehicle.

The windows must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

Principle

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

An unintentional alarm can be triggered in the following situations:

- In car washes or tunnel car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on car-carrying trains, ships, or trailers.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of refueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be turned off as follows:

- As soon as the vehicle is locked, press the lock button on the vehicle key within 30 seconds.

  The indicator light illuminates for approx. two seconds and then continues to flash.
- After standby state turns off, an option to deactivate the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor appears on the Interaction Unit.
- With a digital key via the MINI App.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are deactivated until the vehicle is locked again.

Ending the alarm

To stop the alarm, unlock the vehicle.

Windows

Principle

The windows can be operated as follows:

- With the vehicle key.
- Using the door handle.
- Using the switches inside the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the windows is clear while opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

Opening windows with the vehicle key

To open the windows with the vehicle key, unlock the vehicle, then press and hold the unlock button on the vehicle key.

The windows open for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing windows with the vehicle key

With Comfort Access: To close the windows with the vehicle key, lock the vehicle, then press and hold the lock button on the vehicle key.

The windows close for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in, unless they were folded in when the vehicle was locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

On the door handle

Principle

The windows can be closed using the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

The function is available with Comfort Access.

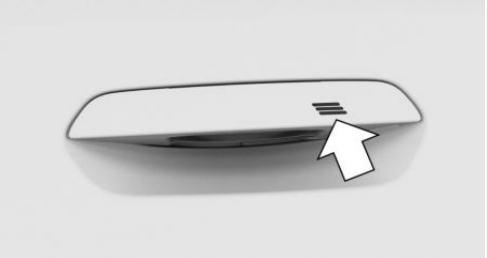
Depending on national-market version, the windows can also be closed via the door handle using a compatible smartphone and digital key.

Functional requirements

To close the windows using the door handle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to close the windows with the digital key.

Closing windows with the door handle



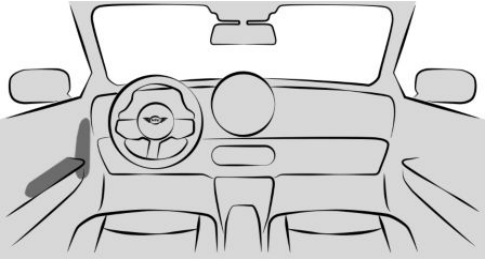
To close a window using the door handle of a closed front door, place a finger on the grooved surface of the door handle and hold it there without reaching into the recessed grip.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in, unless they were folded in when the vehicle was locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

Inside the vehicle

Overview



The power window switches are located on the doors.

Functional requirements

The vehicle key or a digital key is inside the vehicle.

Opening windows

To open the windows, proceed as follows:

– On the door, press the power window switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.

– On the door, pull the power window switch past the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing the windows

To close the windows, proceed as follows:

– On the door, pull the power window switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.

– On the door, pull the power window switch past the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically. Pulling again stops the motion.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or body parts from becoming trapped between the door frame and window glass while a window is closing.

If resistance or blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing will be interrupted.

Safety information

WARNING

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact anti-trap mechanism. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the travel path of the windows.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. On the door, pull the power window switch past the resistance point and hold it.

   The window closes with limited anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. On the door, pull the power window switch past the resistance point again within approx. four seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Opening windows automatically

If the driver's window is frequently opened in the same location, the window can be set to open automatically. This is useful if you frequently use the same parking garage, for example.

For the driver's window to open automatically, the vehicle speed must be below 6 mph/10 km/h and there must be sufficient GPS reception.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 89.

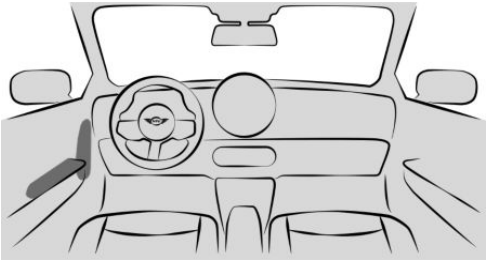
Safety switch

Principle

The safety switch can be used, for example, to prevent children from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Overview



The safety switch is located on the driver's door.

Turning the safety functions on/off

To activate/deactivate the safety function, press the safety switch on the driver's door.

The LED in the button illuminates when the safety function is turned on.

Glass sunroof

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

Principle

The glass sunroof and sun protection can be operated as follows:

- With the vehicle key.
- Using the door handle.
- Inside the vehicle.

With the vehicle key

Opening glass sunroof

To open the glass sunroof, unlock the vehicle, then press and hold the unlock button on the vehicle key.

The glass sunroof opens for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing glass sunroof

With Comfort Access: To close the glass sunroof, lock the vehicle, then press and hold the lock button on the vehicle key when close to the vehicle.

The glass sunroof closes for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in, unless they were folded in when the vehicle was locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning system is turned on.

On the door handle

Principle

The glass sunroof can be closed using the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The function is available with Comfort Access.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

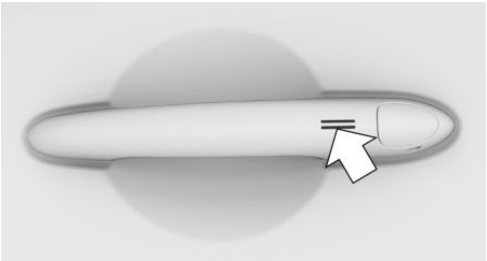
Depending on the country, the glass sunroof can also be closed via the door handle using compatible smartphones and your digital key.

Functional requirements

To close the glass sunroof using the door handle, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Bluetooth and ultra-wideband must be enabled on the smartphone in order to close the glass sunroof hands-free with the digital key.

Closing glass sunroof



To close the glass sunroof using the driver's door handle, touch the grooved surface on the driver's door handle with your finger and hold it there without reaching into the recessed grip.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof will be closed.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors are folded in, unless they were folded in when the vehicle was locked. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

Inside the vehicle

Principle

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

Overview

The glass sunroof/sun protection switch is located in the headliner.

Functional requirements

To operate the glass sunroof, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key must be inside the vehicle.

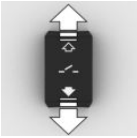
Lifting/closing glass sunroof

To raise/close the glass sunroof, briefly press the glass sunroof switch in the headliner upward.

- The closed glass sunroof tilts.
- The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position.
- The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately

To open/close the glass sunroof and sun protection separately, proceed as follows:



- In the headliner, push the glass sunroof/sun protection switch back to the resistance point and hold it.

  Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already completely open, the glass sunroof opens.
- Push the switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or tilted, the sun protection closes.
- Push the switch back past the resistance point.

  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already completely open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

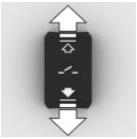
  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.
- Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or tilted, the sun protection closes automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together

To open/close the glass sunroof and sun protection together, proceed as follows:



- In the headliner, push the glass sunroof/sun protection switch backward twice, in quick succession, past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sun protection open together.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.
- Briefly push the switch out and forward, twice in quick succession, past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sun protection close together.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

On some models, there is less wind noise inside the vehicle when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the glass sunroof and sun protection switch in the headliner opens the glass sunroof fully.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

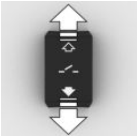
The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof frame and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

If resistance or a blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, it will stop closing when the roof reaches the half-open

position or when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

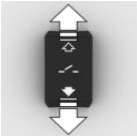


1. Close all doors.
2. Turn on the drive-ready state or stop the vehicle if moving.
3. In the headliner, press the glass sunroof switch forward, past the resistance point, and hold it there.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a certain threshold, closing is stopped.
4. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold, until the glass sunroof closes without the anti-trap mechanism. Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:



1. Close all doors.
2. Turn on the drive-ready state or stop the vehicle if moving.
3. In the headliner, press the glass sunroof switch forward, past the resistance point, and hold it there.

Initializing after a power interruption

Principle

If the power is interrupted while opening or closing, it may not be possible to fully operate the glass sunroof. In this case, it can be helpful to initialize the system.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.
- The drive-ready state is established.
- The outside temperature is above 41°F/5°C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Initializing the system

To initialize the system, in the headliner, press the glass sunroof switch upward and hold it until initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof has opened then closed again.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, having the correct seat position and using the protection systems correctly both play an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters:

- Seats, refer to page 100.
- Seat belts, refer to page 105.
- Head restraints, refer to page 108.
- Airbags, refer to page 170.

Front seats

Safety information

WARNING

Adjusting the seat while driving can cause the seat to move unexpectedly, which may lead to an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the seat belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in an accident. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

WARNING

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Manually adjustable seats

Principle

Manually adjustable seats are operated using the levers on the seat.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Overview

The levers for setting the seats are located on the front seats.

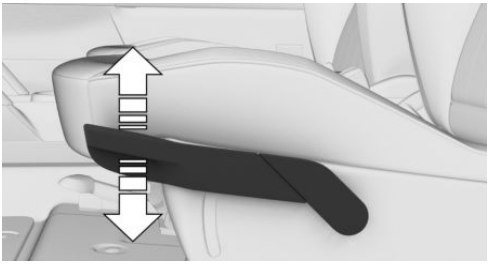
Setting the longitudinal direction

WARNING

If a seat is not locked, it may move unexpectedly while driving. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. After adjusting, move the seat forward or back slightly, making sure the seat engages properly.

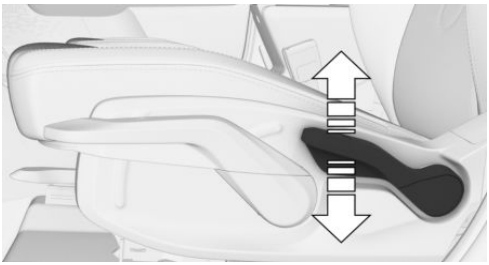
To adjust the longitudinal direction, pull up the longitudinal direction lever at the front of the seat and push the seat in the desired direction.

Adjusting the height



To adjust the height: On the side of the seat, push the seat height lever up or down as many times as necessary for the seat to reach the desired height.

Adjusting backrest tilt



To adjust the backrest tilt, pull the backrest tilt lever on the side of the seat and tighten or loosen the backrest as required.

Electrically adjustable seats

Principle

Electrically adjustable seats are operated using the switches on the seat.

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

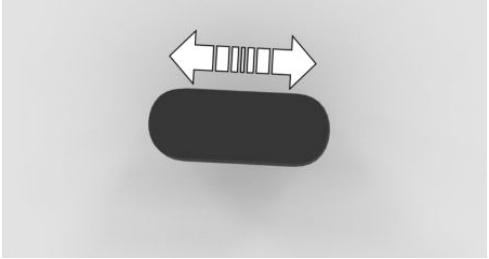
Additional information:

Memory function, refer to page 113.

Overview

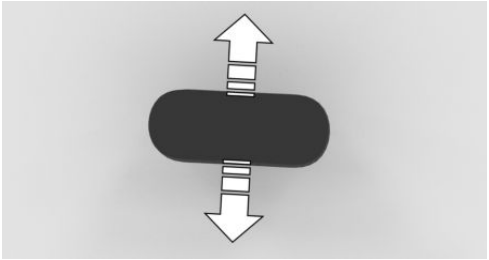
The switches for setting the seats are located on the front seats.

Setting the longitudinal direction



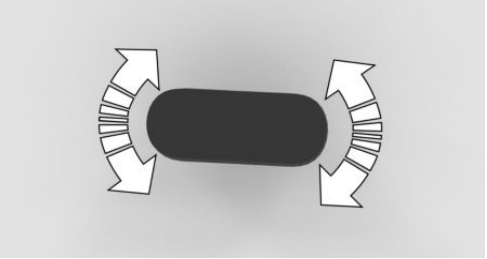
To adjust the seat in the longitudinal direction, press the longitudinal direction switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the height



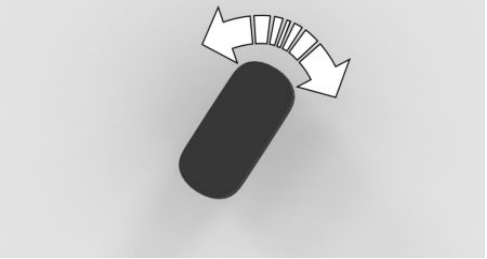
To adjust the seat height, press the seat height switch up or down.

Adjusting seat tilt



To adjust the seat tilt, flip the seat tilt switch up or down.

Adjusting backrest tilt



To adjust the backrest tilt, flip the backrest tilt switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the seat position automatically

Principle

The seat setting for the driver's seat is saved to the active MINI ID or driver profile. If the MINI ID or driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the saved seat position will be applied automatically.

Activate/deactivate the function

1. To activate/deactivate automatic adjustment of the seat position, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu /

"Vehicle" / "Seat comfort" / "Driver" / "Automatically use seat position".

2. Select the desired setting.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright sitting position.

Adjusting the lumbar support

To adjust the lumbar support, proceed as follows:

- To increase or decrease the bulge, press the lumbar support button forward or backward.
- To move the bulge up or down, press the lumbar support button up or down.

Functional limitation

It may not be possible to adjust the lumbar support at very high and very low temperatures.

Seat massage

Principle

Using the seat massage helps relax the muscles and improve circulation in the lumbar region, which, in turn, helps prevent fatigue.

Seat massage menu

To go directly to the Seat Massage menu on the Interaction Unit, press the seat massage button on the seat.

Turning the seat massage on/off

To turn the seat massage on/off, proceed as follows:

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Seat comfort".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. "Seat massage"
4. Select the desired setting, as necessary.

The seat massage is stopped when the lumbar support is operated.

Calibrating the front seats

Principle

If the electric seat adjuster is no longer working properly, the driver's seat is calibrated automatically. The driver's seat is calibrated automatically after the vehicle is exited and the doors closed.

If the driver's seat cannot be calibrated automatically or calibration of the front passenger seat is required, a Check Control message appears on the Interaction Unit. The front seats must be calibrated in order for the electric seat adjuster to work properly again.

Safety information

WARNING

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Functional requirements

To calibrate the front seats, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Selector lever position P is engaged.
- The seat to be calibrated is unoccupied.

Calibrating the front seat manually

1. To calibrate the rear seat position, press and hold the longitudinal direction switch backward until the seat stops.
2. Repeat step 1 until the seat stops then moves slightly in the opposite direction. The rear end position is calibrated.
3. To calibrate the front seat position, press and hold the longitudinal direction switch forward until the seat stops.
4. Repeat step 3 until the seat stops then moves slightly in the opposite direction. The front end position is calibrated.

As soon as the message on the Interaction Unit disappears, the calibration is complete. If the message remains active, repeat the calibration.

If the message is still shown after repeated calibration, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rear seats

Principle

The backrest tilt and, depending on vehicle equipment, longitudinal direction can be adjusted as needed for the second seat row.

Safety information

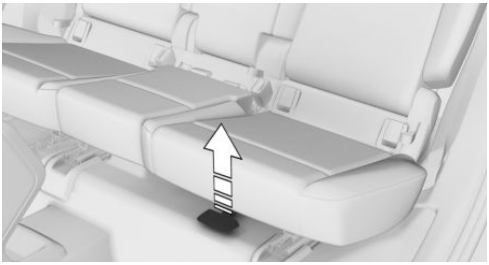
WARNING

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Longitudinal direction

WARNING

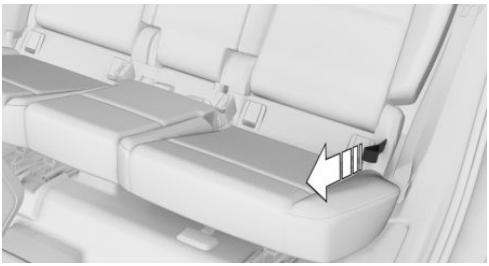
If a seat is not locked, it may move unexpectedly while driving. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. After adjusting, move the seat forward or back slightly, making sure the seat engages properly.



To adjust the longitudinal direction of the second row seats, pull the longitudinal direction lever at the front of the seat and push the seat in the desired direction.

Backrest tilt

1. Pull the loop on the side of the seat to release the rear seat backrest.



2. Add or remove weight on the rear seat backrest as needed.

After setting the backrest tilt, make sure that the rear seat backrest engages correctly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Comfort exit

Principle

The comfort exit setting makes it easier to get in/out of the vehicle by automatically adjusting the seat position and moving the seat back.

Activating/deactivating comfort exit

1. To activate/deactivate comfort exit, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Seat comfort" / "Comfort exit".
2. Select the desired setting.

Seat belts

Principle

The vehicle is fitted with five seat belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Always make sure that seat belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags do not replace seat belts.

All seat belt anchorage points are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect of the seat belts when used properly and with the correct seat settings.

The two outer seat belt buckles of the rear seats are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center seat belt buckle of the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

Additional information:

Notes on sitting safely, refer to page 100.

Safety information

WARNING

Use of a seat belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the seat belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not strap in more than one person per single seat belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, and must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

WARNING

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing seat belts correctly.

WARNING

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may be limited or fail in the following situations:

- The seat belts or seat belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Seat belt tensioners or seat belt winders were modified.

Seat belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Keep clean and do not modify: Seat belts, seat belt buckles, seat belt tensioners, seat belt winders, and seat belt anchors. After an accident, have the seat belts checked by an author-

ized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

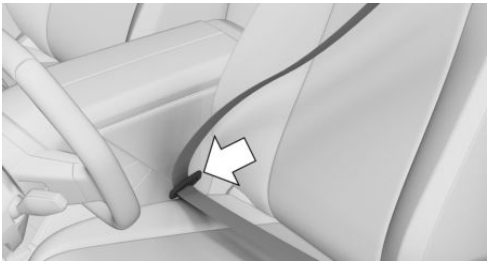
Correct use of seat belts

To use the seat belts correctly, note the following:

- Wear the seat belt so that it fits tightly to your body over your pelvis and shoulder and is not twisted.
- Wear the seat belt low down on your hips in the pelvic region. The seat belt must not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the seat belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the seat belt frequently upward in your upper body area.

Fastening the seat belt

1. To fasten the seat belt, guide the seat belt slowly over the shoulder and pelvis.
2. Insert the buckle tongue into the seat belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must engage audibly.



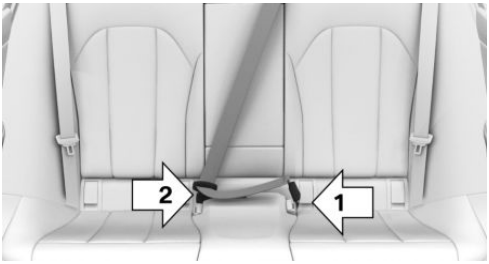
To ease accessibility to the seat belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. To unfasten the seat belt, hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the seat belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back into the seat belt winder.

Middle seat belt in the rear

Fastening the seat belt



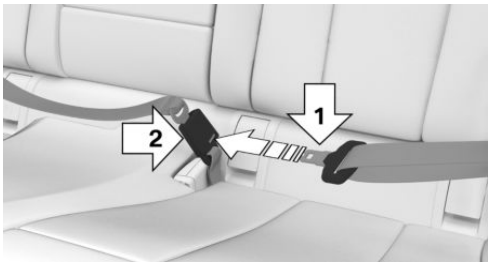
1. To fasten the middle seat belt in the rear, pull the belt tongues out of the mount in the roof.
2. Insert the lower buckle tongue into the belt lock, arrow 1.
3. Insert the upper buckle tongue into the seat belt buckle, arrow 2.

   The seat belt buckles must engage audibly.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. To open the middle seat belt in the rear, hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the seat belt buckle.

3. Open the belt lock, arrow 2, with the buckle tongue, arrow 1.



4. Guide the seat belt to the mount in the roof.

Seat belt reminder

Principle

The Seat Belt Warning warns the driver if the seat belts are not fastened.

The seat belt reminder becomes active in the following situations:

- When the seat belt on the driver's side or on the passenger's side is not fastened.
- When the seat belt is unfastened while driving.
- When objects are lying on a seat.

Views on the Interaction Unit

The indicator light on the Interaction Unit illuminates when drive-ready state and the Seat Belt Warning are on.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable. If a Check Control message appears, check whether the seat belt is fastened correctly.

Icon	Meaning
	Seat belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.
	Seat belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.
	Seat belt is buckled on the corresponding seat.
	Seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding seat.

Rear Occupant Alert

Principle

At the end of the drive, the Rear Occupant Alert informs the driver that occupants may be present on the rear seats.

If a door with access to the rear seat row is operated within 30 minutes before the start of a trip, a notice appears on the Interaction Unit and a signal tone sounds at the end of the drive.

If the drive is continued within 30 minutes, the notice is displayed again after the drive is complete.

Activating/deactivating the Rear Occupant Alert

1. To enable/disable the Rear Occupant Alert, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Rear Occupant Alert".
2. Select the desired setting.

Front head restraints

Safety information

WARNING

The lack of protective effect due to removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- If possible, adjust the head restraint so that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.
- For manually adjustable head restraints: after adjusting, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

WARNING

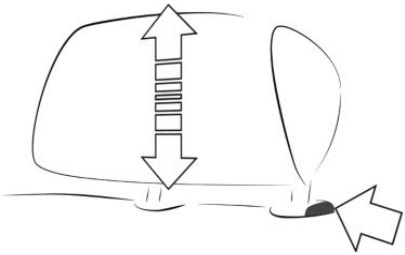
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Adjusting the height



- To raise the head restraint, push the head restraint upward.
- To lower the head restraint, press the release button on the backrest, then push the head restraint downward, arrow.

John Cooper Works sport seat: Adjusting the height

The height of the head restraints cannot be set.

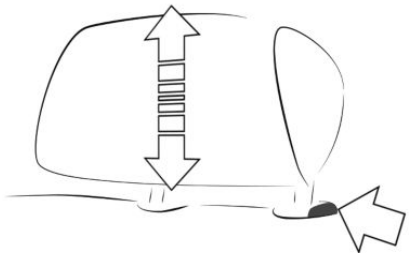
Adjusting the distance

The backrest tilt is used to set the distance between the head restraint and the back of the seat occupant's head.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing/attaching head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint to the resistance point.
2. Press the release button on the backrest, then pull the head restraint completely out, arrow.

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

John Cooper Works sport seat: Removing head restraints

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

WARNING

The lack of protective effect due to removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- If possible, adjust the head restraint so that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.
- For manually adjustable head restraints: after adjusting, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

WARNING

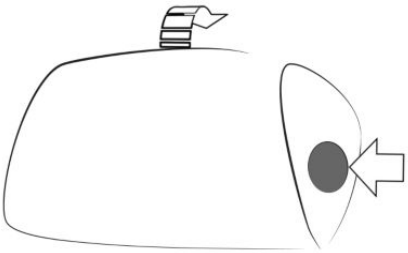
Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the middle head restraint

To improve the view to the rear when a seat is unoccupied, the center head restraint can be folded back.

If someone is sitting on the corresponding seat, fold the head restraint forward to the stop.

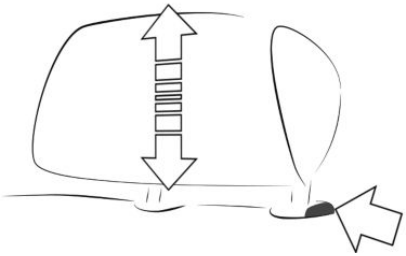


Press the button and fold the head restraint backward, arrow.

To return the head restraint to its initial position, fold the head restraint forward as far as it will go until it engages.

Adjusting the height

If someone is sitting on the corresponding seat, adjust the head restraint so that the center of the head restraint supports the back of their head at eye level.



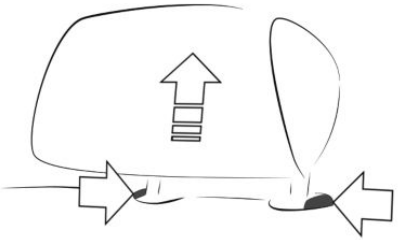
- To raise the head restraint, push the head restraint upward.
- To lower the head restraint, press the release button on the rear seat backrest, then push the head restraint downward, arrow.

Removing/attaching head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

1. Fold down the corresponding rear seat backrest.

   To fold down the rear seat backrest, follow the steps for enlarging the cargo area.
2. Raise the head restraint to the resistance point.
3. Press both release buttons on the rear seat backrest simultaneously, then pull the head restraint completely out, arrows.



Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Additional information:

Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 314.

Exterior mirrors

Principle

Exterior mirror settings are saved to the active MINI ID or driver profile. If the MINI ID or driver profile is reactivated later, the saved position is brought up automatically.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the driver's side exterior mirror also dims automatically. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Depending on vehicle equipment, both exterior mirrors are heated automatically as necessary and when drive-ready state is on.

The front passenger's side exterior mirror is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The current exterior mirror adjustment can be stored using the memory function.

Safety information

WARNING

Objects in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the road users behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirrors in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select left exterior mirror. Automatic Curb Monitor.
	Select right exterior mirror.

Selecting the exterior mirror

– To select the left exterior mirror, press the corresponding button on the driver's door. The LED illuminates.

– To select the right exterior mirror, press the corresponding button on the driver's door. The LED illuminates.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

On the driver's door, press the button for adjusting the exterior mirrors.

The selected exterior mirror moves along with the button movement.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the exterior mirror by pressing on the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in/folding out the exterior mirrors

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in tunnel car washes. There is a risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

To fold the exterior mirrors in/out, press the button for folding the exterior mirrors in/out on the driver's door.

Folding is possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph /20 km/h.

Folding the exterior mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

– In car washes.
– On narrow roads.

If folded in, the exterior mirrors fold out automatically at a vehicle speed of approx. 25 mph / 40 km/h.

Automatic dimming

Depending on vehicle equipment, the driver's side exterior mirror also dims automatically. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment, the mirror glass on the front passenger's side is tilted downward when reverse gear is engaged. Tilting the mirror glass downward improves the driver's view of the curb or other ground-level obstacles, e.g., when pulling into a parking space.

Activating the Automatic Curb Monitor

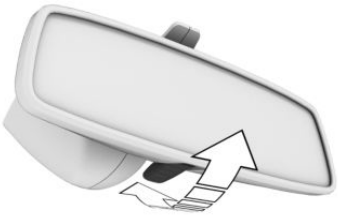
1. To activate the Automatic Curb Monitor, press the exterior mirror button on the driver's door. The LED illuminates.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

When the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, the Automatic Curb Monitor is deactivated.

Deactivating the Automatic Curb Monitor

To deactivate the Automatic Curb Monitor, press the exterior mirror button on the front passenger door. The LED illuminates and the LED of the driver's side outside mirror goes out.

Interior mirror, manually dimmable



To reduce blinding glare from the interior mirror, tilt the lever forward on the manually dimming interior mirror.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

Principle

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells in the mirror glass and on the rear of the mirror are used to control glare.

Overview

Functional requirements

To have the interior mirror dim automatically, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

Steering wheel

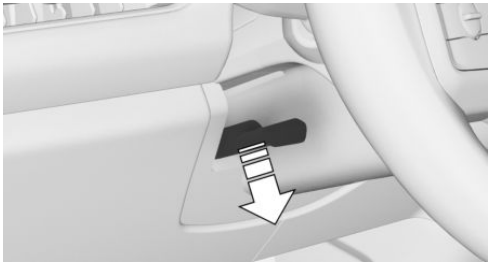
Safety information

WARNING

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Manual steering wheel adjustment

The position of the steering wheel can be changed by manually adjusting the height and longitudinal direction.



1. On the steering column, press the release lever all the way down.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and move the steering wheel to a height and angle that suits the seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror adjustment.
- Height of the Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The settings for the lumbar support will not be stored.

Safety information

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the driver's seat.

Storing settings

To save settings to memory using the buttons, proceed as follows:

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the SET button on the seat. The LED illuminates.
3. Press memory button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A successful save is indicated by a signal tone.

To save settings to memory using the Interaction Unit, proceed as follows:

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Seat comfort".
2. Select the desired seat position.
3. Tap the icon for the SET button.

Calling up settings

To access settings saved to memory using the buttons, proceed as follows:

Press the desired memory button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a seat setting switch or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

1. To bring up the settings in the memory function via the Interaction Unit, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Seat comfort".
2. Select the desired seat.
3. Select the desired seat position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

The right place for children

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

WARNING

A hot vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not leave people, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

WARNING

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

Safety information

WARNING

The seat belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

When using a child restraint system on the front-passenger seat, observe the respective national and local regulations.

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Additional information:

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbag, refer to page 173.

Safety information

WARNING

If activated, the front passenger airbag can injure children seated in a child restraint systems when deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

When selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems, follow the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

The vehicle is equipped with three-point seat belts on all seats. All compatible child restraint systems can be secured with a seat belt.

Declaration according to FMVSS 210, Seat belt assembly anchorages: Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt.

Safety information

WARNING

Child restraint systems may provide limited protection in the following situations:

- The child restraint systems are not installed correctly.
- Children are not properly secured by a child restraint system.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that child restraint systems are installed correctly in the vehicle and that children are properly secured by the child restraint system.

WARNING

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident may be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If attachment systems have been damaged or strained by an accident, have them checked and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Before installation

Before installing child restraint systems, ensure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

Move the rear seats into the rearmost position to facilitate installation of the child restraint system.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating the airbag

WARNING

If activated, the front passenger airbag can injure children seated in a child restraint systems when deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light is illuminated.

After mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Additional information:

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbag, refer to page 173.

Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

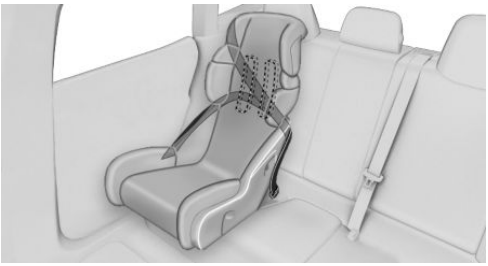
After installing a universal child restraint system, adjust the backrest tilt to achieve the best possible belt routing.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located in front of the seat belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible seat belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: Before installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security



To secure child restraint systems, the rear seat belts and front passenger seat belt can be locked to prevent them from being pulled out.

Locking the seat belt

1. Pull out the seat belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the seat belt.
3. Allow the seat belt strap to retract, then pull it tight against the child restraint system. The seat belt is locked.

Unlocking the seat belt

1. Open the seat belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the seat belt strap to retract completely.

Lower anchors for child restraint systems

Principle

LATCH child restraint systems establish a secure connection to the vehicle in combination with LATCH anchors.

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren.

When selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems, follow the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Mounts for lower anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

WARNING

If the lower anchors on child restraint system are not engaged correctly, the child restraint system will not be able to provide suitable protection. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest.

WARNING

The mounts for the lower anchors and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or attachment points.

WARNING

Exceeding or falling below specified limit values, e.g., weight, distance traveled, or speed, can result in damage and malfunctions as well as put health at risk. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Comply with the specified limit values.

Position

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair (2) of LATCH icons. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to secure a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

Before installing child restraint systems

Before installing a child restraint system, pull the seat belt away from the area of the lower anchors of the child restraint system.

Installing child restraint systems

To install the child restraint system in the vehicle, proceed as follows:

1. Mount the child restraint system in accordance with the instructions from the child seat manufacturer.
2. Make sure that the child restraint system anchors engage correctly on both sides in the lower seat mounts.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

General information

When attaching child restraint systems to the upper attachment points, observe the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer.

Safety information

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that the upper retaining strap is guided to the upper attachment point without twisting and not over sharp edges.

WARNING

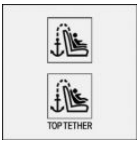
If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or nonexistant. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear seat backrest can fold forward. There is a risk

of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

WARNING

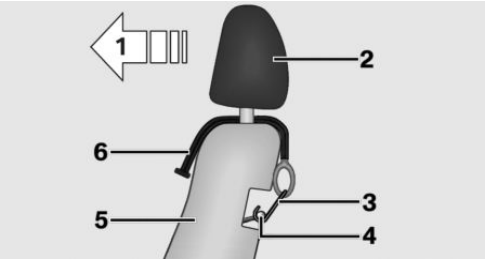
The mounts for the lower anchors and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or attachment points.

Attachment points for upper retaining strap

Icon	Meaning
	The respective icon shows the attachment point for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this icon. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap

Rear seat



1 Driving direction
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Attachment point
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

Rear seat

To attach the upper strap to the attachment point, proceed as follows:

1. Raise the head restraint as needed.
2. Guide the upper strap between the head restraint rods, or along both sides of the head restraint rods, to the attachment point.
3. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.
4. Attach the strap's hook to the attachment point.
5. Tighten the strap.

Locking doors and windows in rear

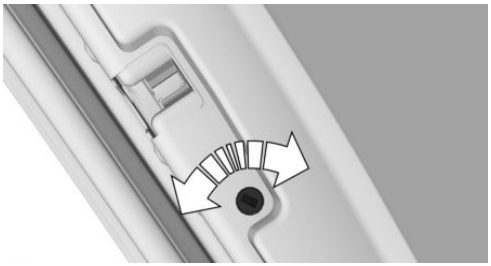
Principle

To prevent the rear doors and windows from being opened from the inside, there is a switch on the corresponding rear door frame as well as a safety switch on the driver's door armrest.

General information

In certain situations it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows, for instance when transporting children.

Doors



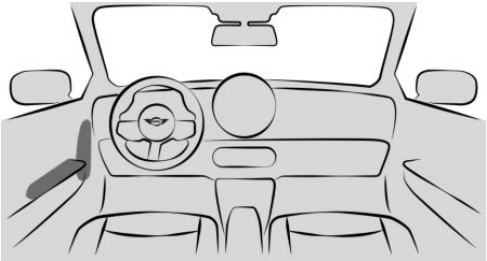
To secure the rear doors, release/lock the safety switch on the rear door using the integrated key.

Icon	Meaning
	Child safety lock.
	Apply the child safety lock.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

After locking, make sure that the door cannot be opened from the inside.

Safety switch for the rear



The safety switch for the rear is located on the driver's door.

Various functions are locked and cannot be operated in the rear such as the power windows.

To lock rear functions, press the safety switch in the driver's door. The LED is illuminated when the safety function is turned on.

Various functions are locked and cannot be operated in the rear such as the power windows.

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

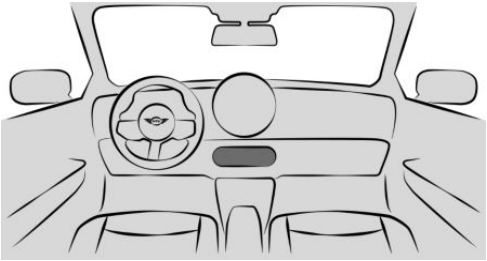
Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Start/Stop switch

Principle

The Start/Stop switch can be used to turn vehicle operating states on/off.

Overview



The Start/Stop switch is labeled ENGINE and located on the switch cluster.

Turning on the drive-ready state

Drive-ready state turns on when the brake pedal is depressed while turning the Start/Stop switch.

Turning the Start/Stop switch again will deactivate drive-ready state and activate standby state.

Additional information:

– Drive-ready state, refer to page 43.
– Standby state, refer to page 43.

Driving off

To drive off with the vehicle, proceed as follows:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Turn the Start/Stop switch.
3. Engage the desired selector lever position, e.g., D or R.
4. To drive off, release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

The parking brake releases automatically when the desired selector lever position is engaged.

Auto Start/Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start/Stop function helps to save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains on even if the engine stops. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

The Auto Start/Stop function switches to standby whenever the engine is started using the Start/Stop button.

The function is activated at low speeds.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

The engine is switched off automatically when stopping under the following conditions:

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

- Selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill, or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's seat belt is buckled, or the driver's door is closed.

Manual engine stop

If the engine did not shut off automatically when the vehicle was stopped, the engine can be shut off manually as follows:

- By quickly depressing the brake pedal from its current position.
- By engaging selector lever position P.

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioning system when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Views on the Interaction Unit

The READY indicator on the Interaction Unit shows that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in situations such as the following:

- In case of a steep downhill grade.
- If the brake pedal is not depressed firmly enough.
- When the outside temperature is high and the air conditioning system is on.
- If the vehicle interior has not been heated or cooled as desired.
- When there is heavy window condensation and the air conditioning system is on.
- If the engine or other parts are not at normal operating temperature.
- If the engine must be cooled.
- Wheels are at a sharp angle or vehicle is being steered on vehicles without mild hybrid technology.
- If the vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- At higher elevations.
- When the hood is unlocked.
- When Hill Descent Control is activated.
- For stop-and-go traffic.
- When selector lever position is S, L, or R.
- After reversing.
- If a traffic situation is detected that is likely to have a very short stop time, e.g., stopping at a stop sign.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- If the accelerator pedal is pressed when Automatic Hold is activated.
- By the driver assistance systems activated, depending on vehicle equipment and driving situation.

Driving off with the Auto Start/Stop function

To drive off, accelerate normally after starting the engine.

Safety mode

If one of the following conditions is met, the engine will not start automatically after it has been stopped automatically:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and the driver's door is open.
- The hood has been unlocked.

Some indicator lights illuminate for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started using the Start/Stop switch.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- With excessive warming of the interior when air conditioning is turned on.
- With excessive cooling of the interior when heating is turned on.
- When there is heavy window condensation and the air conditioning system is on.
- Wheels are at a sharp angle or vehicle is being steered on vehicles without mild hybrid technology.
- When selector lever position R is engaged.
- If the vehicle battery is deeply discharged.
- When starting an oil level measurement.

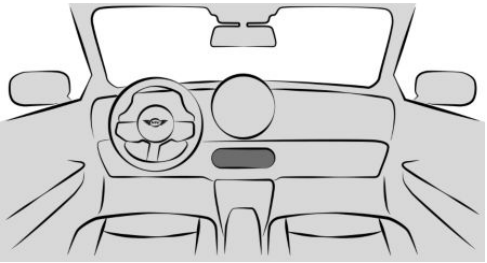
Deactivating Auto Start/Stop manually

Principle

In certain driving situations, e.g., traffic jams, it may be helpful to deactivate Auto Start/Stop manually. The engine will then no longer switch off automatically.

If this function is deactivated while the engine is being stopped automatically, the engine will start.

Using the direct access button for the Drive Settings menu



Press and hold the direct access button for the Drive Settings menu on the switch cluster until a message appears on the Interaction Unit.

Depending on vehicle equipment, e.g., on vehicles with a diesel engine and mild hybrid technology, the Auto Start/Stop function cannot be disabled using the direct access button.

Via the selector lever position or driving mode

The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated in the following situations:

- When the selector lever is used to select either LOW mode L or sport program S. This setting option depends on vehicle equipment.
- When Go Kart Mode is selected using the MINI Modes switch.

  John Cooper Works:

  When JCW Mode is selected using the MINI Modes switch.

Via the Interaction Unit

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Auto Start/Stop function can also be disabled from the Interaction Unit.

1. To do so, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Drivetrain and chassis" / "Auto Start/Stop".
2. Select the desired setting.

Depending on vehicle equipment, e.g., on vehicles with a diesel engine and mild hybrid technology, the Auto Start/Stop function cannot be disabled from the Interaction Unit.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

If the engine stops automatically, the vehicle can be parked safely as follows, e.g., to exit it.

1. Turn the Start/Stop switch.
   - Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - Standby state is switched on.
   - Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

Auto Start/Stop no longer switches off the combustion engine automatically in the event of a malfunction. A Check Control message appears on the Interaction Unit. You may continue driving. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Automatic transmission

Principle

The automatic transmission automatically shifts all gears for driving forward. Shift paddles allow you to shift manually as necessary.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving your vehicle, secure it against rolling away, e.g., by applying the parking brake.

Selector lever positions

Display

The engaged selector lever position is shown on the Interaction Unit and next to the selector lever, e.g., P.

Gear position D

In selector lever position D, all gears for forward travel are shifted automatically.

The vehicle drives off slowly when the brake pedal is released.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 136.

With shift paddles: S gear position

Selector lever position S is the gear position used for sportier driving.

The vehicle drives off slowly when the brake pedal is released.

R reverse gear

To reverse, engage selector lever position R. Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary.

The vehicle drives off slowly when the brake pedal is released.

N Neutral

To push the vehicle or have it coast without using its own driving power, engage selector lever position N, e.g., in a tunnel car wash.

Without shift paddles: L gear position

In selector lever position L, the transmission continues to shift automatically, but generally with lower gears.

The vehicle drives off slowly when the brake pedal is released.

Parking lock, P

General information

In selector lever position P, the drive is blocked by the transmission, e.g., to park the vehicle.

Only press the P button when the vehicle is stationary.

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure to engage the parking brake. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

P is engaged automatically

The parking lock engages automatically in the following situations, e.g.:

- After drive-ready state is turned off, if selector lever position R, M, or D/S is engaged.
- After standby state is switched off, if selector lever position N is engaged.
- If the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position N, R, M, or D/S is engaged.

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure to engage the parking brake. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 134.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from moving when a gear position is engaged or in reverse gear, depress and hold the brake pedal until ready to drive off.

In certain situations, e.g., to rock free on snow, it is possible to shift between reverse gear and gear position D without depressing the brake.

Functional requirements

To engage a selector lever position, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The selector lever will only change from position P to another selector lever position if drive-ready state is on and the brake pedal is depressed.
- Selection lever position P cannot be disengaged until all technical prerequisites are met.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

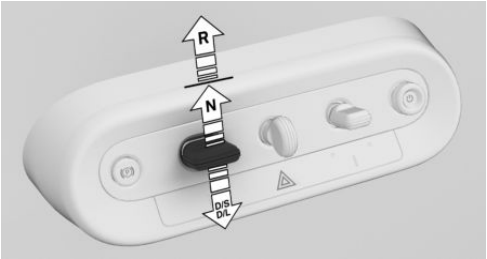
Engaging a selector lever position

To engage selector lever positions, proceed as follows:

1. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
2. Push the selector lever in the desired direction, past the resistance point if necessary. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

   With shift paddles: To switch between selector lever position D and S, tap the selector lever toward D/S.

   Without shift paddles: To switch between selector lever position D and L, tap the selector lever toward D/L.



Engaging selector lever position P

Only push the parking brake button when the vehicle is stationary.

(P) To engage selector lever position P and the parking brake, press the parking brake button on the switch cluster.

The parking brake is applied and the parking lock is engaged.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is supposed to coast for a short distance without using engine power, e.g., in a tunnel car wash or when pushing the vehicle.

Engaging selector lever position N

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a tunnel car wash.

To engage selector lever position N, proceed as follows:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Switch on drive-ready state.
3. If necessary, loosen the belt.
4. If necessary, open the door.
5. Engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle can roll.

The parking lock engages automatically after approx. 35 minutes.

If the system is not operational, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

If necessary, release the parking lock electronically.

Additional information:

Releasing the parking lock electronically, refer to page 128.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance.

Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Without shift paddles: LOW mode

Principle

LOW mode is recommended when the engine braking effect needs to be increased, for instance on steep downhill gradients.

General information

In LOW mode, the transmission continues shifting automatically, but generally in lower gears than in selector lever position D.

LOW mode can therefore also be used to accelerate faster.

Enabling LOW mode

To activate LOW mode, tap the selector lever from selector lever position D to D/L.

The transmission's LOW mode is enabled.

Exiting LOW mode

To activate LOW mode, pull the selector lever to D/L.

D is shown on the Interaction Unit.

With shift paddles: S program

Principle

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for sportier handling. The transmission shifts up later, for example, and the shift times are shorter, depending on vehicle equipment.

Activating the Sport program

To activate the Sport program, tap the selector lever toward selector lever position D/S.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

To stop the Sport program, tap the selector lever toward selector lever position D/S.

The engaged selector lever position is shown on the Interaction Unit.

Releasing the parking lock electronically

General information

Release the parking lock electronically, e.g., to maneuver the vehicle out of a hazardous area in the event of a malfunction.

Before releasing the parking lock, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, e.g., using a wheel chock.

Engaging selector lever position N

To engage selector lever position N, proceed as follows:

1. Quickly turn the Start/Stop switch three times without depressing the brake pedal.
2. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
3. Within 30 seconds, press the selector lever to position N until position N appears on the selector lever.

   A Check Control message is displayed.
4. Maneuver the vehicle from the hazardous area and secure it against rolling away.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Shift paddles

Principle

The shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to change gears manually.

General information

Shifting

The vehicle only shifts at suitable RPM and road speeds.

Even in manual mode, the transmission shifts automatically in certain situations, e.g., when speed limits are reached.

Temporary manual mode

In selector lever position D, pulling a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

In manual mode, if the vehicle is driven with a restrained style for a certain period of time, does not accelerate, and is not shifted with the shift paddles, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- Pull and hold the right shift paddle until D is shown on the Interaction Unit.
- In addition to the pulled right shift paddle, pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In Sport program S, pulling a shift paddle switches to manual mode M.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode:

- Pull and hold the right shift paddle until S is shown on the Interaction Unit.
- In addition to pulling the right shift paddle, tap the left shift paddle.
- Pull the selector lever to D/S.

When M2 is set manually while the vehicle is stationary, the transmission will no longer shift back to M1. This shift behavior is maintained until M1 is engaged manually or manual mode M is exited.

Shifting

- To upshift, pull the right shift paddle.
- To downshift, pull the left shift paddle.

The selected gear is shown briefly on the Interaction Unit, then the current gear is shown again.

Advanced mode

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the automatic transmission offers an advanced mode with adapted shift characteristics.

- Automatic downshift to lowest possible gear.

  If the left shift paddle is pulled and held, the automatic transmission automatically shifts down to the lowest possible gear.

  There is no downshifting for kickdown.
- Automatic upshifting is prevented in manual mode.

  In manual mode, the automatic transmission does not shift up automatically when reaching a rev limit.

Enabling advanced mode

Advanced mode activates in situations like the following:

- Transmission in manual mode.
- "SPORT PLUS": Settings under Drive in Go Kart Mode in MINI Modes.
- John Cooper Works:"Activate John Cooper Works": Drive settings in JCW Mode under MINI Modes.

Launch Control

Principle

Under dry ambient conditions, Launch Control ensures optimal acceleration on roads with good traction.

General information

Using Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Depending on vehicle equipment, increased drive power is provided when driving off with Launch Control.

Do not turn the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

Do not use Launch Control when breaking in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Break-in, refer to page 318.

Functional requirements

Launch Control can be used when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Driving off with Launch Control

To drive off with Launch Control, proceed as follows:

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Activate Go Kart Mode.
3. John Cooper Works: Enable JCW Mode.
4. With the left foot, depress the brake pedal.
5. Engage forward gear.
6. Press the accelerator pedal all the way down and hold.

   Launch Control information is shown on the Interaction Unit.
7. The starting engine speed adjusts. Wait briefly until the engine speed is constant. Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
8. Release the brake pedal within a few seconds of the Launch Control information illuminating.

   The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting is performed automatically.

   Launch Control stays on as long as the Launch Control information is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for a short time before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions when used again.

After using Launch Control

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF without Launch Control mode.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Sport Boost function

Principle

The Sport Boost function can be used for upcoming acceleration, for example.

This function is operated with the shift paddles on the steering wheel.

The system prepares the vehicle.

Overview

The shift paddles are located on the steering wheel.

Using the function

1. To activate the Sport Boost function, pull and hold the left shift paddle.
   - The function is active.
   - A countdown is shown on the Interaction Unit.
2. Before the countdown has finished, depress the accelerator pedal.
   - The vehicle accelerates.

BOOST is shown on the Interaction Unit.

The countdown can be restarted, for example if the function cannot be used immediately.

To restart the countdown, pull and hold the left shift paddle again until the countdown is reset.

Stopping the function

The function is automatically interrupted if the countdown has finished or if the function was used in the acceleration process.

Deactivating the function

Pull and hold the right shift paddle until the BOOST indicator disappears.

MINI Modes

Principle

MINI Modes are used to adjust vehicle handling and customize the overall experience in the interior. The MINI Modes that affect vehicle handling are also called drive modes.

The various modes are used to adapt the vehicle to the respective situation.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following systems are affected, for example:

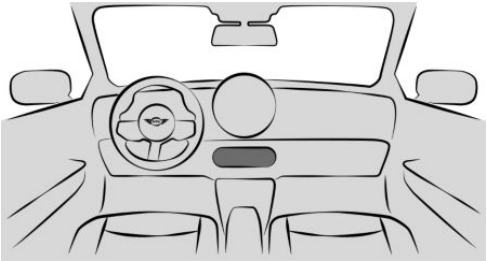
- Drive system.
- Steering.

- Suspension.
- Display on the Interaction Unit.
- Comfort functions in vehicle interior.
- MINI Sound.
- Lighting effects in vehicle interior.

In addition to MINI Modes, there are also MINI Experience Modes. MINI Experience Modes are used to adjust the lighting effects in the vehicle interior, for example. The drive settings from Core Mode are applied.

Various MINI Experience Modes can be used, depending on vehicle equipment.

Overview



The MINI Modes switch is located on the switch cluster and labeled EXPERIENCE.

Display

The selected mode is shown by specific colors and indicators on the Interaction Unit and Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

MINI Modes in detail

Core Mode

Core Mode is a drive mode that provides comfort-related settings.

Go Kart Mode

Go-Kart Mode is a drive mode that provides sporty drive settings and greater vehicle agility.

Individual settings, e.g., for driving dynamics, chassis, and drive system, can be configured as needed.

"SPORT PLUS": Under Driving Dynamics, this setting deactivates Dynamic Stability Control, thus limiting driving stability.

Additional information:

- Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 217.
- Setting for increased driving dynamics, refer to page 218.

John Cooper Works: JCW Mode

JCW Mode replaces Go-Kart Mode on John Cooper Works models. JCW Mode is a drive mode that provides sporty drive settings and greater vehicle agility.

Individual settings, e.g., for driving dynamics, chassis, and drive system, can be configured as needed.

"SPORT PLUS": Under Driving Dynamics, this setting deactivates Dynamic Stability Control, thus limiting driving stability.

Additional information:

- Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 217.
- Setting for increased driving dynamics, refer to page 218.

Green Mode

Green Mode is a drive mode that provides consumption-optimized tuning and anticipatory display. The interior lighting is also reduced here, for example.

Additional information:

Green Mode, refer to page 336.

MINI Experience Modes in detail

Balance Mode

Balance Mode is a driving mode that ensures a pleasant ambiance and a relaxed drive.

Personal Mode

Personal Mode is a mode that offers special customization options. Various background images can be selected for the Interaction Unit, or a specific background image can be uploaded using the MINI App. In addition, the ambient lighting can be configured to synchronize with the color scheme of the selected background image.

Timeless Mode

Timeless Mode is used when driving with the MINI retro design.

Vivid Mode

Vivid Mode is a mode that ensures a vibrant audio experience and impressive ambient lighting effects in the vehicle interior.

Trail Mode

Trail Mode is a mode that provides special views for driving off-road. The following information is displayed, for example:

- The vehicle's longitudinal inclination in percent.
- The vehicle's lateral inclination in degrees.
- Graph of wheel angle.
- Compass.

When driving off-road, also follow the instructions for driving on rough roads.

Additional information:

Driving on poor roads, refer to page 322.

Selecting a mode

1.

To select a mode, press the MINI Modes switch on the switch cluster.
2. Select the desired mode by pressing the switch again.

Configuring modes

Some modes can be configured individually.

1.

To set a mode, press the MINI Modes switch on the switch cluster.
2. Select the desired mode by pressing the switch again.
3. ⚙ Tap the Settings icon on the Interaction Unit.
4. Select the desired settings.

Changing the start mode

Some modes can be set as the start mode. The set start mode activates when drive-ready state is turned on.

1.

To set a mode as the start mode, press the MINI Modes switch on the switch cluster.
2. ⚙ Tap the Settings icon on the Interaction Unit.
3. Select the desired start mode.

Experience View

When a mode is activated, specific views are displayed on the Interaction Unit. Speci-

fic views can be unselected in the settings as follows:

1.

Press the MINI Modes button on the switch cluster.
2. Tap the Settings icon on the Interaction Unit.
3. "Experience View"
4. Select the desired setting.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

On inclines, in selector lever position D, L, S, or R, the drive-off assistant prevents the vehicle from coasting opposite the set driving direction and also provides drive-off support.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

Depending on the vehicle load or driving situation, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

If necessary, activate Automatic Hold and also apply the parking brake via the Interaction Unit, as applicable. The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

Additional information:

- Automatic Hold, refer to page 136.
- Parking brake, refer to page 134.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling away when it is parked.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

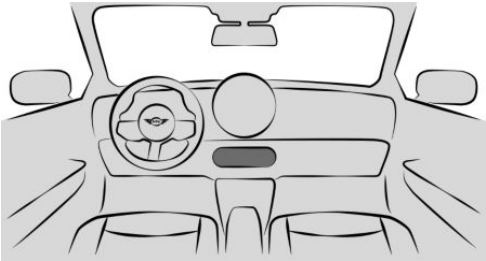
WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



The parking brake button is located on the switch cluster.

Setting the parking brake

With a stationary vehicle

To engage the parking brake, press the parking brake button on the switch cluster.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The indicator light for the parking brake illuminates red.

The parking brake is applied and parking lock is engaged.

While driving

Using the parking brake while driving serves as emergency braking.

To brake the vehicle, press and hold the parking brake button on the switch cluster. The vehicle brakes hard for as long as the button is pressed.

The indicator light for the parking brake illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is applied and the parking lock engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

Engaging the parking brake automatically

In some situations, the parking brake is engaged automatically, e.g., through Automatic Hold.

To automatically engage the parking brake when drive-ready state is deactivated, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Drivetrain and chassis" / "Apply automatically".

In selector lever position N, the parking brake will not be engaged automatically.

Releasing the parking brake

Releasing the parking brake manually

Follow these steps to manually release the parking brake:

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. On the switch cluster, press the parking brake button with the brake pedal depressed or selector lever position P engaged.

   The LED and the indicator light go out. The parking brake is released.

   The parking lock remains engaged until a gear position is selected.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake releases automatically in the following situations:

- When switching from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.
- When driving off.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

Operating the parking brake on the Interaction Unit

The parking brake can also be engaged or disengaged using the Interaction Unit. When the parking brake is operated via the Interaction Unit, the current selector lever position remains engaged. Additionally, further information is displayed.

1. To operate the parking brake via the Interaction Unit, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Drivetrain and chassis" / "Apply parking brake".
2. Select the desired setting.

Malfunction

A Check Control message appears if the parking brake malfunctions or fails. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it against rolling away, e.g., with a wheel chock.

After a power interruption

To reestablish parking brake operability after a power interruption, an initialization may be required.

1. Activate standby state.
2. Press the parking brake button on the switch cluster.
3. Press the parking brake button again after 2 seconds.

   The Check Control messages for the parking brake go out.

   Function-related noises are normal.

PARK (P) The indicator light for the parking brake indicates that the parking brake is ready for operation again.

Automatic Hold

Principle

Automatic Hold provides assistance by automatically applying and releasing the brake, e.g., when driving off on inclines or in stop-and-go traffic.

When a gear position is engaged, the vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

In selector lever position N, Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

WARNING

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

Drive-ready state must be turned on in order to activate/deactivate Automatic Hold.

Activating Automatic Hold

On the Interaction Unit

To activate Automatic Hold, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Drivetrain and chassis" / "Automatic Hold".

When Automatic Hold is activated, the indicator light for the parking brake illuminates green.

When driving, the indicator light changes from green to gray to show that Automatic Hold is ready.

Using the brake pedal

To activate Automatic Hold using the brake pedal, the vehicle must be at a standstill.

1. Depress the brake pedal until some resistance is perceptible.
2. Firmly and quickly depress the brake pedal all the way down.

As soon as Automatic Hold is activated, the indicator light for the parking brake illuminates green and a Check Control message appears.

When driving, the indicator light changes from green to gray to show that Automatic Hold is ready.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

If Automatic Hold is activated and the driver's door is closed, the vehicle is automatically secured to prevent it from rolling away after stopping.

As soon as Automatic Hold secures the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, the indicator light for the parking brake illuminates green.

The brake pedal can be released.

Automatic parking brake application

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, the parking brake is applied automatically in the following situations:

- The driver's door is open for more than one second and no pedal is pressed during this time.
- If drive-ready state is turned off.

The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically if the drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was coasting. Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated in this case.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

The vehicle may roll back slightly when driving off, depending on the load and driving situation or when towing a trailer.

Drive off quickly to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

If necessary, also apply the parking brake via the Interaction Unit. The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 134.

Deactivate Automatic Hold

On the Interaction Unit

To activate/deactivate Automatic Hold via the Interaction Unit, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Drivetrain and chassis" / "Automatic Hold".

The parking brake indicator light goes out.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, also depress the brake pedal while deactivating.

Using the brake pedal

To deactivate Automatic Hold using the brake pedal, the vehicle must be at a standstill.

1. Depress the brake pedal until some resistance is perceptible.
2. Firmly and quickly depress the brake pedal all the way down.

The indicator light for the parking brake goes out and a Check Control message appears.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Trip data

Principle

The trip data display provides various information about the trip, e.g., average consumption or trip distance.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on different intervals.

Viewing trip data

The Interaction Unit can be used to view the trip data. There are several ways to view trip data:

- Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Trip data".
- Tap the range value on the Interaction Unit.
- On the Interaction Unit, tap the odometer reading in the speedometer.

Additional information:

Speedometer, refer to page 148.

Display

The following trip data is displayed:

- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- ∅ Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.
- Travel time according to the set interval.
- Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.
- Depending on vehicle equipment: Total distance traveled when coasting.

Current consumption

The current fuel consumption display allows you to check the current fuel consumption, e.g., to drive economically and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

Average consumption

The average fuel consumption is displayed depending on how the interval for displaying trip data is configured.

Adjusting the display of the trip data

The interval for displaying trip data can be adjusted.

1. To go to the Trip Data menu: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Trip data".
2. Tap the interval button.
3. Select the desired setting:
   - "for this trip": The values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - "since last refuel": The values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.

- "since factory": The values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
- "since Individual": The values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The average trip data values can be reset manually. The following interval is activated and the average values are reset: "since Individual".

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Trip data".
2. Tap the button for resetting trip data.

MINI Head-up display

Principle

The Head-up display projects important information in the driver's field of view, for instance the speed. The driver can then view information on the Head-up display without taking their eyes off the road.

The Head-up display can be configured as necessary, e.g., adjust the brightness.

General information

Follow instructions for cleaning the Head-up display in the Vehicle Care chapter.

Additional information:

Caring for special components, refer to page 404.

Safety information

WARNING

When extending and retracting the projection screen of the Head-up display, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the projection screen is clear when extending and retracting.

NOTICE

The Head-up display consists of sensitive components that can easily be scraped or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place any objects on the Head-up display, attach to system components or plug into the system. Do not move the moving parts manually.

Overview

The Head-up display is switched on.

Displayable information

The following information is displayed on the Head-up display:

- Speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Shift lights.

- Depending on vehicle equipment: Sport Boost function.
- Lists and messages.
- The driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Turning the Head-up display on/off

When switching on, the projection screen of the Head-up display is extended. When switching off, the projection screen of the Head-up display is retracted again.

To turn the Head-up display on/off, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Displays" / "Head-up display" / "Head-up display".

Settings

Individual settings can be entered for the Head-up display such as for the height, brightness or illustration. You can also set up specific views on the Head-up display separately, e.g., for Driver Assistance information.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Displays" / "Head-up display".
2. Select the desired setting.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the height of the Head-up display can be stored using the memory function.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Dust or dirt on the projection screen of the Head-up display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet road.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

Check Control

Principle

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of faults in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message, combining indicator lights or warning lights and text, appears on the Interaction Unit and Head-up display, where applicable. In addition, an acoustic signal may sound.

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds, but they will be stored. Stored Check Control messages can be displayed on the Interaction Unit. Urgent Check Control messages are permanently displayed but may be hidden temporarily.

Hiding Check Control messages

Permanently displayed Check Control messages can be hidden temporarily. These messages are automatically displayed again after approx. 8 seconds.

✕ The close icon next to the Check Control message indicates whether the Check Control message can be hidden.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

Saved Check Control messages and additional information such as the cause of a fault or the required action can be called up via Check Control.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Check Control".
2. Select the desired text message.

Display

A Check Control message, consisting of text and an icon, is displayed. Additional instructions can be viewed by tapping on the text.

If several faults occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Icons next to the menu bar indicate whether a Check Control message is active or saved.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Principle

The indicator lights and warning lights show the status of some vehicle functions or indicate when there is a fault in monitored systems.

Indicator lights and warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

Some indicator lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder

The seat belt on the driver's seat is not engaged.

Additional information:

Seat belt reminder, refer to page 107.

Airbag system

Warning light illuminates briefly: Indicates that the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners are operational when drive-ready state is switched on.

Warning light does not illuminate or illuminates continuously: The airbag system or seat belt tensioners may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Airbags, refer to page 170.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 134.

Brake system

The brake pads are worn or there is another issue with the brake system.

The braking assistance may not be operational. A higher pedal force may be required for braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emergency Stop Assistant

The Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered.

Additional information:

Emergency Stop Assistant, refer to page 205.

Risk of collision

The warning light illuminates or flashes in conjunction with an acoustic signal if there is a risk of imminent collision.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.

Pedestrian Warning

Warning light illuminates: Risk of collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian or cyclist, detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and acoustic signal sounds: Risk of imminent collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian or cyclist, detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Warning function for pedestrians, refer to page 183.

Forward Collision Warning

Warning light illuminates: Risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle, detected. Increased awareness is required.

The warning light flashes and a signal sounds: Risk of imminent collision with a vehicle detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Warning function in rear-end collision situations, refer to page 179.

Intersection Warning: Vehicle detected from the right

The warning light illuminates: Risk of collision with a vehicle crossing from the right detected. Increased awareness is required.

The warning light flashes and a signal sounds: Risk of imminent collision with a crossing vehicle detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Warning function at intersections, refer to page 184.

Intersection Warning: Vehicle detected from the left

The warning light illuminates: Risk of collision with a vehicle crossing from the left detected. Increased awareness is required.

The warning light flashes and a signal sounds: Risk of imminent collision with a crossing vehicle detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Warning function at intersections, refer to page 184.

Distance Control

Warning light flashes and acoustic signal sounds: Brake and evade as necessary.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 229.

Assisted Driving Mode

Warning light flashes and signal sounds: The system is switched off or will be interrupted very soon.

Warning light illuminates and signal sounds: The driver is not looking at the surrounding traffic. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. Keep an eye on the surrounding traffic.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

Assisted Driving Mode: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel

Warning light illuminates and acoustic signal sounds:

The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel or, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the driver is not looking at the surrounding traffic. System interruption is imminent.

The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable.

It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements.

Immediately grasp the steering wheel with your hands and pay attention to the surrounding traffic.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

Yellow lights

Antilock Braking System

The system may not be operational. The Antilock Braking System is not available.

The ability to steer may be restricted during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Antilock Braking System, refer to page 216.

Assisted Driving Mode

Warning light illuminates and acoustic signal sounds: A system interruption is imminent.

Warning light flashes: A lane boundary has been crossed inadvertently.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

Assisted Driving Mode: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel

Warning light illuminates: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. The system is still active.

Grab the steering wheel with your hands.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

Dynamic Stability Control is on, has malfunctioned, or is being initialized

Indicator light flashes: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving power and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce the vehicle speed and adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

Indicator light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has malfunctioned or is initializing. Driving stabilization is restricted or has failed.

If the indicator light illuminates continuously, have the system checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 217.

Dynamic Stability Control deactivated, or increased driving dynamics activated

Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or enhanced driving dynamics is activated.

Additional information:

- Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 217.
- Setting for increased driving dynamics, refer to page 218.

Drive-off support

Drive-off support is activated.

Additional information:

Drive-off support, refer to page 219.

Flat tire monitor

Warning light illuminates: Flat tire monitor is indicating a flat tire or tire pressure loss.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Flat tire monitor, refer to page 361.

Tire Pressure Monitor

Warning light illuminates: Tire Pressure Monitor is indicating a flat tire or tire pressure loss. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

Warning light flashes then illuminates continuously: Flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: After leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- In the case of tires with special approval: The Tire Pressure Monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- Wheel without wheel electronics installed: Have it checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 353.

Steering system

The steering system may not be operational.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Pollutant emissions

- The warning light illuminates:

  The exhaust gas quality is declining, e.g., because the fuel filler cap is fitted incorrectly.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Otherwise, severe engine misfires will very quickly cause serious damage to emissions-related components, especially the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Diagnostic socket, refer to page 386.

Green lights

Turn signal

The turn signal is turned on.

If the indicator light is flashing unusually fast, this indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 156.

Parking lights

The parking lights are turned on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low-beam headlights, refer to page 160.

Low-beam headlights

The low-beam headlights are turned on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low-beam headlights, refer to page 160.

High Beam Assistant

Low-beam headlights are on and High Beam Assistant is enabled.

The high-beam headlights are turned on and off automatically depending on the traffic.

Additional information:

High Beam Assistant, refer to page 157.

Lane Departure Warning

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version:

Indicator light flashes: System is actively issuing a warning. If necessary, the system performs a steering intervention.

Additional information:

Lane Departure Warning, refer to page 189.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

After stopping, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling away as soon as the indicator light illuminates green.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 136.

Hill Descent Control decelerates the vehicle

The system is active. The vehicle is braked.

Additional information:

Hill Descent Control, refer to page 219.

Cruise Control

The system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 226.

Distance Control

Indicator light illuminates: A vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator light flashes: Preceding vehicle has driven off.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 229.

Speed Limit Assistant

SET

The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 246.

Assisted Driving Mode

The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

Lane Change Assistant: Lane change in progress

Arrow icon for lane change green: The system carries out a lane change.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 240.

Lane Change Assistant: Lane change not possible

Gray line for lane boundary on corresponding side: The system has detected a desire to change lanes. It is not currently possible to change lanes.

Additional information:

Lane Change Assistant, refer to page 240.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

ASSIST PLUS

The system is active.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page 243.

Blue lights

High-beam headlights

High-beam headlights have been turned on.

Additional information:

High-beam headlights, refer to page 156.

High Beam Assistant

High-beam headlights have been turned on by the High Beam Assistant.

Additional information:

High Beam Assistant, refer to page 157.

Gray lights

Seat belt reminder

Seat belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.

Additional information:

Seat belts, refer to page 105.

Automatic Hold on standby

PARK (P)

When driving, the indicator light shows that Automatic Hold is ready.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 136.

Hill Descent Control is in standby

The system is in standby mode or temporarily deactivated.

Additional information:

Hill Descent Control, refer to page 219.

Distance Control

Indicator light flashes: The requirements to operate the system have not been met. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 229.

Assisted Driving Mode

The system is on standby and does not manipulate steering movements.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

White lights

Cruise Control with Distance Control

No Distance Control because accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 229.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

The system can be used.

Additional information:

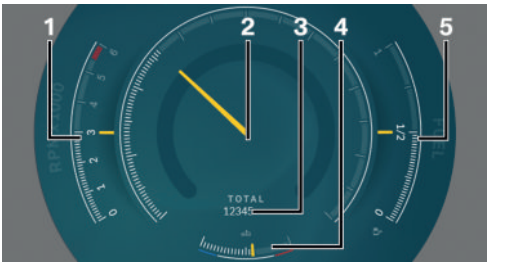
Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page 243.

Speedometer

Principle

The speedometer provides detailed driving information next to the speed, e.g., mileage.

Overview



1 Tachometer 149
Power gauge 148
2 Vehicle speed
3 Odometer reading 139
4 Engine temperature 150
5 Fuel gauge 152

Displaying the speedometer

To display the speedometer, tap the speed value at the top of the Interaction Unit.

Power gauge

Principle

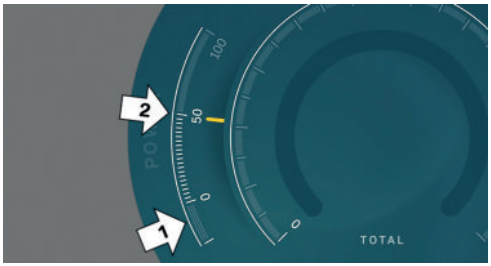
The power gauge indicates the currently drawn drive power as a percentage.

Enabling/disabling the power gauge

The power gauge or tachometer is displayed, depending on the drive mode selected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Display



Needle near arrow 1: Indicator for energy recovery, e.g., while decelerating.

Needle near arrow 2: Drive power in percent.

Reduced drive power

The available drive power may be reduced due to certain factors. The power gauge is adjusted automatically.

In addition, the icons on the power gauge and tachometer indicate that the drive power is reduced.

Icon	Description
	Blue icon: Cold drivetrain. White icon: Increased drive system temperature, for instance due to sustained or high power demand when driving on mountain roads.
	Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: Drive power restriction determined by MINI Digital Key.
	System-related functional limitation. A Check Control message is displayed in addition where applicable.

Tachometer

Principle

The tachometer shows the engine's rotational speed. Always avoid RPM in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Activating/deactivating the tachometer

The tachometer or power gauge is displayed depending on the drive mode selected.

Reduced rotational speed range

The available rotational speed range may be reduced due certain factors such as a cold drive system. The tachometer display is automatically adjusted depending on the available rotational speed range.

Standby state and drive-ready state

If OFF appears on the Interaction Unit, drive-ready state is turned off and standby state is turned on.

If READY appears on the Interaction Unit, the Auto Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

Additional information:

- Operating state of the vehicle, refer to page 41.
- Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 122.

Engine temperature

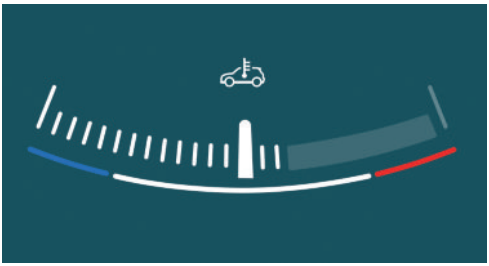
Principle

The engine temperature is displayed on the speedometer.

Additional information:

- Speedometer, refer to page 148.
- Coolant, refer to page 381.

Display



- If the engine is cold, the needle is in the blue temperature range, close to the limit position of the temperature display.

  Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.
- At normal operating temperature, the needle is in the middle or in the left half of the temperature display.
- If the engine is hot, the needle is in the red temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Indicator light

A red indicator light is displayed.

Selection lists

Principle

Selection lists are shown on the Head-up display or Interaction Unit, depending on vehicle equipment and settings. Certain functions can be displayed and operated as necessary via the selection lists:

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- List of recent calls.
- Shortcuts list.

If necessary, the corresponding menu will open.

Displaying and using the list

The selection lists can be displayed and operated using the operating elements on the steering wheel.

Operating elements	Function
	Change the entertainment source. Pressing the button again will close the currently displayed list.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.

Operating elements	Function
☆	Displaying the list of shortcuts.
< >	Turn the thumbwheel: Display the list for currently selected entertainment source or scroll up or down in the list. Tilt thumbwheel in corresponding direction: Move selection to left or right. Press thumbwheel: Confirm selection.

Additional information:

Shortcuts, refer to page 48.

Gear shift indicator

Principle

The shift point indicator recommends the gear that best suits the current driving situation. Using the optimal gear supports an efficient driving style.

General information

The gear shift indicator is active in manual mode M depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Displays

Information on upshifting/downshifting and the engaged gear is shown on the Interaction Unit.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Example	Description
M3	In continuous manual mode M: Optimal gear is engaged.
D3	With shift paddles: Temporary manual mode.
S3	With shift paddles: Sport program.
2▸3	Shift information.

Additional information:

Shift paddles, refer to page 129.

Shift lights

Principle

Shift lights are temporarily displayed on the Head-up display and indicate the correct time to upshift in order to achieve rapid acceleration.

Functional requirements

To display the shift lights, the transmission must be set to manual mode M and, depending on vehicle equipment, Go-Kart Mode or Extended Mode.

Display

Successive fields illuminating yellow indicate an upcoming shift point.

- Shift before the red lights illuminate.
- When the maximum rotational speed is reached, the entire display flashes red and the fuel supply is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Range

Principle

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current tank of fuel.

The estimated range with remaining fuel is shown on the Interaction Unit.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. A low remaining range means that engine functions cannot always be ensured for sporty driving, e.g., when cornering at speed.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as a numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General information

Vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 340.

Display

Under the fuel gauge, the arrow next to the fuel pump symbol indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as a numerical value with the driving information.

Indicator light

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Vehicle status

Principle

In the Vehicle status menu, the statuses can be displayed or actions performed for several systems such as for Check Control.

Displaying vehicle status

To display the vehicle status, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status".

Overview

Icon	Description
	"Flat tire monitor": Status of the flat tire monitor, refer to page 361.
	"Tire Pressure Monitor": Status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 353.
	"Engine oil level": Electronic oil measurement, refer to page 379.
	"Check Control": Displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 141.
	"Service": Display of the service notifications, refer to page 155.

Assisted View

Principle

With Assisted View, information on driver assistance systems can be shown with the help of a vehicle animation.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steer-

ing and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Display

An example of active Driver Assistance: Indicator lights and warning lights for Distance Control and Assisted Driving Mode are displayed. At the same time, the Distance Control is animated in Assisted View.

Assisted View can also be activated for the Head-up display via Settings.

System limits

The system's detection capability is limited.

Only objects that are detected by the system are taken into account.

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 36.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 37.

Sport displays

Principle

The sport displays in the Live Vehicle menu provide assistance for a sporty driving style.

Display

The sport displays are shown in Go-Kart Mode of MINI Modes.

The following information is displayed:

- Torque.
- Power.
- Boost pressure.
- Engine oil temperature.
- Current consumption.
- G-Meter.

Additional information:

MINI Modes, refer to page 131.

G-Meter

General information

The G-Meter indicates the forces that are applied in longitudinal and transverse direction on the vehicle occupants while driving.

The display can be configured in the widgets on the Interaction Unit.

The values are automatically reset whenever you start a new drive.

Additional information:

MINI Interaction Unit, refer to page 45.

Manually reseting G-Meter values

1. Display the G-Meter on the Interaction Unit.
2. Press and hold the thumbwheel on the steering wheel until the values reset.

Outside temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37°F/+3°C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

When the vehicle is stationary or at low speed, the temperature displayed may differ slightly from the actual outside temperature due to external environmental influences.

Safety information

WARNING

Even at temperatures above +37°F/+3°C there is a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Date and time

Various settings can be configured for displaying the date and time.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the time zone can be set manually or automatically. Automatic time zone adjustment automatically updates the time, date, and time zone as necessary.

The date is set automatically based on the time zone.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "System settings" / "Time".
2. Select the desired settings.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "System settings" / "Units".
2. Select the desired setting.

Service

Principle

The service notifications indicate recommended maintenance work.

After turning on the drive-ready state, the Interaction Unit briefly displays the next service appointment or the distance remaining until the next recommended maintenance measure.

These can be read out from the vehicle key at an authorized service center.

Display

More detailed information can be displayed.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Service".

   Maintenance measures as well as legally mandated inspections are displayed.
2. Select the desired entry to bring up more information.

Entering appointment dates

The dates for mandatory vehicle inspections can be entered.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Service" / "Vehicle inspection".
2. Select the desired setting.

Light and view

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Turn signal

Principle

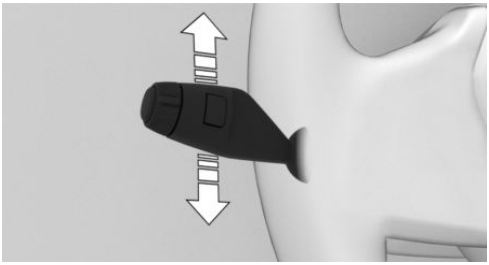
The turn signal indicates the change in your direction of travel. To indicate a turn, the following functions can be used:

- Flashing.
- One-touch signaling.
- Brief flashing.

Turn signal in exterior mirror

To ensure that the turn signal lights on the exterior mirrors are clearly visible, do not fold in the exterior mirrors while driving or while using the turn signals or hazard warning system.

Flashing



To flash the turn signal, push the turn signal lever up or down past the resistance point.

One-touch signaling

For one-touch signaling: Lightly tap the turn signal lever up or down.

The one-touch signaling duration can be adjusted.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Exterior lighting" / or "Settings" / "One-touch turn signal".
2. Select the desired setting.

Brief flashing

To flash the turn signal briefly: Push the turn signal lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

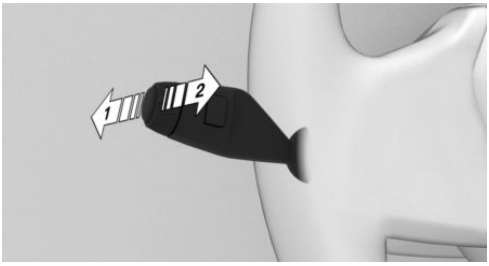
Principle

The high-beam headlights illuminate the road, also at great distances. The headlight flasher is used to emit a brief light signal

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

by actuating the high-beam headlights. The high-beam headlights can be switched on and off manually at any time.

High-beam headlights, turning headlight flasher on/off



To turn on the high-beam headlights, push the turn signal lever forward, arrow 1. The high-beam headlights illuminate when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

To turn off the high-beam headlights or operate the headlight flasher, pull the turn signal lever backward, arrow 2.

The blue indicator light on the Interaction Unit illuminates when the high-beam headlight or headlight flasher are turned on.

High Beam Assistant

Principle

The High Beam Assistant promptly detects other road users as well as the ambient lighting, e.g., in towns, and automatically switches the high-beam headlights on or off depending on the traffic situation.

It may be necessary to activate the High Beam Assistant via the Interaction Unit before it can be used. You can use the turn signal lever to temporarily deactivate or activate the High Beam Assistant, e.g., after turning your high-beam headlights on/off manually.

In the low speed range, the high-beam headlights are not switched on by the High Beam Assistant.

Functional requirements

To use the High Beam Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The automatic driving lights control is activated.
- The low-beam headlights are turned on.

Activating High Beam Assistant

1. To activate the High Beam Assistant, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Exterior lighting" / "Headlights".
2. Tap the High Beam Assistant button.

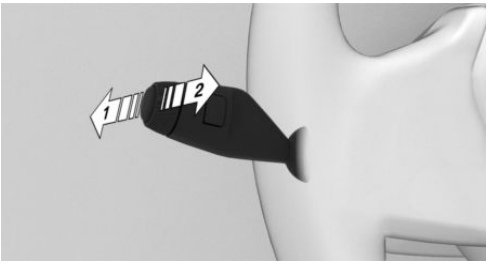
The headlights are automatically changed between low-beam headlights and high-beam headlights.

The green indicator light on the Interaction Unit illuminates when the low-beam headlight is turned on.

The blue indicator light on the Interaction Unit illuminates when the system turns on the high-beam headlight.

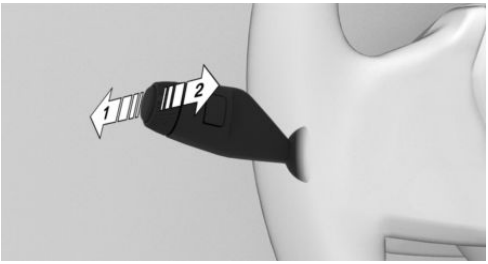
If the Automatic High Beam Assistant is on and you continue driving after an interruption, the Automatic High Beam Assistant will remain on.

The High Beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high-beam headlights on and off.



To reactivate the High Beam Assistant, press the turn signal lever up, arrow 1.

Deactivating High Beam Assistant



Press the turn signal lever forward, arrow 1, or pull the turn signal lever backward when the high-beam headlights are on, arrow 2.

When the High Beam Assistant is deactivated via the Interaction Unit, the high-beam headlights cannot be operated using the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

WARNING

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Turn off the high-beam headlights manually if required.

Functional requirements

To adjust the sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Adjustment is possible only while your vehicle is stationary.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- The light is switched off.
- For Canadian models: The parking lights are on.

Increasing sensitivity

To increase the sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant, push the turn signal lever forward for approx. 10 seconds.

A Check Control message is displayed. The system responds more sensitively.

Resetting the sensitivity

To reset the sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant, push the turn signal lever forward again for approx. 10 seconds or switch off drive-ready state.

The sensitivity of the High Beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The High Beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high-beam headlights. Turn off the high-beam headlights manually in situations that require a personal decision.

The system may not be fully operational in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in the area in front of the interior mirror is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Exterior lighting

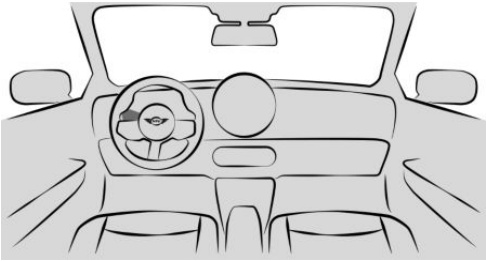
Principle

The exterior lighting comprises all lighting elements on the outside of the vehicle. The exterior lighting, or individual functions of it, can be operated using the buttons in the vehicle or on the vehicle key, or via the Interactive Unit.

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



The exterior lighting switch and buttons are located on the turn signal lever, to the left of the steering wheel.

Icon	Function
	Exterior lighting menu.
	Low-beam headlights.
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.

Functions via the Interaction Unit

Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic driving lights control.
	Low-beam headlights.
OFF	Exterior lighting off.

Icon	Function
	High Beam Assistant.
	Parking lights.
	Left roadside parking light.
	Right roadside parking light.

Buttons on the vehicle key

Icon	Function
	Interior lighting. Parts of the exterior lighting.
	Pathway lighting.

Automatic driving lights control

Principle

The automatic driving lights control switches the low-beam headlights on or off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, e.g., in tunnels, at dusk, or with precipitation.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be turned on.

The automatic driving lights control is deactivated if you turn on the low-beam headlights manually.

Automatic driving lights control

To activate the automatic driving lights control, turn the outer switch on the turn signal lever downward.

The LED under the automatic driving lights control icon illuminates.

The green indicator light on the Interaction Unit illuminates when the low-beam headlight is turned on.

System limits

The automatic driving lights control cannot replace your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, turn the lights on manually.

Low-beam headlights, parking light, and roadside parking light

Principle

The low-beam headlights are used to illuminate the road without dazzling oncoming traffic. The parking lights and roadside parking lights are used to illuminate the vehicle when stationary. These functions can be operated using the buttons in the vehicle or via the Interaction Unit.

Low-beam headlights

Turning on low-beam headlights

To turn on the low-beam headlights, turn the outer switch on the turn signal lever upward.

The low-beam headlights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

The green indicator light on the Interaction Unit illuminates when the low-beam headlight is turned on.

To turn on the low-beam headlights even when standby state is switched on, turn the outer switch on the turn signal lever upward again.

Turning off low-beam headlights

Depending on the national-market version, the low-beam headlights can be turned off in the low speed range:

- OFF Press the OFF button on the turn signal lever.
- Turn off the light via the Interaction Unit.

Parking lights

General information

The parking lights can only be turned on at low speeds.

Turning on parking lights

1. To turn on the parking lights, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Exterior lighting" / "Parking lights".
2. Tap the parking lights button.

The green indicator light on the Interaction Unit illuminates when the parking light is turned on.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the vehicle battery and it would then be impossible to switch on the drive-ready state.

Turning off parking lights

The following options are available to turn off the parking lights:

- OFF Press the OFF button on the turn signal lever.
- Turn off the light via the Interaction Unit.
- Switch on drive-ready state.

  When drive-ready state is turned on, the automatic driving lights control activates.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

1. To turn on the roadside parking light, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Exterior lighting" / "Parking lights".
2. Tap the roadside parking light button for the desired side of the vehicle.

Welcome lights

Principle

The welcome light turns on automatically for a limited period of time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating welcome light

The welcome light can be activated or deactivated.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Exterior lighting" / "Settings".
2. Select the desired setting, depending on vehicle equipment:
   - "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual lighting functions are turned on.

Turning on the welcome light

You can turn on the welcome light as follows:

- Automatic activation when approaching.
- Activation when unlocking vehicle.
- With the vehicle locked, press the lock button on the vehicle key.

  Depending on the settings, the interior lighting and parts of the exterior lighting will be turned on.

  The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

Pathway lighting

Principle

For the pathway lighting, the exterior lighting that illuminates the vehicle's surroundings turns on for a certain period of time after leaving the vehicle.

Switching pathway lighting on

You can turn on the pathway lighting as follows:

- After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the turn signal lever forward.
- On the vehicle key, press and hold the panic alarm button for approx. 1 second.

Setting the duration

You can configure the duration of pathway lighting.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Exterior lighting" / "Settings" / "Pathway lighting".
2. Select the desired setting.

Daytime driving lights

Principle

The daytime driving lights are used to ensure that the vehicle is more visible, e.g., in areas with sharply changing light conditions.

The daytime driving lights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime driving lights in front.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Exterior lighting" / "Settings".
2. Depending on vehicle equipment or national-market version, select the desired setting:
   - "Daytime driving lights"
   - "Rear daytime driving lights"

Adaptive lighting functions

Principle

The adaptive lighting functions provide dynamic illumination of the road.

The adaptive lighting functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

– Cornering light.

Activating the adaptive lighting functions

AUTO To activate the adaptive lighting functions, turn the outer switch on the turn signal lever downward.

The LED on the turn signal lever illuminates.

The adaptive lighting functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Cornering light

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional cornering light is switched on that illuminates the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering-wheel angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals. When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering-wheel angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The Adaptive Headlight Range Control compensates for vehicle acceleration, braking, and load conditions to prevent your headlights from dazzling oncoming traffic.

Driving lights mode

Principle

With driving lights mode, the appearance of the front and rear lights can be customized from the Interaction Unit.

Selecting driving lights mode

1. To select driving lights mode, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Exterior lighting" / "Settings" / "Driving light mode".
2. Select the desired mode.

Instrument lighting

Principle

The instrument lighting illuminates switches and buttons with the individually set brightness.

The brightness of the instrument lighting can only be adjusted in darkness and when the parking lights or low-beam headlights are turned on.

Setting the brightness

1. To adjust the brightness of the instrument lighting, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Interior lighting" / "Cockpit brightness".
2. Select the desired setting.

Interior lighting

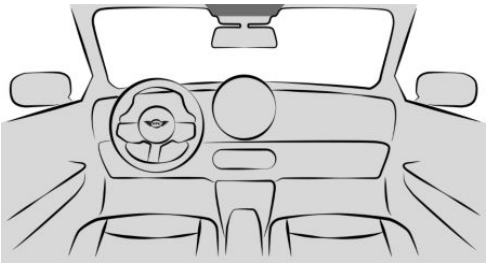
Principle

The interior lighting comprises all lighting elements inside the vehicle.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following is controlled automatically:

- Interior lights.
- Footwell lights.
- Entry lights.
- Ambient light.

Overview



The interior lighting menu button is located in the headliner.

The buttons for reading lights are located in the headliner.

The interior light button is located in the headliner.

Turning interior lights on/off

The interior lights can be turned on/off using the button in the headliner.

Press the interior light button in the headliner.

To turn off the interior light permanently, press and hold the button for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear headliner.

The interior lights can be turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Interior lighting" / "Reading light".
2. Select the interior lights icon.

Turning reading lights on/off

The reading lights can be turned on/off using the button in the headliner.

In the headliner, press the desired reading light button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

The reading lights can also be turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Interior lighting" / "Reading light".
2. Select the icon for the desired seat reading light.

The brightness of the reading lights can be adjusted when they are turned on.

Changing settings

Depending on vehicle equipment, the brightness can be individually adjusted for specific seats.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Interior lighting" / "Reading light".
2. Tap the desired seat.
3. Select the desired settings.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Ambient light

Principle

The ambient light comprises several light elements that provide diffuse light in the vehicle interior. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the Interaction Unit can be used to adjust the lighting level for some lights.

Activating/deactivating ambient light

To activate/deactivate the ambient light, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting" / "Ambient lighting".

Turning ambient light on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was disabled using the Interaction Unit, it will not turn on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Selecting the color

Depending on national-market version, the color of the ambient light can be selected in Personal Mode or Core Mode.

To select the color in Personal Mode, proceed as follows:

1. EXPERIENCES On the switch cluster, select Personal Mode using the MINI Modes switch.
2. Tap the Settings icon on the Interaction Unit.
3. "Light color"
4. Select the desired setting:
   - Select the color manually.
   - "AUTO"
     The color of the ambient lighting adapts automatically to the displays on the Interaction Unit.

To select the color in Timeless Mode, proceed as follows:

1. EXPERIENCES On the switch cluster, select Timeless Mode using the MINI Modes switch.
2. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting".
3. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

The brightness of the ambient light can be adjusted.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting".
2. "Background light" or "Light projection"
3. Select the desired setting.

The light graphic is turned off in Green Mode.

Dynamic light

With Dynamic Light, certain things, e.g., obstacles detected when opening doors, are indicated by light effects. If the ambient light is disabled, the light effects will continue to be shown, depending on vehicle equipment.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting" / "Lighting effects".
2. Select the desired setting.

Reduced lighting when driving at night

Some lights of the interior lighting are reduced when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

To activate/deactivate this function, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Interior lighting" / "Ambient lighting" / "Reduced for night driving".

Window wiper system

Principle

The wiper system makes sure that you have a clear view, e.g., in the rain. It is operated using the wiper lever on the steering wheel.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

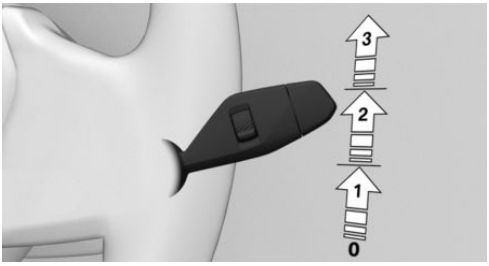
NOTICE

The wiper blades can become prematurely worn or damaged if used on dry window glass for long periods of time. The wiper motor can overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the wipers when the window glass is dry.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the window glass before turning on the wipers.

Turning on window wiper system

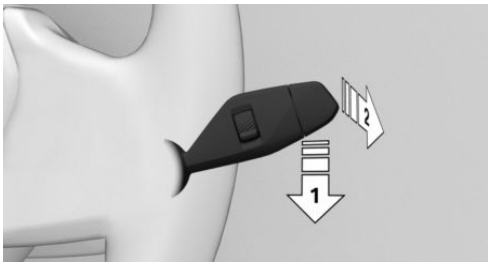


To turn on the wiper system, push the wiper lever upward to the desired position.

Position	Function
Position 0.	Rest position of wipers.
Position 1.	Rain sensor mode.
Position 2.	Normal wiper speed.
Position 3.	Fast wiper speed.

When you continue driving after stopping with the window wiper system on, the wipers will operate at the previous setting.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



To turn off the wiper system, push the wiper lever down until it reaches position 0, arrow 1.

To flick wipe, proceed as follows:

- Push the wiper lever down from position 0, arrow 1.
- Push the wiper lever up from position 0 or position 1, arrow 2.

The wiper lever returns to its initial position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

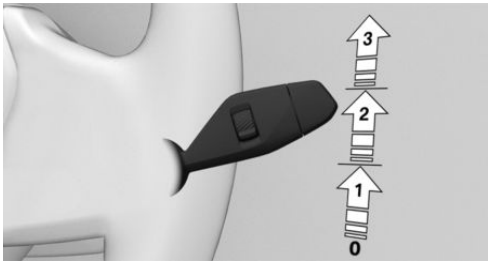
The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the intensity of the rainfall. The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in car washes. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating rain sensor



To activate the rain sensor: Push the wiper lever upward from position 0, arrow 1, once.

Wiping operation is started.

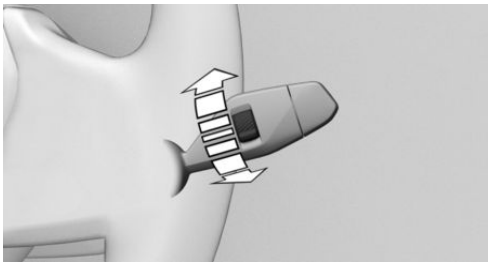
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiping operation may not start.

Deactivating rain sensor

To deactivate the rain sensor: Push the wiper lever back to position 0.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



To adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor, turn the thumbwheel on the wiper lever as follows:

- To set the rain sensor sensitivity to high, turn the thumbwheel up.
- To set the rain sensor sensitivity to low, turn the thumbwheel down.

Window washer system

Safety information

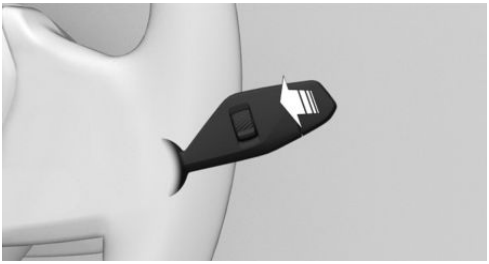
WARNING

The washer fluid may freeze to the window glass at low temperatures and obstruct your view. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the window washer system when the washer fluid will not freeze. Use antifreeze if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield



To clean the windshield, pull the wiper lever back.

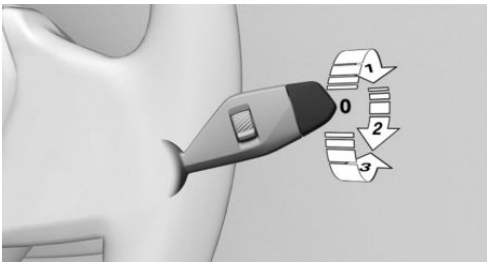
The washer fluid is sprayed on the windshield, and the wipers are turned on briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while standby state is switched on.

Rear wiper

Switching on the rear wiper



To turn on the rear wiper, rotate the outer switch on the wiper lever upward.

Switch position	Function
Position 0.	Rest position of the wiper.
Position 1.	Intermittent operation. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Cleaning the rear window

To clean the rear window, turn the outer switch on the wiper lever as follows:

- In rest position: Turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch returns to its rest position when released.
- In intermittent operation: Turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

The function is deactivated if the washer fluid reservoir fill level is low.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded out from the windshield, which

is important, for instance, when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

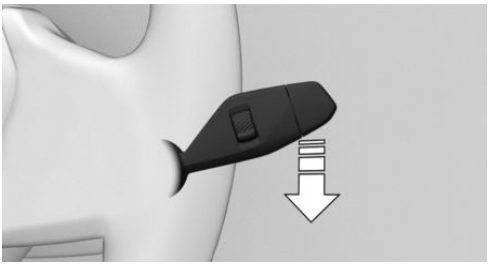
NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the window glass before turning on the wipers.

Folding out the wipers

To fold the wipers away from the windshield, proceed as follows:

1. Activate standby state.
2. Push the wiper lever down or forward and hold it until the wipers stop in an approximately vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way out from the windshield.

Folding in the wipers

To fold in the wipers, proceed as follows:

1. Fold the wipers back in toward the windshield.
2. Turn on standby state, then press the wiper lever down or forward again and hold it.

   The wipers return to their rest position and are ready for operation.

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

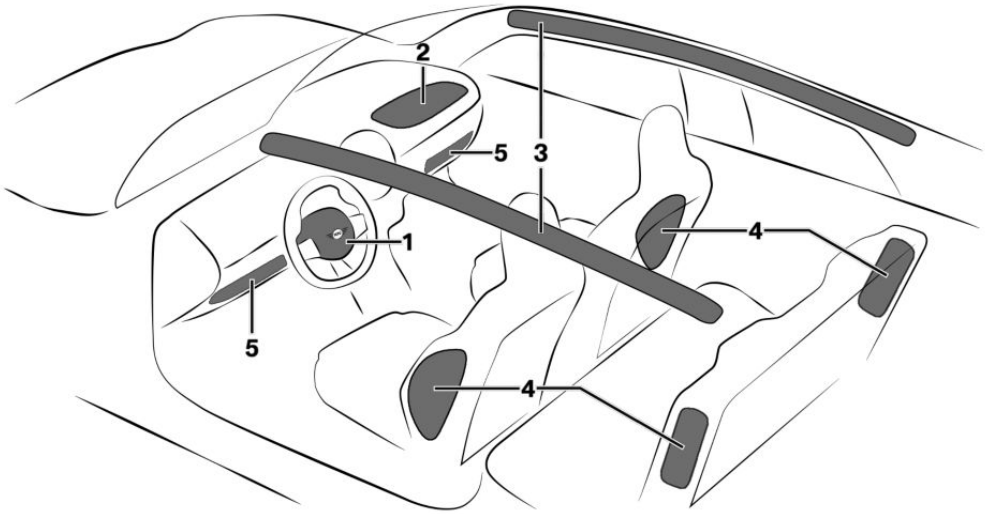
Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Airbags

Principle

The airbag system provides additional protection in the event of an accident, especially if the seat belt is worn correctly.



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbag

The front airbag helps protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a frontal impact in which the seat belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag protects the sides of the occupants' chest and pelvic area.

The availability of the side airbag in the rear depends on the national-market version.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag in the rear protects the side chest and pelvic area of the occupants in the outer rear seats.

Head airbag

In the event of a side collision, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side collision events.

Knee airbag

The availability of the knee airbag depends on the national-market version.

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not deployed in every impact situation, e.g., not in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum protective effect of the airbags

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect, the seat belts are fastened incorrectly or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to deployment. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

To ensure that the airbag system has the optimal protective effect, note the following:

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Fasten seat belts correctly.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions in order to minimize the risk of hand or arm injury when the airbag deploys.
- Adjust the seat and steering wheel so that hands can reach over the steering wheel diagonally. Select the settings so that when reaching over the steering wheel the shoulders rest against the backrest and the upper body is as far away as possible from the steering wheel.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the instrument panel.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Keep the instrument panel and windshield on the front passenger side clear, i.e., do not cover or apply adhesive film, and do not attach holders for, e.g., navigation devices or mobile phones.
- Do not bond the airbag cover panels with adhesive, do not cover them, and do not modify them in any way.
- Do not use the airbag cover on the front passenger side for storage.
- Keep storage compartments near the airbags closed, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest.
- Do not place slip covers, seat cushions, or other objects on the front seats un-

less they are specifically designed for seats with integrated airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing such as jackets over the backrests.
- Do not modify individual components or wiring. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the instrument panel, and the seats.
- Do not attach any objects to the steering wheel, e.g., mobile phone holders or trim elements.
- Do not disassemble the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may cause short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment for sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact MINI Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

WARNING

Individual components can be hot after deployment of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

WARNING

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional deployment of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, disassembled, and scrapped by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Views on the Interaction Unit

The airbag system warning light on the Interaction Unit illuminates briefly when drive-ready state is turned on, thus indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners.

Malfunction

- The airbag system warning light on the Interaction Unit does not illuminate when drive-ready state is turned on.
- The airbag system warning light on the Interaction Unit illuminates continuously.

The airbag system or the seat belt tensioners may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Setting the front seat positions

The power that deploys the driver's/front passenger airbags depends on the position of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function, calibrate the electrical front seats as soon

as the respective message appears on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Seats, refer to page 100.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag automatically

Principle

The automatic front passenger airbag deactivation system can detect if the front passenger seat is occupied.

The front passenger airbag is activated or deactivated accordingly.

Safety information

WARNING

To ensure the front passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat surface must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell.

Functional requirements

To ensure that occupants in the front passenger seat are detected properly, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place objects under the seat that can press against the seat from below.
- Sit upright in the seat with the back against the backrest.
- Sit down with your feet touching the floor.

Installing child restraint systems

To ensure that occupants on the front passenger seat are detected properly, note the following:

- Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when using child restraint systems.
- Make sure that the seat surface of the child restraint system rests as flat as possible on the seat surface.
- Move the head restraint up or remove it to ensure that the child restraint system rests as flat as possible against the rear seat backrest.
- Observe the maximum size of the child restraint system, for example to avoid possibly touching the roof.

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Additional information:

Install child restraint systems, refer to page 116.

Indicator light, front passenger airbag

The front passenger airbag indicator light in the headliner indicates the operating state of the front passenger airbag.

The indicator light shows whether the airbag is activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is turned on, the indicator light illuminates briefly and then shows whether the airbag is activated or deactivated.

Display	Function
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF	The indicator light is continuously illuminated when the seat is not occupied or when a child is detected on the seat in a provided child restraint system as intended. The airbag on the front passenger's side is not activated. The indicator light does not illuminate when, for instance, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbag on the front passenger's side is activated.

When the front passenger seat is occupied, check the indicator light in the headliner before and while driving.

Fault of the automatic deactivation system

For adolescents and adults, the front passenger airbag may deactivate in certain seat positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front passenger airbag illuminates in the headliner.

In this case, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbag activates and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear seat.

Occupancy detection

The occupant detection system satisfies the legal requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard FMVSS 208 and deactivates the front passenger airbag under certain conditions.

Collision warning systems

Principle

The Intelligent Safety systems can help prevent an impending collision. To do so, the area around the vehicle is monitored by various sensors.

Depending on vehicle equipment, various safety and warning systems are available:

- The Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention, refer to page 176.
- The Exit Warning, refer to page 187.
- The Lane Departure Warning, refer to page 189.
- The Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 193.
- The Side Collision Protection, refer to page 196.
- The Rear-End Collision Preparation, refer to page 199.
- The Traffic Light and Sign Warning, refer to page 200.
- The Wrong Way Warning, refer to page 202.
- No Turn on Red Information, refer to page 204.
- The Emergency Stop Assistant, refer to page 205.

The collision warning systems can be activated or deactivated on the Interaction Unit. Some functions, e.g., warning times, can be configured.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There

is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Intelligent Safety systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.

Activating/deactivating/adjusting Intelligent Safety systems

1. To activate/deactivate Intelligent Safety systems or configure settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings".
2. Select the desired settings.

Depending on national-market version, some Intelligent Safety Systems automatically become operational after departure.

Resetting the settings

The settings of the collision warning systems can be reset to the default settings at vehicle outbound delivery.

Go through the menu as follows:
Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Reset".

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The detection capability of the collision warning systems is limited.

The system only takes into account objects that are located in the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors. Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

The Intelligent Safety systems may be restricted by the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.

Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention

Principle

The Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention can help to prevent accidents within a certain speed range. To do so, the area around the vehicle is monitored by various sensors.

If an accident cannot be avoided, the system can help reduce the severity of the accident. The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and activate the brakes independently, if needed. You can cancel automatic brake intervention manually, e.g., by actively moving the steering wheel.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Forward Collision Mitigation system includes the following functions:

- The Rear-end collision warning function, refer to page 179.
- The oncoming traffic warning function, refer to page 180.
- The oncoming traffic warning function when turning, refer to page 181.
- The pedestrian warning function, refer to page 183.
- The intersection warning function, refer to page 184.
- The Evasion Assistant, refer to page 186.

Forward Collision Mitigation can be activated or deactivated on the Interaction Unit. You can also configure the warning time. Various warning lights are shown on the Interaction Unit depending on the detected risk of collision.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Speed range

The Forward Collision Mitigation system issues a warning for a possible risk of collision at speeds above approx. 3 mph /5 km/h.

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph /250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

Some functions are deactivated earlier.

The system is enabled as soon as the speed drops below this value again.

Sensors

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Forward Collision Mitigation system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.

Activating/deactivating the Forward Collision Mitigation

Automatic activation of system

Depending on national-market version, Forward Collision Mitigation automatically becomes operational after departure.

Activating the system manually

The Forward Collision Mitigation is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Set the warning time for Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 177.

Deactivating the system manually

Depending on national-market version, you must significantly reduce your vehicle's speed or stop your vehicle in order to deactivate the Forward Collision Mitigation manually. Forward Collision Mitigation is deactivated on the Interaction Unit.

It may be necessary to successively confirm this deactivation on the Interaction Unit.

Go through the menu as follows:
Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Forward Collision Mitigation" / "Off".

Setting the warning time for Forward Collision Mitigation

You can configure the warning time at which Forward Collision Mitigation should issue a warning.

1. Go through the menu as follows:
   Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Forward Collision Mitigation".
2. Select the desired setting.

The more sensitive the warning time is set to be, the more warnings will be displayed. The system can therefore also issue more early or unfounded warnings and reactions.

The system checks for visual impairments. Depending on vehicle equipment, the Driver Attention Camera on the instrument panel monitors where the driver is looking. Visibility and gaze behavior also affect the timing of warnings.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Forward Collision Mitigation is shown on the Interaction Unit and, depending on vehicle equipment, Head-up display by the following indicator lights and warning lights:

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian.
	Risk of collision, for instance with an oncoming or a vehicle driving ahead.
	Risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle crossing from the right.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle crossing from the left.
	General risk of collision.

Red warning lights may be shown in different ways since the system may have detected multiple objects.

Warning function

The Forward Collision Mitigation warns on different warning levels, depending on the respective hazardous situation. In the event of a prewarning, a red warning light illuminates. In the event of an acute warning, a red warning light flashes and a warning tone sounds.

In the event of a system warning, the driver must intervene immediately and in accordance with the situation.

- Red warning light illuminates:

  A hazardous situation has been detected. Increased awareness is required.
- Red warning light flashes:

  There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.
- A warning signal sounds:

  There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.
- Automatic brake intervention:

  Depending on the equipment and situation in case of risk of imminent collision, the system can also intervene with an automatic brake intervention and automatically decelerate the vehicle, if necessary, to a complete stop.

When the brake pedal is depressed quickly and hard, the maximum brake power of the vehicle is used.

Automatic brake intervention

If there is a risk of collision, the Forward Collision Mitigation system can assist with an automatic brake intervention, if necessary.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

A brake intervention can be canceled by depressing the accelerator pedal with sufficient force, releasing the brake pedal, or by actively steering.

Depending on the equipment and situation, the brake intervention can occur up to approx. 155 mph /250 km/h.

At speeds above approx.
130 mph /210 km/h, only a brief brake intervention will occur.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The detection capability of the Forward Collision Mitigation is restricted.

The system only takes into account objects that are located in the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sen-

sors. Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

Forward Collision Mitigation may be limited by the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The Forward Collision Mitigation system may be limited in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- With limitation of the driving stability control systems.
- Up to ten seconds after drive-ready state is turned on using the Start/Stop switch.

Furthermore, do not use Forward Collision Mitigation when tow-starting/towing.

Warning function in rear-end collision situations

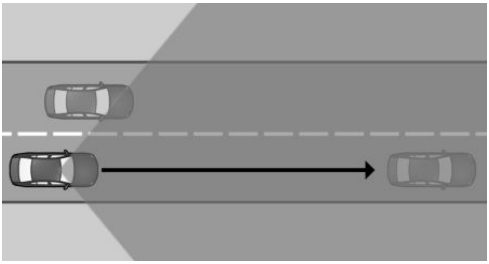
Principle

To warn the driver of a possible risk of collision, the Rear Collision Warning displays a warning light on the Interaction Unit and brakes automatically when necessary. You can cancel automatic brake intervention manually, e.g., by actively moving the steering wheel.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

The time of warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system considers the driver's vehicle handling when responding. If an active driving style is detected, warnings and brake interventions occur less frequently.



The sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Speed range

The rear-end collision warning function is activated when your vehicle speed is greater than approx. 3 mph /5 km/h.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is shown on the Interaction Unit and Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

Icon	Meaning
	Forward Collision Warning with a detected vehicle.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The rear-end collision warning function issues warnings on different levels, depending on the respective hazard situation. This system prompts the driver to intervene manually.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.

System limits

General information

Observe the system limits in the Forward Collision Mitigation with Brake Intervention chapter.

Detection range

With the rear-end collision warning function, the following may not be detected or may be detected only with a delay in the detection range of the sensors, e.g.:

- Preceding vehicle driving slowly and being approached at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with unusual rear designs.

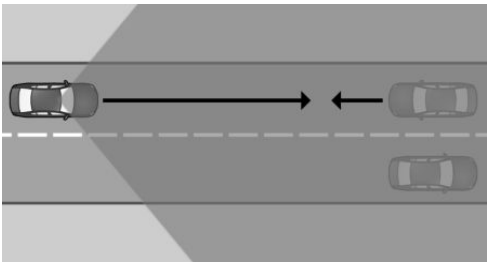
Warning function for oncoming traffic

Principle

To warn the driver of a possible risk of collision with oncoming traffic, the Oncoming Traffic Warning displays a warning light on the Interaction Unit and brakes automatically when necessary. You can cancel automatic brake intervention manually, e.g., by actively moving the steering wheel.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

The time of warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.



The sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independ-

ently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Speed range

The oncoming traffic warning is activated when your vehicle speed is greater than approx. 3 mph /5 km/h.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is shown on the Interaction Unit and Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

Icon	Meaning
	Oncoming traffic warning when a vehicle is detected.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The oncoming traffic warning function issues warnings on different levels, depending on the respective hazard situation. This system prompts the driver to intervene manually.

In case of a possible risk of collision, a brake intervention is triggered.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.

System limits

General information

Observe the system limits in the Forward Collision Mitigation with Brake Intervention chapter.

Detection range

With the oncoming traffic warning function, the following may not be detected or may be detected only with a delay in the detection range of the sensors, e.g.:

- Oncoming vehicles at a very high speed.
- Vehicles with an unusual front view.

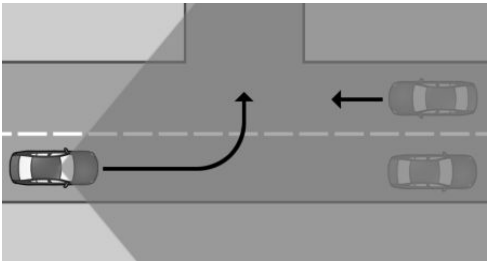
Warning function for turning with oncoming traffic

Principle

To warn the driver of a possible risk of collision with oncoming traffic when turning, the Oncoming Traffic Warning displays a warning light on the Interaction Unit and brakes automatically when necessary. You can cancel automatic brake intervention manually, e.g., by actively moving the steering wheel.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

The time of warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.



The sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Speed range

The warning function for turning is activated when your vehicle speed is greater than approx. 3 mph /5 km/h.

This system reacts when your vehicle speed is less than approx. 15 mph /25 km/h.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is shown on the Interaction Unit and Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

Icon	Meaning
	Oncoming traffic warning when a vehicle is detected.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The warning function for turning with oncoming traffic issues warnings on different levels, depending on the respective hazard. This system prompts the driver to intervene manually.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.

System limits

General information

Observe the system limits in the Forward Collision Mitigation with Brake Intervention chapter.

Detection range

With the warning function for turning with oncoming traffic, the following may not be detected or may be detected only with a

delay in the detection range of the sensors, e.g.:

- Oncoming vehicles at a very high speed.
- Vehicles that are hidden by other vehicles.
- Vehicles with an unusual front view.

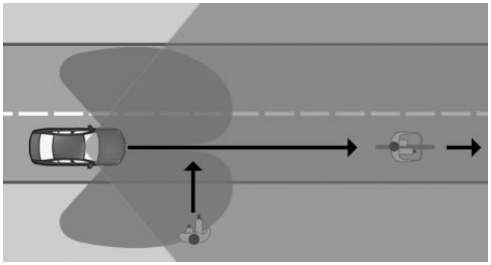
Warning function for pedestrians

Principle

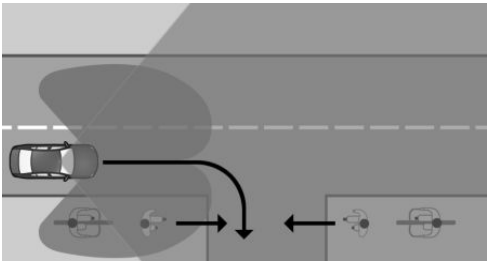
To warn the driver of a possible risk of collision with a pedestrian, the Pedestrian Warning displays a warning light on the Interaction Unit and brakes automatically when necessary. You can cancel automatic brake intervention manually, e.g., by actively moving the steering wheel.

The system issues warnings for speeds that are common in towns and cities.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.



The sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range on a straight road.



In addition, the sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range when turning.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Speed range

The Pedestrian Warning function is activated when your vehicle speed is greater than approx. 3 mph /5 km/h.

Depending on vehicle equipment, this system reacts when your vehicle speed is less than approx. 50 mph /80 km/h.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If there is a risk of collision with a detected pedestrian or cyclist, a warning light is shown on the Interaction Unit and Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The Pedestrian Warning system issues warnings on different levels, depending on the respective hazard situation. This system prompts the driver to intervene manually.

Additional information:

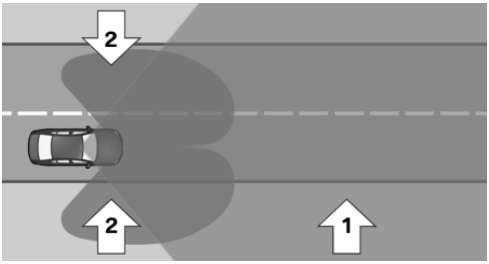
Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.

System limits

General information

Observe the system limits in the Forward Collision Mitigation with Brake Intervention chapter.

Detection range



With the Pedestrian Warning, the sensor detection range consists of the following:

- From area in front of vehicle, arrow 1.
- If vehicle is equipped with front side radar sensors, side areas, arrows 2.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- Pedestrians who are too small for the sensors to detect.

Warning function at intersections

Principle

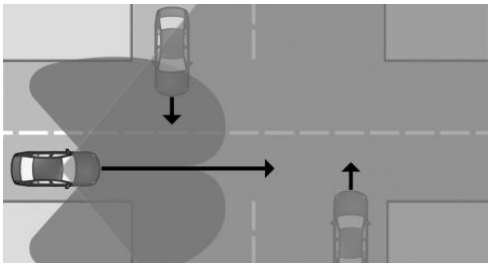
To warn the driver of a possible risk of collision with crossing traffic, the Intersection Warning displays a warning light on the Interaction Unit and brakes automatically when necessary. You can cancel automatic brake intervention manually, e.g., by actively moving the steering wheel.

At intersections and junctions, this system issues warnings for speeds that are common in towns and cities.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

The time of warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.



The sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

Vehicles crossing your driving direction can be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter into detection range of the sensors.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When tow-starting/towing while safety systems or driver assistance systems are activated, the behavior of certain systems may lead to an accident, e.g., due to automatic braking or acceleration. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the corresponding safety systems or driver assistance systems when tow-starting/towing.

Speed range

The Intersection Warning is activated when your vehicle speed is greater than approx. 3 mph /5 km/h.

The system responds to crossing vehicles when the vehicle speed is below approx. 50 mph /80 km/h.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is shown on the Interaction Unit and Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the right.
	Risk of collision with vehicle crossing from the left.
	General risk of collision.

Warning function

The Intersection Warning system issues warnings on different levels, depending on

the respective hazard. This system prompts the driver to intervene manually.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 176.

System limits

General information

Observe the system limits in the Forward Collision Mitigation with Brake Intervention chapter.

Detection range

With the Intersection Warning function, the following may not be detected or may be detected only with a delay in the detection range of the sensors, e.g.:

- Crossing vehicles when they are hidden, e.g. by buildings.
- Vehicles with an unusual side view.
- Vehicles in highly dynamic driving situations.

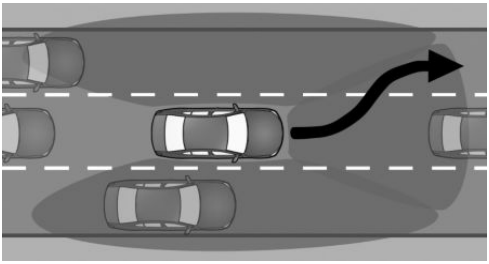
Evasion Assistant

Principle

The Evasion Assistant can help the driver perform evasive maneuvers in certain situations, e.g., when obstacles or pedestrians appear suddenly. This system intervenes actively to assist the driver if it is possible to make an evasive maneuver to the side.

If the system detects sufficient free space alongside the vehicle, it helps the driver perform an evasive maneuver safely.

This system warns the driver of a possible risk of collision by displaying various warning lights on the Interaction Unit.



The sensors monitor and detect the clearance in front of the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the areas next to the vehicle are also monitored.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

To use the Evasion Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Forward Collision Mitigation is active.
- Sensors have detected sufficient clearance around the vehicle.

Speed range

The Evasion Assistant helps the driver when the vehicle speed is between approx. 19 mph / 30 km/h to 100 mph / 160 km/h.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle or person, e.g., a pedestrian, a warning light appears on the Interaction Unit and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display.

Icon	Meaning
	Warning when a vehicle is detected.
	Risk of collision with a pedestrian.
	Risk of collision with unknown obstacle.

Warning function with evasion support

If the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed, a warning is displayed if there is an immediate risk of collision.

Intervene in case of a warning.

The system is designed to provide assistance during evasive maneuvers when there is a risk of collision.

The Evasion Assistant is signaled by a message on the Interaction Unit and Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

System limits

General information

Observe the system limits in the Forward Collision Mitigation with Brake Intervention chapter.

Detection range

With the Evasion Assistant, the following may not be detected in the sensor detection range, e.g.:

- Preceding vehicle driving slowly and being approached at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with unusual rear designs.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.
- Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- Pedestrians who are too small for the sensors to detect.

Functional limitation

This system is deactivated when the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack.

Exit Warning

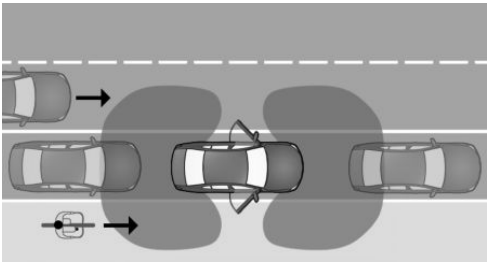
Principle

The Exit Warning helps to avoid accidents.

The system monitors the vehicle's surroundings for a limited time after you get in or park. When opening doors, vehicle occupants are then warned if a risk of collision with an approaching object is detected.

A possible risk of collision is indicated by various warnings, e.g., warning light on the exterior mirror and a warning tone.

The warning light in the exterior mirror gives warnings at different levels.



The sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area around the vehicle in front of the vehicle is monitored as well.

The Exit Warning can be activated or deactivated on the Interaction Unit. This warning function can also be configured.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Pay attention to surrounding traffic and react accordingly as necessary.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The Exit Warning is controlled by the following sensors:

- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Depending on whether vehicle is equipped with side front radar sensors.

Activating/deactivating the Exit Warning

Activating/deactivating this system manually

1. To manually activate/deactivate the Exit Warning, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Exit Warning".
2. Select the desired setting.

Automatic activation of system

The Exit Warning activates automatically whenever you start driving if this function was switched on when you completed your last trip.

Configuring the Exit Warning

1. To configure the Exit Warning, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Exit Warning".
2. Select the desired setting.

Enabling/disabling the warning signal

To turn the Exit Warning tone on/off, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Exit Warning" / "Warning tone".

Displays

Warning light in exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Ambient light

Depending on the equipment, warnings are also indicated by the ambient light in the interior.

Warning function

Prewarning

In the event of a prewarning for the Exit Warning, the warning light on the exterior mirror illuminates. Depending on the equipment, the ambient light also flashes.

An object was detected in the opening area of the doors. Increased awareness is required.

Acute warning

In the event of an acute Exit Warning, the warning light on the exterior mirror flashes, as does the ambient light, depending on vehicle equipment. In addition, a warning tone sounds.

There is a risk of collision when opening the doors.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Detection range

With the Exit Warning, the following may not be identified in the sensor detection range, e.g.:

- Fully or partially hidden objects.
- Stationary or very slow objects.
- Pedestrians.

Functional limitations

The Exit Warning may be limited in the following situations:

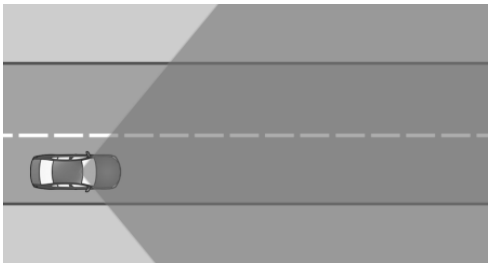
- The speed of an approaching vehicle is too fast or too slow.
- In curves.
- In case of fully or partially hidden objects.

Lane Departure Warning with Lane Return

Principle

The Lane Departure Warning system with Lane Return alerts the driver when their vehicle is about to leave the road or lane.

An automatic steering intervention helps to keep the vehicle in its lane.



The sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The Lane Departure Warning can be activated, deactivated, and configured on the Interaction Unit.

Various warning functions from this system help the driver keep their vehicle in their lane.

If you set your turn signal for the corresponding direction before leaving your lane, no warnings are displayed.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

For the Lane Departure Warning to activate, the camera behind the windshield must detect the lane boundary.

Speed range

The Lane Departure Warning is activated when your vehicle exceeds a given minimum speed. The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the Interaction Unit.

Sensors

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Lane Departure Warning system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.

Activating/deactivating the Lane Departure Warning

Automatic activation of system

Depending on national-market version, the Lane Departure Warning automatically becomes operational after departure.

Activating the system manually

The Lane Departure Warning is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Configuring the Lane Departure Warning, refer to page 191.

Deactivating the system manually

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, deactivation of the Lane Departure Warning must be confirmed successively on the Interaction Unit.

Go through the menu as follows:
Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Lane Departure Warning" / "Off".

Setting Lane Departure Warning

The Lane Departure Warning menu can be used to configure this function and specify when it should issue warnings.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Lane Departure Warning".
2. Select the desired setting.
   - "Expanded"

     If the system detects that your vehicle is about to leave your lane or cross a lane marking, a warning is issued. The system performs a steering intervention.
   - "In dangerous situations"

     A warning is issued if the system detects that the vehicle is about to inadvertently cross a lane marking, or if the sensors detect an oncoming vehicle. A steering intervention is performed.

     Depending on national-market version, with continuous lane markings: If the system detects that your vehicle is about to inadvertently leave your lane or cross a lane marking, a warning is issued. A steering intervention is performed.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. To adjust the steering wheel vibration intensity, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Feedback via steering wheel" / "Vibration intensity".
2. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on national-market version: Activate/deactivate steering intervention

Depending on national-market version, the Lane Departure Warning steering intervention can be activated or deactivated.

Go through the menu as follows:
Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Lane Departure Warning" / "Steering intervention".

Depending on national-market version, the steering intervention automatically becomes operational after departure.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, various indicator lights for the Lane Departure Warning are shown on the Interaction Unit.

Icon	Meaning
	Indicator light flashes green: System is actively issuing a warning. If necessary, the system performs a steering intervention.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, information for the system is shown in Assisted View on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 153.

Warning function

General information

Different warnings are issued by the Lane Departure Warning system, depending on situation and speed:

- Indicator lights on the Interaction Unit.
- Steering wheel vibration.
- Steering intervention.
- Warning tone.

Steering wheel vibration

If you leave the lane and if a lane boundary has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

A light is also displayed on the Interaction Unit.

When the turn signal is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version: The Lane Departure Warning system may intervene with an active steering intervention in addition to vibration if you cross a lane boundary at speeds up to 130 mph /210 km/h. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

During an active steering intervention, a light is displayed on the Interaction Unit.

For instance, the steering intervention will be suppressed in the following situations:

- With hard accelerating or braking.
- When flashing.
- With hazard warning system switched on.
- In driving situation with high driving dynamics.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is limited.
- Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.

End of warning

The warning or active steering intervention of the Lane Departure Warning will be canceled in the following situations, for example:

- Automatically after a few seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- With hard accelerating or braking.
- With hazard warning system switched on.
- When flashing.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- With manual steering intervention.
- When another driver assistance system is activated, if applicable.
- When no lane boundaries are detected.
- When the system limits are reached.

Warning signal

A warning tone sounds if the driver does not actively steer after the Lane Departure Warning system has performed multiple active steering interventions within one minute.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

The warning tone and Check Control message advise the driver to pay closer attention to their lane.

The longer warning tone is stopped if the driver takes control of the steering.

With trailer towing

When the Lane Departure Warning is activated, no steering intervention is performed if the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer.

When using a rear carrier, e.g., a rear bicycle rack, on the trailer hitch, this restriction does not apply while trailer towing is activated on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 328.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Functional limitations

The Lane Departure Warning system may be restricted in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or unclear lane boundaries, e.g., in construction areas.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to ten seconds after drive-ready state is turned on using the Start/Stop switch.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is restricted or disabled.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. A yellow indicator light also illuminates, depending on national-market version.

Active Blind Spot Detection with active return

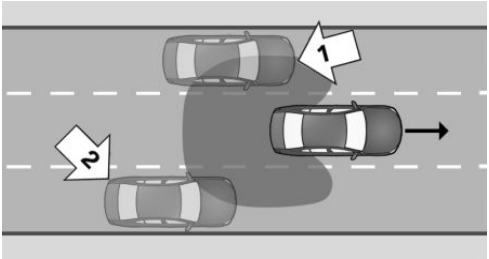
Principle

The Active Blind Spot Detection with active return detects vehicles in your blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane.

Objects are also detected when turning, depending on vehicle equipment.

An automatic steering intervention helps to keep the vehicle in its lane.

A possible risk of collision is indicated by various warnings, e.g., signaled by warning light on the exterior mirror.



The sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in your blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in an adjacent lane, arrow 2. The warning light in the exterior mirror illuminates dimly.

The system will warn in the previously named situations prior to a lane change. The warning light on the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates at the set intensity.

Active Blind Spot Detection can be activated, deactivated, and configured on the Interaction Unit.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Speed range

Active Blind Spot Detection is activated when your vehicle exceeds a given minimum speed. The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed in the Active Blind Spot Detection menu.

When turning at a speed of up to approx. 12 mph /20 km/h, the steering wheel will not vibrate.

This system is temporarily deactivated at speeds greater than approx. 155 mph /250 km/h.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph /250 km/h, the system is reactivated.

Sensors

Active Blind Spot Detection is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Depending on whether vehicle is equipped with side front radar sensors.

Activating/deactivating the Active Blind Spot Detection

1. To activate/deactivate Active Blind Spot Detection, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Active Blind Spot Detection".
2. Select the desired setting.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Active Blind Spot Detection automatically becomes operational after departure.

Adjusting the Active Blind Spot Detection

1. To configure Active Blind Spot Detection, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Active Blind Spot Detection".
2. Select the desired setting.

You can configure how many warnings will be shown. However, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings of critical situations.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. To adjust the steering wheel vibration intensity, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Feedback via steering wheel" / "Vibration intensity".
2. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on national-market version: Activate/deactivate steering intervention

Depending on national-market version, the steering intervention of Active Blind Spot Detection can be activated or deactivated.

Go through the menu as follows:
Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Active Blind Spot Detection" / "Steering intervention".

Activating/deactivating the Turn Warning

Objects in your blind spot are detected when turning at low speed, depending on vehicle equipment.

To activate/deactivate the Turn Warning, go through the menu as follows:
Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Active Blind Spot Detection" / "Warning when turning".

Warning function

Warning light in exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Prewarning

In the event of a prewarning for Active Blind Spot Detection, the dimmed warning light on the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in your blind spot or approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

When an acute warning is issued by Active Blind Spot Detection, the steering wheel vibrates briefly. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes.

An acute warning is issued if the following conditions are met:

- Another vehicle is located in the critical area.
- Your own vehicle is approaching the other lane.
- Depending on the system setting when the turn signal is turned on.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area.

Steering intervention

Depending on national-market version, Active Blind Spot Detection may perform an

active steering intervention if there is no response to the steering wheel vibration and a lane boundary is crossed at speeds of up to 130 mph /210 km/h. The steering intervention helps return the vehicle into the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

The steering intervention is carried out from a minimum speed. This minimum speed is displayed on the Interaction Unit.

With trailer towing

No steering intervention is performed when the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated. Active Blind Spot Detection does not issue a pre-warning.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, an acute warning will continue to be issued if there is a risk of collision.

The warning function may be restricted. Warnings can be displayed late or not at all, e.g., if the speed of the approaching vehicle is much higher than your own speed. An increased number of unwarranted warnings may occur. A Check Control message is displayed.

Warning light flashing

As a self-test of Active Blind Spot Detection, the warning light on the exterior mirror flashes briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Functional limitations

The Active Blind Spot Detection may be restricted in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

Depending on the national-market version, the steering intervention e.g. in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or unclear lane boundaries, e.g., in construction areas.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- With lane boundaries that are not white.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- If the camera is impaired.
- Up to ten seconds after drive-ready state is turned on using the Start/Stop switch.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. A yellow indicator light also illuminates, depending on national-market version.

This system may be restricted or deactivated when the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack. A Check Control message is displayed.

Side Collision Protection

Principle

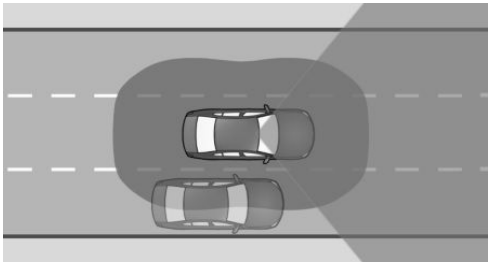
The Side Collision Protection helps to avoid an impending side collision.

If, for example, another vehicle is detected next to your vehicle and there is a risk of collision with this vehicle, the system helps avoid a collision. The system warns

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

the driver by flashing the warning light on the exterior mirror, issuing a Check Control message, and vibrating the steering wheel.

If necessary, an active steering intervention is performed by the system.



The sensors monitor the space next to the vehicle.

The Side Collision Protection can be activated or deactivated on the Interaction Unit. The severity of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

The camera behind the windshield determines the lane boundary positions.

For the Side Collision Protection with steering intervention to activate, the camera must detect the lane boundary.

Speed range

The Side Collision Protection is activated when your vehicle exceeds a given minimum speed. The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the Interaction Unit.

This system responds when your vehicle speed is less than approx. 130 mph /210 km/h.

Sensors

The Side Collision Protection is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.

Activating/deactivating the Side Collision Protection

1. To activate/deactivate the Side Collision Protection, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Side Collision Protection".
2. Select the desired setting.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. To adjust the steering wheel vibration intensity, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Feedback via steering wheel" / "Vibration intensity".
2. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Side Collision Protection information is shown in Assisted View on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 153.

Warning function

Warning light in exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Acute warning

In the event of an acute warning of the Side Collision Protection, the warning light on the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel begins to vibrate if there is a risk of collision.

A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

Steering intervention

Depending on the national-market version, if necessary, the system engages the active steering intervention to prevent a collision and maintain the vehicle within its own lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Functional limitations

The Side Collision Protection may be restricted in the following situations:

- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- With lane boundaries that are not white.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to ten seconds after drive-ready state is turned on using the Start/Stop switch.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited.

This system is deactivated when the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack. A Check Control message is displayed.

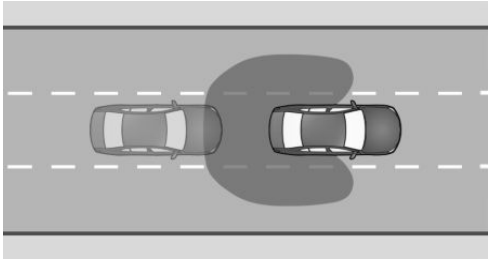
Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Rear-End Collision Preparation

Principle

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the Rear-End Collision Preparation can react to vehicles approaching from behind.

Depending on national-market version, the hazard warning system turns on and Pre-Crash functions may be triggered if a vehicle is detected approaching at a certain speed.



The sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

Rear-End Collision Preparation automatically becomes operational after departure and deactivates automatically in certain situations.

Additional information:

Active Protection, refer to page 212.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The Rear-End Collision Preparation is controlled by the side, rear radar sensors.

Activating/deactivating the Rear-End Collision Preparation

Rear-End Collision Preparation automatically becomes operational after departure.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- When reversing.
- When the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Functional limitations

Rear-End Collision Preparation may be limited if the speed of the approaching vehi-

cle is much higher or similar to your own speed.

Traffic Light and Sign Warning

Principle

The Traffic Light and Sign Warning provides support in situations in which the right-of-way needs to be yielded based on road signs or traffic lights.

This system uses a camera to analyze road signs and traffic lights. The navigation system directs information on the road layout to the system.

For warning purposes, the respective traffic situation is shown on the Interaction Unit. An acoustic signal also sounds in acute warning situations.

A warning is given if the right of way is about to be violated, e.g., in the following traffic situations:

- At an intersection.
- At a road entrance.
- On a highway entrance ramp.
- At a roundabout.
- With a red traffic light.

The Traffic Light and Sign Warning can be activated or deactivated on the Interaction Unit. You can also configure the warning time.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

The right-of-way situation ahead of the vehicle must be clearly controlled by road signs or traffic lights.

Identifiable right-of-way situations

Various road signs are taken into account for the Traffic Light and Sign Warning:

Sign	Meaning
	Give way signs: A pre-warning is issued for these road signs.
	Stop signs: A pre-warning is issued for these road signs.
	When traffic lights are red, a pre-warning and an acute warning will be issued.

Speed range

The Traffic Light and Sign Warning issues a warning as from a variable minimum speed and at speeds up to approx. 60 mph /100 km/h.

Sensors

The Traffic Light and Sign Warning is controlled by the camera behind the windshield.

Activating/deactivating the Traffic Light and Sign Warning

1. To activate/deactivate the Traffic Light and Sign Warning, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Traffic Light and Sign Warning".
2. Select the desired setting.

Setting the warning time for the Traffic Light and Sign Warning

1. To configure the warning time for the Traffic Light and Sign Warning, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Traffic Light and Sign Warning".
2. Select the desired setting.

The selected setting is saved and adopted for the next journey.

Warning function

General information

The Traffic Light and Sign Warning issues warnings in two levels.

If a prewarning is issued, the system indicates this with an icon on the Interaction Unit.

If an acute warning is issued, the system indicates this with an icon on the Interaction Unit and by sounding an acoustic signal.

The timing of the warning varies with the actual driving situation and the warning time setting.

Prewarning

If a prewarning is issued for the Traffic Light and Sign Warning because there is a risk that a vehicle is not yielding the right-of-way, an icon is displayed on the Interaction Unit:

Icon	Meaning
	Give way.
	Stop.
	Red traffic light.

When a prewarning is issued, intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Acute warning

If an acute warning is issued for the Traffic Light and Sign Warning because there is a risk that a vehicle is not yielding the right-of-way, an acoustic signal sounds and an icon is displayed on the Interaction Unit:

Icon	Meaning
	Red traffic light.

When an acute warning is issued, intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Display in the Head-up display

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Traffic Light and Sign Warning is displayed simultaneously on the Head-up display and Interaction Unit.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

No warning

The Traffic Light and Sign Warning does not issue a warning in the following situations, for example:

- In right-of-way situations without right-of-way signs, stop signs, or red traffic lights.
- With intersections with relevant traffic lights that are illuminated yellow or green.

Functional limitations

The Traffic Light and Sign Warning system may be limited in the following situations:

- If road signs or traffic lights are unclear.
- If road signs or traffic lights are fully or partially concealed or soiled.
- If road signs or traffic lights are difficult to read or rotated.
- If road signs or traffic lights are too small or too large.
- If the road signs do not correspond to the standard.
- When road signs are detected that apply to a junction or parallel street.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.
- With intersections with flashing traffic lights.
- Up to ten seconds after drive-ready state is turned on using the Start/Stop switch.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- In some regions, the system may not be available or only partially available.

Wrong Way Warning

Principle

The Wrong Way Warning warns the driver of an upcoming wrong entry onto roads, for instance onto freeways, roundabouts and one-way streets.

The system uses sensors and, depending on vehicle equipment, navigation data and road signs to monitor the traffic situation.

For warning purposes, the corresponding road sign is shown on the Interaction Unit and an acoustic signal sounds.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

The road layout ahead must be controlled clearly with road signs.

Identifiable traffic situations

The Wrong Way Warning system recognizes the following road signs, for example:

- No entrance.
- Roundabout.
- Direction arrows for required passing maneuver.

Sensors

The Wrong Way Warning function is controlled by the camera behind the windshield.

Enabling the Wrong Way Warning

Depending on national-market version, the Wrong Way Warning automatically becomes operational after departure.

Warning function

The Wrong Way Warning is displayed and an acoustic signal sounds when your vehicle is traveling in the wrong direction on a highway, roundabout, or one-way street, for example.

Warnings are displayed on the Interaction Unit and Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

No warning

For example, the Wrong Way Warning does not issue warnings for road layouts without road signs.

Functional limitations

The Wrong Way Warning may be restricted in the following situations, for example, and will either output an incorrect wrong way warning or no warning at all:

- When the signage is not clear.
- If the road signs are fully or partially concealed or soiled.
- If the road signs are poorly legible or rotated.
- If the road signs are too small or too large.
- If the road signs do not correspond to the standard.
- When road signs are detected that apply to a junction or parallel street.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.
- Up to ten seconds after drive-ready state is turned on using the Start/Stop switch.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- It may not be possible to use the system in all regions.

No Turn on Red Information

Principle

The No Turn on Red Information assists the driver by indicating at which traffic lights turning on red is prohibited.

To do so, this function analyzes traffic lights and road signs using the camera behind the windshield. In addition, the navigation system data is used.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

To use the No Turn on Red Information function, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The system detects the right-of-way situation ahead by analyzing traffic lights and road signs.
- Vehicle is less than approx. 164 ft/50 m from the traffic lights.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, the Traffic Light and Sign Warning is activated.

Sensors

The No Turn on Red Information is controlled by the camera behind the windshield.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If the driver approaches a red traffic light with a road sign that prohibits turning on red, an indicator light appears on the Interaction Unit.

The indicator light goes out automatically after you drive off at a speed greater than approx. 9 mph /15 km/h.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Collision warning systems chapter.

Functional limitations

The No Turn on Red Information may be limited in the following situations, for example:

- If road signs or traffic lights are unclear.
- If road signs or traffic lights are fully or partially concealed or soiled.
- If road signs or traffic lights are difficult to read or rotated.

- If road signs or traffic lights are too small or too large.
- If the road signs do not correspond to the standard.
- With intersections with flashing traffic lights.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- In some regions, this function may not be completely available or not available at all.

Emergency Stop Assistant

Principle

The Emergency Stop Assistant assists the driver if they are no longer able to drive their vehicle safely. When the system is triggered, the vehicle is brought to a stop in its own lane by the lane keeping system.

The Interaction Unit can be used to enable or disable triggering of the Emergency Stop Assistant.

The driver can manually cancel the Emergency Stop Assistant at any time.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Functional requirements

To use the Emergency Stop Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The Emergency Stop Assistant is activated on the Interaction Unit.
- The system is activated from a speed of approx. 43 mph /70 km/h.
- The Driver Attention Camera detects driver activity.

Activating/deactivating Emergency Stop Assistant

To activate/deactivate triggering of the Emergency Stop Assistant, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Emergency stop".

Triggering the Emergency Stop Assistant

If the Emergency Stop Assistant detects that the driver is no longer driving their vehicle safely or is ignoring warnings, the system is triggered automatically. The triggered system is shown on the Interaction Unit.

The Interaction Unit can be used to initiate an immediate emergency call.

The following is performed automatically when the Emergency Stop Assistant is triggered:

- A display appears on the Interaction Unit.
- This system maneuvers the vehicle until it comes to a standstill.
- The hazard warning system is switched on.

- An emergency call is triggered when at a standstill, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The Head-up display may turn off while an emergency call is ongoing.

The Emergency Stop Assistant can also be triggered via voice input.

Additional information:

MINI Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 51.

Canceling Emergency Stop Assistant

The driver can cancel the Emergency Stop Assistant at any point by taking active control of driving the vehicle.

The system is stopped by the following actions, for example:

- By firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.
- By stopping the system on the Interaction Unit.
- By operating the turn signal.
- By turning off the hazard warning system.
- By firmly countersteering.
- By changing the selector lever position when the vehicle was already at a standstill.

At standstill

As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the Emergency Stop Assistant will apply the following settings:

- The vehicle is secured against rolling away.
- The interior lights are switched on.
- The central locking system is unlocked.

Views on the Interaction Unit

When triggered, the Emergency Stop Assistant is shown on the Interaction Unit.

Icon	Meaning
	The Emergency Stop Assistant has triggered.

System limits

The Emergency Stop Assistant does not release the driver from their obligation to drive safely in traffic.

This system may be limited in the following situations:

- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel.
- When wearing sunglasses with high protection against infrared light.

Cross Traffic Warning with brake intervention

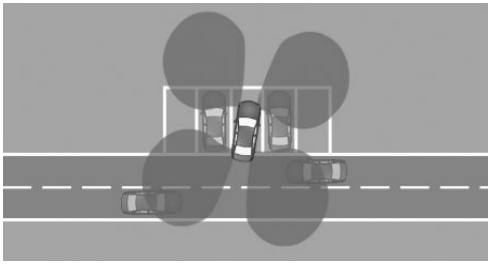
Principle

The Cross Traffic Warning with brake intervention helps the driver by providing visual and acoustic warnings when driving through confusing exits or pulling out of perpendicular parking spaces.

The system detects road users approaching from the side earlier than would be possible from the driver's seat.

If there is a risk of collision when reversing, this system provides assistance by performing an automatic brake intervention.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26



The sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area around the vehicle in front of the vehicle is monitored as well.

The system displays a warning light on the exterior mirror, for example, when other road users are approaching.

The Cross Traffic Warning can be activated or deactivated on the Interaction Unit.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Additional information:

Parking assistance systems, refer to page 251.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The Cross Traffic Warning is controlled by the following sensors:

- Side radar sensors, rear.
- Depending on whether vehicle is equipped with side front radar sensors.

Activating/deactivating Cross Traffic Warning

The system must be activated on the Interaction Unit for the Cross Traffic Warning and brake intervention to turn on automatically.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking".
2. Select the desired setting, depending on vehicle equipment:
   - "Rear warning"
   - "Front and rear warning"
   - "Brake intervention at rear"

Turning on the cross traffic warning automatically

The Cross Traffic Warning must be activated on the Interaction Unit. The system turns on automatically as soon as Park Distance Control or a camera view activates and you engage a gear position.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the front system is turned on when a gear position is engaged.

Depending on national-market version, this system activates automatically when the vehicle is started.

Deactivating the cross traffic warning automatically

The Cross Traffic Warning deactivates automatically in the following situations, for example:

- When walking speed is exceeded.
- When a certain distance covered is exceeded.

Warning function

General information

With the Cross Traffic Warning, the Interaction Unit displays the corresponding view, an acoustic signal may sound, and the warning light on the exterior mirror flashes.

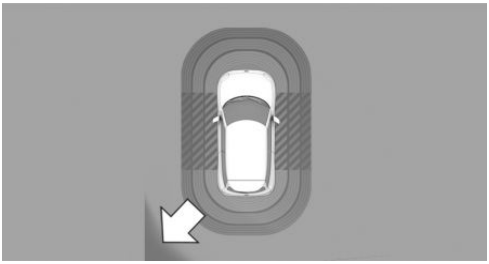
When a brake intervention is performed, a message appears on the Interaction Unit then closes after a short time.

Visual warning

Warning light in exterior mirror

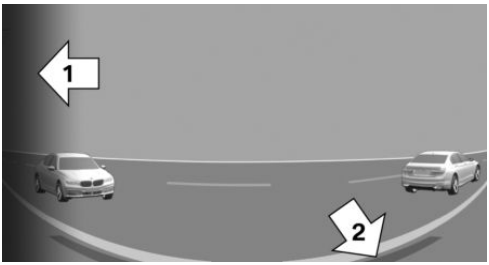
The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes if the radar sensors have detected other vehicles while reversing.

Display in the Park Distance Control view



In the Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Display in camera view



Depending on the direction of travel, the view to the front or back is displayed in the camera image.

The boundary area in the camera image flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors, arrow 1.

Yellow lines mark the bumper of your own vehicle, arrow 2.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual warning of the Cross Traffic Warning function, an acoustic signal sounds if your vehicle moves in the corresponding direction.

Depending on the national-market version, the signal tone will already sound when the gear position is engaged.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

The Cross Traffic Warning may be limited by the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

The Cross Traffic Warning may be limited in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.
- If the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, the cross traffic warning is not available for the area behind the vehicle.

Drive Recorder

Principle

The Drive Recorder stores brief video recordings your vehicle's surroundings, e.g., to document surrounding traffic. This system must be activated on the Interaction Unit before it can be used for the first time.

The Interaction Unit can be used to configure video recording settings like the recording type and time, e.g., for an accident.

Video recordings can be saved in different ways:

- Automatic storage of recordings makes it possible to document the vehicle accident or theft using the corresponding recording type configured.
- Saving recordings manually helps you document traffic situations using your set recording type.

Depending on vehicle equipment, video recordings can be saved directly to a mobile device, e.g., smartphone.

Video recordings can be played on the Interaction Unit.

Assistance system cameras are used to record, e.g., panorama view cameras.

In addition, the following parameters are stored for the trip:

- Date.
- Time.
- Speed.
- GPS coordinates.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Data protection

The Drive Recorder is permitted to record and evaluate video recordings in accordance with applicable regulations of the country in which the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with respective applicable regulations.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you verify there are no statutory or regulatory restrictions on using the system in your region or country prior to initial use.

In addition, the laws with respect to use of the system should be verified in regular intervals, especially when borders are frequently crossed.

Other drivers of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, you should inform others about the system when giving them the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To use the Drive Recorder, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Standby or drive-ready state is on.
- The Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, consent has been granted in the Privacy menu for the transfer or use of the data required for the function, e.g., the camera or GPS coordinates.
- The Drive Recorder is activated.
- The recording type has been selected.
- The recording duration has been selected.

To use the Theft Alert, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The theft notification was activated in the Data Protection menu or in the Drive Recorder menu.
- Data transfer is activated.
- The MINI App is installed on the mobile device.
- The MINI App is linked to the MINI Connected account.
- The Privacy Policy has been accepted.

Additional information:

Data protection, refer to page 61.

Activating/deactivating the Drive Recorder

The Drive Recorder must be activated on the Interaction Unit before using the recording function for the first time.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Drive Recorder".
2. Accept the Privacy Policy.
3. "Settings"
4. "Allow recordings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Recording functions

Starting/saving automatic recording

If the vehicle sensors detect an accident or theft, the Drive Recorder starts recording automatically and then saves this recording.

- In the event of an accident, the Drive Recorder saves recordings up to approx. 30 seconds before and after storage is triggered.
- In the event of theft, the Drive Recorder saves recordings after being triggered. Recordings are stored depending on the setting selected for recording duration.

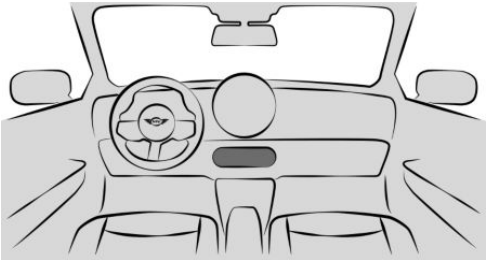
  When the alarm system is triggered, a message is sent to the MINI App.

  After saving the recording, the reduced quality video can be downloaded to a mobile device.

If the vehicle accelerates rapidly, an automatic recording may be taken.

Manual recording

Via the button



To start a manual recording with the Drive Recorder, press and hold the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

Recordings are made for the set recording time and can be ended manually on the Interaction Unit.

Via the Interaction Unit

To start recording with Drive Recorder in the vehicle, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Drive Recorder" / "Start recording" / "Vehicle".

Recordings are made for the set recording time and can be stopped manually by reselecting the menu option on the Interaction Unit.

The system saves recordings up to approx. 30 seconds before and after storage is triggered.

Playing/managing recordings

Video recordings saved by the Drive Recorder can be played, exported, and deleted.

For safety purposes, video recordings are only shown on the Interaction Unit if the vehicle speed is below approx. 2 mph /3 km/h. Depending on national-market version, video recordings are only shown when the parking brake is applied or selector lever position P is engaged.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Drive Recorder" / "Recordings".
2. Select the desired recording.
3. If necessary, select the camera.

Settings

Recording type

1. To select the recording type for Drive Recorder, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Drive Recorder" / "Settings".
2. Select the desired setting.

Recording time

1. To configure the recording time for Drive Recorder, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Drive Recorder" / "Settings".
2. Select the desired setting.

Recording on a mobile device

General information

Depending on national-market version, video recordings can also be saved to a mobile device.

The length of the video that can be stored depends on the available memory capacity on the mobile device.

Functional requirements

To record on a mobile device, the following functional requirements for the Drive Recorder must be met:

- The Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- The Drive Recorder is activated.

To send recordings to a mobile device, the following functional requirements for the Drive Recorder must be met:

- Depending on vehicle equipment, the mobile device can be paired with the vehicle via Wi-Fi and Bluetooth audio.
- The MINI App is installed and open on the mobile device.
- A MINI ID is linked to a MINI Connected account in the vehicle and the MINI App.
- The MINI App is permitted to access your photo library.
- The mobile device is placed close to the center console.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, refer to page 55.

Starting/ending recording

To start recording with Drive Recorder on a mobile device, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Drive Recorder" / "Start recording" / "MINI App".

Recordings can be stopped manually by reselecting the menu option on the Interaction Unit.

Cameras

Various Drive Recorder cameras can be selected.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Drive Recorder" / "Settings" / "Camera selection".
2. Select your desired camera.

System limits

In the event of a serious accident, the Drive Recorder may not be able to store recordings if the damage to the vehicle is too great or the power supply was interrupted.

If the accident severity is too low, the Drive Recorder may not save a recording.

In case of theft, recordings are only saved automatically when the alarm system has been triggered.

If the internet connection is weak or cannot be established, theft alerts and video downloads may be restricted or not available.

The Drive Recorder may not work properly if used in parallel with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto on the vehicle Wi-Fi. A corresponding message appears on the Interaction Unit.

The quality of the Wi-Fi connection affects whether recordings can be saved on your smartphone. This function may be restricted or not available if the connection is weak.

If the mobile device overheats, e.g., when charging in the Wireless Charging tray, the recording system may stop when recording manually or sending a recording.

Active Protection

Principle

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving situations.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, this system consists of various PreCrash functions.

Active Protection is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. The following critical driving situations can occur, for example:

- Emergency braking.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of some vehicle systems can lead to Active Protection being triggered within their system limits:

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

- Automatic brake intervention by Forward Collision Mitigation.
- Brake power assistance provided by Forward Collision Mitigation.
- Detection of an impending rear collision by the Rear-End Collision Preparation.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situations might not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

PreCrash functions

Depending on vehicle equipment and requirements, Active Protection activates the following individual functions in critical driving situations:

- Automatic closing of the windows.

  The windows remain open with a small gap.
- Automatic closing of the glass sunroof.

  The sun protection is also closed.
- Automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.

Systems can be returned to the desired settings following a critical driving situation without accident.

PostCrash iBrake

Principle

In certain accident situations, PostCrash iBrake can automatically bring the vehicle to a stop without any need for the driver to intervene. This can reduce the risk of a further collision.

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

The driver can intervene manually to brake the vehicle more sharply or cancel automatic braking with PostCrash iBrake.

Harder vehicle deceleration

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a stop more quickly than with PostCrash iBrake automatic braking.

Brake quickly and forcefully. The brake pressure will then be higher than the brake pressure generated by automatic braking. Automatic braking with PostCrash iBrake is canceled.

Abort automatic braking

It may be necessary to cancel PostCrash iBrake automatic braking in certain situations, e.g., when making an evasive maneuver.

Automatic braking can be canceled by doing as follows:

- By depressing the brake pedal for slightly longer.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal for slightly longer.

Fatigue Alert

Principle

The Fatigue Alert can detect when the driver is less alert using various criteria.

The Fatigue Alert break recommendation function can detect driver fatigue, e.g., during long, monotonous trips. This function

recommends taking a break as necessary. A prompt appears on the Interaction Unit.

The break recommendation can be configured on the Interaction Unit.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Break recommendation

Function

The break recommendation begins training to the driver once a trip is started, enabling it to detect when the driver is inattentive or fatigued.

This process takes the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, e.g., steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, e.g., the time or duration of the drive.
- Driver Attention Camera information, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

This function activates at speeds greater than approx. 43 mph / 70 km/h and can also display a break recommendation.

Setting break recommendation

The Distraction Warning from the Fatigue Alert system can be turned on or off or configured.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Fatigue Alert".
2. Select the desired setting.

Despite this function being off, some driver assistance systems may issue break recommendations.

Display

If the Fatigue Alert system detects that the driver is paying less attention or has become fatigued, a notice appears on the Interaction Unit recommending that the driver take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle. A break recommendation can only be displayed again after this time has elapsed.

System limits

The Fatigue Alert system may be limited. If the system is limited, either no warning may be issued or an unwarranted warning may be issued.

The Fatigue Alert functions may be restricted in the following situations:

- If the time is set incorrectly.
- With a sporty driving style such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road condition is poor.

- In the event of strong side winds.
- Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, with restricted functionality of the Driver Attention Camera.

Additional information:

Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 215.

Driver Attention Camera

Principle

The Driver Attention Camera is an infrared camera on the instrument panel. Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, this camera monitors the driver's activity and direction of view.

The attentiveness of the driver is analyzed, for example, by evaluating their gaze direction and how far their eyes are open.

Functional requirements

To fully operate the Driver Attention Camera, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The steering wheel and driver’s seat height must be adjusted so that the Driver Attention Camera is close to the upper rim of the steering wheel. This enables the Driver Attention Camera to record the driver’s entire face.
- The Driver Attention Camera's field of view is clear.

Overview

One infrared light is located on the instrument panel. Depending on the lighting conditions, these light sources may be visible when the vehicle is in standby.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may be limited in the following situations:

- When the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel.
- When wearing sunglasses with high protection against infrared light.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Antilock Braking System

Principle

The Antilock Braking System prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steerability even during emergency braking, which increases the active driving safety.

The Antilock Braking System activates automatically whenever drive-ready state is turned on.

Malfunction

The indicator light illuminates on the Interaction Unit.

A Check Control message is displayed.

- The Antilock Braking System is not available.
- The ability to steer is restricted during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Brake assistant

The brake assistant automatically applies maximum braking assistance when the brake pedal is depressed quickly. This reduces the braking distance to a minimum for full braking.

To make full use of braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

JCW Performance Brake

General information

The John Cooper Works Performance Brake is a high-performance brake system with perforated compound brake disks.

Due to the specific design, temporary function-related noise may occur after an extended minor load.

The function-related noises have no effect on the performance, operational reliability, and durability of the brake.

Correct braking

To prevent function-related noises, depress the brakes hard a few times in regular intervals. Ensure that the traffic situation permits the braking.

With moisture on the brake disks, the brake system may be operated dry to prevent noise.

Dynamic Stability Control

Principle

Dynamic Stability Control helps the driver keep their vehicle safely on the road during critical driving situations. Depending on the situation, the drive power is reduced and wheels can be braked individually.

This system can be activated or deactivated via MINI Modes.

The Dynamic Stability Control will detect, e.g., the following unstable driving conditions:

- Skidding, which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of adhesion of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

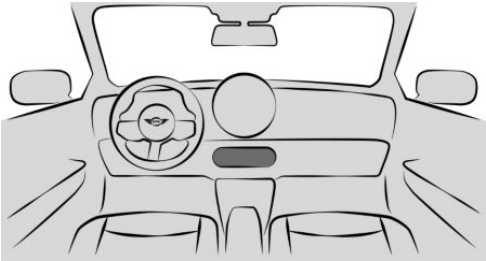
WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Overview



The MINI Modes switch is located on the switch cluster and labeled EXPERIENCE.

Activating/deactivating Dynamic Stability Control

If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, driving stability is restricted when accelerating and cornering.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

To activate/deactivate Dynamic Stability Control, proceed as follows:

1.

Select Go Kart Mode using the MINI Modes switch on the switch cluster.

   John Cooper Works: On the switch cluster, select JCW Mode using the MINI Modes switch.
2. Tap the Settings icon on the Interaction Unit.
3. Go through the menu as follows: "Driving dynamics" / "DSC OFF".

   Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Dynamic Stability Control reactivates automatically when changing to another drive mode.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, DSC OFF is shown on the Interaction Unit.

Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated when the indicator light illuminates.

If the indicator light flashes, Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving power and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce the vehicle speed and adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

If the indicator light illuminates, Dynamic Stability Control has malfunctioned or is initializing. Driving stabilization is restricted or has failed.

If the indicator light illuminates continuously, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Setting for increased driving dynamics

Principle

For a more dynamic driving experience, MINI Modes can be used to increase driving dynamics.

Dynamic Stability Control, and thus driving stability, are limited while accelerating and cornering.

Overview

The MINI Modes switch is located on the switch cluster and labeled EXPERIENCE.

Activating/deactivating increased driving dynamics

To activate increased driving dynamics, proceed as follows:

1.

Select Go Kart Mode using the MINI Modes switch on the switch cluster.

   John Cooper Works: On the switch cluster, select JCW Mode using the MINI Modes switch.

2. ⚙ Tap the Settings icon on the Interaction Unit.
3. Go through the menu as follows: "Driving dynamics" / "SPORT PLUS".

   Increased driving dynamics is activated.

Dynamic Stability Control reactivates automatically when changing to another drive mode.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If increased driving dynamics is activated, the Dynamic Stability Control indicator light illuminates on the Interaction Unit.

Automatic program change

Increased driving dynamics deactivates automatically in the following situations, for example:

- When the Distance Control is activated.
- In case of a brake intervention by Forward Collision Mitigation. Deactivate Forward Collision Mitigation as necessary.
- If the suspension control system fails.
- The vehicle has a flat tire.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention, refer to page 176.

Drive-off support

Principle

Drive-off support provides the best possible traction when driving off in certain situations, e.g., on difficult surfaces like snow or sand.

This function ensures maximum drive power at low speeds with adapted driving stability.

Activating/deactivating the drive-off support

To activate drive-off support, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Drivetrain and chassis" / "Activate drive-off support once".

Drive-off Support remains operational until it is deactivated in the menu or the drive mode is changed.

Views on the Interaction Unit

If Drive-off Support is activated, the Drive-off Support indicator light illuminates on the Interaction Unit.

ALL4

ALL4 is the vehicle's all-wheel-drive system. The interplay between ALL4 and other suspension control systems, e.g., Dynamic Stability Control, further optimizes vehicle traction and driving dynamics.

ALL4 variably distributes the drive force to the front and rear axles as required by the driving situation and road conditions.

Hill Descent Control

Principle

Hill Descent Control is a downhill control feature for vehicles with all-wheel drive. This feature adjusts the vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients, e.g., when driving on unpaved roads.

When Hill Descent Control is on, the vehicle moves at the speed set by the driver, without the driver having to depress the brake pedal.

While Hill Descent Control is adjusting the speed, the system automatically distributes the brake power to the individual wheels. Driving stability and steerability are improved. If necessary, the Antilock Braking System prevents the wheels from locking.

Hill Descent Control can be enabled at speeds below approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Speeds can be set between approx. 2 mph/3 km/h and approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. While driving downhill,

this system reduces the vehicle speed to the set value, as physically possible.

Hill Descent Control provides assistance when driving in selector lever positions D, N, and R.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Enabling/disabling Hill Descent Control

To activate/deactivate Hill Descent Control, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver assistance" / "Hill Descent Control".

Hill Descent Control is automatically disabled at speeds above approx. 25 mph /40 km/h.

While Hill Descent Control is regulating the vehicle speed, the following functions are deactivated:

- The Forward Collision Mitigation with Brake Intervention.
- The emergency braking function of Active Park Distance Control.

Additional information:

- Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention, refer to page 176.
- Active Park Distance Control, refer to page 267.

Views on the Interaction Unit

The chosen set speed is displayed on the Interaction Unit together with the Hill Descent Control indicator light.

The indicator light illuminates green when the system is activated. Hill Descent Control decelerates the vehicle.

The indicator light illuminates gray when the system is in standby or temporarily deactivated.

Display in the Head-up display

The status of Hill Descent Control can also be shown on the Head-up display.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Using the rocker button for Cruise Control

On the left side of the steering wheel, repeatedly press the rocker button up or down until the desired speed is set.

- Press the rocker button up or down to gradually increase or decrease the set speed.
- Press the rocker button up/down and hold it until the desired speed is reached.

Using the brake pedal

While Hill Descent Control is adjusting the speed, the target speed set can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal.

Malfunction

If Hill Descent Control malfunctions, a Check Control message is displayed on the Interaction Unit.

Servotronic

Servotronic is a speed-dependent steering support.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering firmer when driving at faster speeds.

The steering force adapts to the drive mode to convey a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response.

Additional information:

MINI Modes, refer to page 131.

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Speed warning

Principle

The speed warning can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

Another speed warning is given when the set speed limit is exceeded again after it has dropped by 3 mph /5 km/h.

Settings

The Speed Limit Warning can be activated or deactivated. In addition, the speed limit for the warning can be configured.

1. To configure the settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Safety and warnings" / "Speed warning".
2. Select the desired setting.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info uses a camera near the interior rearview mirror to detect road signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Speed Limit Info shows the current speed limit on the Interaction Unit and, where applicable, the Head-up display.

Speed Limit Info may also show speed limits that apply to routes that are not signposted if the navigation system has current map data.

General information

Road signs with supplementary signs are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. Depending on the situation, road signs can either be displayed or ignored on the Interaction Unit and, where applicable, the Head-up display.

For Speed Limit Info to function correctly, current map data for the country in which the vehicle is operated must be downloaded.

For information on the current map version and map updates, see Map update in the Navigation system chapter.

Without map data, the system is subject to certain technical limitations. Road signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limits due to entering towns/cities, highway signs, etc., are not displayed. Speed limits with supplementary signs are always displayed.

Additional information:

- Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Display

Speed Limit Info

Icon	Description
SPEED LIMIT 30 50 km/h	Current speed limit. Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
LIMIT	No data on current speed limit available.
LIMIT	Speed Limit Info not available.

Warning signals

Depending on the settings, an acoustic signal sounds if the detected speed limit is exceeded or the speed limit changes. The display also flashes if the detected speed limit is exceeded.

Settings

Individual settings can be configured for Speed Limit Info, e.g., warnings issued if the speed is exceeded or the permissible maximum speed changes.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Speed Limit Assistant".
2. Select the desired setting.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

The sensors may not work properly, e.g., show something that is incorrect.

Additional information:

- Camera, refer to page 36.

Functional limitations

Speed Limit Info may be limited and provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- Road signs are completely or partially concealed by objects, stickers, or paint.
- Road signs do not adhere to applicable standards.
- In areas that are not included in the navigation system map data.
- If navigation system map data is invalid, outdated, or unavailable.
- When roads deviate from the navigation such as due to changes in road layout.

- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When passing buses or trucks with road signs applied to them.
- In case of electronic road signs.
- When road signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.

Speed control systems

Principle

The speed control systems provide assistance when driving, e.g., by limiting the vehicle speed, maintaining distance, or keeping the vehicle in its lane.

These systems are operated using the buttons on the steering wheel.

Information on the speed control systems is shown on the Interaction Unit.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the speed control systems include the following individual systems:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 226.
- Distance Control, refer to page 229.
- Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.
- Assisted Driving Mode Plus, refer to page 243.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the individual systems are enhanced with additional functions.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
I/0	Turn last active speed control system on/off. Stop/resume speed control systems.
MODE	Select the desired speed control system.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: Accept suggested speed manually.
+ / −	Set speed.

Turning on/selecting speed control systems

1. I/0 To activate the speed control system, press the on/off button on the left side of the steering wheel. The Interac-

tion Unit contains a toolbar with available speed control systems.

2. MODE To select a different speed control system while another system is active, repeatedly press the MODE button on the left side of the steering wheel until the desired system is shown on the Interaction Unit toolbar.

The icon for the respective system is shown in white on the toolbar when the system can be used.

The icon for the respective system is shown in green when the system is on.

The icon for the respective system is grayed out if the system has failed or if the functional requirements have not been met.

Icon	Speed control system
	Cruise Control.
	Distance Control.
	Assisted Driving Mode: Cruise Control with Distance Control, Steering Assistance with lane keeping.

Interrupting speed control systems automatically

Depending on the system, speed control systems are interrupted automatically, for instance in the following situations:

- When changing from selector lever position D to P, N, or R.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- "SPORT PLUS": Upon activating the increased driving dynamics setting.
- When braking manually.

Interrupting speed control systems manually

Speed control systems can be stopped manually.

- I/0 Press the on/off button on the left side of the steering wheel.
- MODE Press the MODE button on the left side of the steering wheel.

The speed control system has been stopped.

Continuing speed control systems

I/0 To resume the speed control system, press the on/off button on the left side of the steering wheel.

Switching off speed control systems

Speed control systems can be switched off manually.

I/0 To turn off the speed control system, press and hold the on/off button on the left side of the steering wheel until the indicators go out.

Speed control systems switch off automatically when drive-ready state is switched off.

Adjusting speed values

The speeds for the speed control systems can be adjusted on the steering wheel.

On the left side of the steering wheel, repeatedly press the rocker button up or down until the desired value is set.

- Each time the rocker button is pressed to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker button is pressed past the resistance point, the set speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Displaying the set speed

The speed set for the speed control system is shown below the speedometer on the Interaction Unit. The color indicates the system status.

- The speed value illuminates green when a speed control system is activated.
- The speed value illuminates gray when the system is interrupted.
- If no value is displayed, the system turns off.

On the Speedometer on the Interaction Unit and Head-up display, the set speed is indicated by a small triangle:

- The triangle on the Speedometer illuminates green when a speed control system is on.
- The triangle on the Speedometer illuminates gray when the system is stopped.

Additional information:

Speedometer, refer to page 148.

Notifications

Messages for some functions are shown on the Interaction Unit in addition to the corresponding indicator lights for speed control systems.

1. To configure the notification scope, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Notifications".
2. Select the desired setting.

Cruise Control

Principle

With the Cruise Control, the buttons on the left of the steering wheel can be used to adjust your set speed. The system maintains the set speed. This system automatically accelerates and brakes the vehicle as necessary.

Information on Cruise Control is shown on the Interaction Unit.

Cruise Control can be activated starting from a vehicle speed of 20 mph /30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the Cruise Control settings can change under certain conditions. For instance, the acceleration can change depending on the driving mode.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

WARNING

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- With high traffic volume.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
I/O	Turn last active speed control system on/off. Stop/resume speed control systems.
MODE	Select the desired speed control system.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: Accept suggested speed manually.
+ −	Set speed.

Turning on the Cruise Control

Cruise Control can be switched on as follows:

Vehicles with Distance Control: On the Interaction Unit, switch the Cruise Control mode to Cruise Control without Distance Control.

In vehicles without Distance Control: Turn on the Cruise Control with the buttons on the steering wheel.

1. I/O To turn on Cruise Control, press the on/off button on the left side of the steering wheel.
2. MODE If necessary, repeatedly press the MODE button on the left side of the steering wheel until Cruise Control is selected.

Cruise Control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

Indicator lights on the Interaction Unit illuminate. The set speed is shown below the speedometer on the Interaction Unit.

The driving mode changes or Dynamic Stability Control activates when Cruise Control is switched on.

Additional information:

Distance Control, refer to page 229.

Turning the speed control system off/interrupting

The speed control system can be turned off or canceled automatically or manually.

Additional information:

Speed control systems, refer to page 224.

Adjusting the speed

Store/maintain speed

The speed can be maintained and stored using the buttons on the steering wheel.

Press the rocker button on the left side of the steering wheel up or down once while the system is stopped.

When Cruise Control is switched on, the current speed is maintained and saved as the desired speed.

The saved speed is shown on the speedometer on the Interaction Unit.

If the Speed Limit Assistant is off, the current vehicle speed can be saved with the press of a button:

Press the SET button on the left side of the steering wheel.

Changing the speed

The speed can be changed with the buttons on the steering wheel.

On the left side of the steering wheel, repeatedly press the rocker button up or down until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.

Press rocker button to resistance point and hold: The vehicle accelerates or decelerates without the accelerator pedal being pressed.

After the rocker button is released, the vehicle maintains the final speed achieved. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing Cruise Control

At the stored speed

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

An interrupted Cruise Control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

To resume Cruise Control when this system has stopped, press the on/off button on the left side of the steering wheel.

Cruise Control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

At the current speed

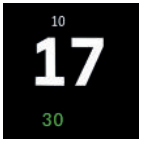
To continue using the Cruise Control at the current speed, press the rocker button up or down on the left side of the steering wheel.

Speed Limit Assistant: At the suggested speed

To apply the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Assistant to the Cruise Control, press the SET button on the left of the steering wheel.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Displaying the set speed



The speed set for the speed control system is shown below the speedometer on the Interaction Unit. The color indicates the system status.

- The speed value illuminates green when a speed control system is activated.
- The speed value illuminates gray when the system is interrupted.
- If no value is displayed, the system turns off.

Indicator light

The status of Cruise Control is also shown by the indicator light on the Interaction Unit. The Cruise Control indicator light illuminates green when the system is activated.

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on vehicle equipment, some speed control system information can also be displayed on the Head-up display.

System limits

Depending on the drive mode or drive power, the vehicle may exceed or undershoot the set speed in some situations, e.g., when driving on downhill or uphill gradients.

Do not use Cruise Control when tow-starting/towing.

Distance Control

Principle

With the Distance Control, a distance to a vehicle driving ahead can be adjusted in addition to the Cruise Control.

The distance can be adjusted at several levels. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

The system maintains the set speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of the vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

If the preceding vehicle brakes to a stop then drives off again shortly afterward, Distance Control is capable of detecting this depending on vehicle equipment and ambient conditions.

Otherwise, drive off independently, e.g., by pressing the accelerator pedal or by pushing the speed adjustment button on the steering wheel.

Distance Control is operated using the buttons on the left of the steering wheel. The distance to preceding vehicles is adjusted on the Interaction Unit.

Information on Distance Control is shown on the Interaction Unit.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property

damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Risk of accident is greater when there is a high speed differential to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When approaching a slowly moving vehicle at speed.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When approaching stationary vehicles at speed.

There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
I/0	Turn last active speed control system on/off. Stop/resume speed control systems.
MODE	Select the desired speed control system.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: Accept suggested speed manually.
+ −	Set speed.

Sensors

Distance Control is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Front ultrasonic sensors.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, via the front, side radar sensors.
- Driver Attention Camera, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Additional information:

- Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.
- Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 215.

Application range

Distance Control is best when used on well-maintained roads.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and depends, for example, on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, higher desired speeds can also be selected after switching to Cruise Control without Distance Control.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Do not use Cruise Control and Distance Control when tow-starting/towing.

Turning on Cruise Control with Distance Control

1.

To turn on Cruise Control with Distance Control, press the on/off button on the left side of the steering wheel.
2.

If necessary, press the MODE button on the left side of the steering wheel repeatedly until Distance Control is selected.

Cruise Control with Distance Control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

The selected distance to a vehicle driving ahead is maintained.

Indicator lights on the Interaction Unit illuminate. The set speed is shown below the speedometer on the Interaction Unit.

The driving mode changes or Dynamic Stability Control activates when Distance Control is switched on.

Adjusting the speed

The speed can be set with the buttons on the steering wheel.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 226.

Interrupting Cruise Control with Distance Control automatically

Cruise Control with Distance Control is interrupted automatically in the following situations, for example:

- When braking manually.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- "SPORT PLUS": When the setting for enhanced driving dynamics is enabled.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- When the driver's seat belt and driver's door are opened.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by contamination or heavy precipitation.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Turning the speed control system off/interrupting

The speed control system can be turned off or canceled automatically or manually.

Additional information:

Speed control systems, refer to page 224.

Continuing Cruise Control while driving

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

An interrupted Cruise Control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

Additional information:

Cruise Control, refer to page 226.

Continuing Cruise Control while vehicle is stationary

If the Cruise Control is stopped, the driver may need to confirm their intention to drive off in certain situations.

The views on the Interaction Unit show the following:

The speed set for the speed control system is shown in gray below the speedometer.

The Distance Control indicator light illuminates green.

Cruise Control can be continued as follows:

- Pressing the accelerator pedal.
- Press the rocker button on the left side of the steering wheel.
-

Press the SET button on the left side of the steering wheel.

Distance

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, deceleration can be late. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Be aware of the surrounding traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Adjusting the distance

1. To adjust the distance, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Distance Control" / "Distance".
2. Select the desired setting.

Automatic adaptation of the distance

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Distance Control can be configured to automatically adjust the distance to the preceding vehicle within the set distance. This system analyzes the traffic situation and ambient conditions.

If automatic adjustment is enabled, the distance is adjusted in the following situations, for example:

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

- With poor visibility, the distance is slightly increased.
- With heavy traffic, the distance is slightly decreased.

To have the distance adjusted automatically, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Distance Control" / "Situational distance control".

Changing between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

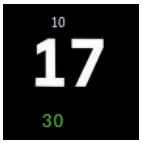
Changing over the Cruise Control mode

To switch between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Distance Control" / "Switch to Cruise Control".

The setting is reset when the vehicle is parked.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Displaying the set speed



The speed set for the speed control system is shown below the speedometer on the Interaction Unit. The color indicates the system status.

- The speed value illuminates green when a speed control system is activated.
- The speed value illuminates gray when the system is interrupted.
- If no value is displayed, the system turns off.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Icon	Description
	Indicator light illuminates white: No Distance Control because accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	Indicator light illuminates green: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle has been detected ahead of you. Indicator light flashes green: Preceding vehicle has driven off.
	Indicator light flashes gray: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Assisted View

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, in Assisted View, Distance Control information is shown in the central display area on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 153.

Displays in the Head-up display

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, some speed control system information can also be displayed on the Head-up display.

System limits

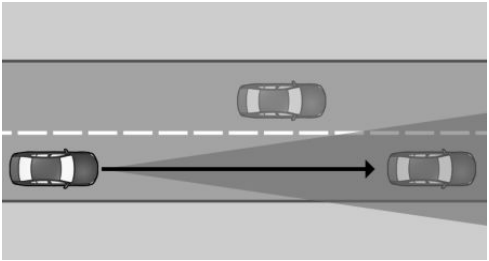
System limits of the sensors

Distance Control is subject to the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

- Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.
- Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 215.

Detection range



The vehicle sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The sensor detection capability and automatic braking power are limited.

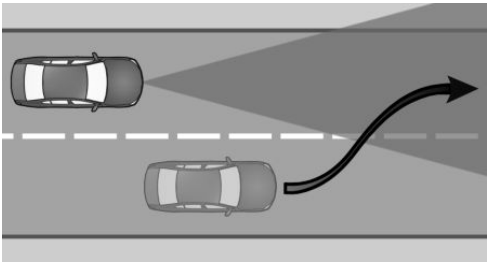
For instance, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

Distance Control does not decelerate in the following situations:

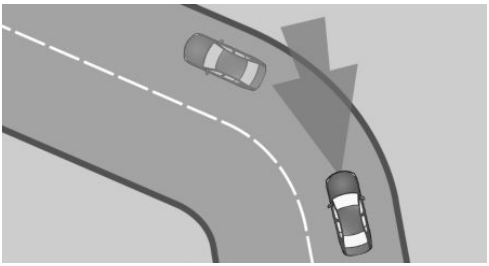
- For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- For cross traffic.
- For oncoming traffic.

Merging vehicles



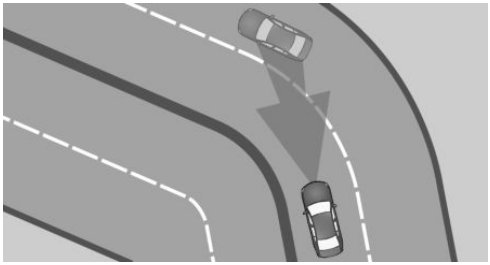
Distance Control may not be able automatically restore your chosen distance if a preceding vehicle suddenly cuts into your lane. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle has been detected ahead of you, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and making an evasive maneuver, if needed.

Cornering



When Distance Control is on, if your set speed is too high for a bend, your vehicle will be slowed slightly in the bend. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

Distance Control has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate for it by briefly accelerating. Once the accelerator pedal is released, the system reactivates and controls the speed independently.

Driving off

Your vehicle cannot drive off automatically using Distance Control in the following situations, for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.
- With a heavy trailer.

In these cases, press on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

With unfavorable weather or lighting conditions, Distance Control may be limited as follows:

- Worse vehicle detection.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver.

Drive power

Depending on the drive mode or drive power, the vehicle may exceed or undershoot the set speed in some situations, e.g., when driving on downhill or uphill gradients.

Assisted Driving Mode

Principle

Assisted Driving Mode enhances Distance Control with Steering Assistance and lane keeping. The system assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. This system assists the driver by moving the steering when necessary, e.g., when cornering.

Assisted Driving Mode is operated using the buttons on the steering wheel.

Depending on vehicle speed, Assisted Driving Mode orients itself using the lane boundaries or preceding vehicles.

Sensors in the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the Driver Attention Camera on the instrument panel monitors whether the driver is paying attention.

System information is shown on the Interaction Unit displays and indicated by the steering wheel LEDs.

If a lane boundary is crossed, the system issues a warning by vibrating the steering wheel. The steering wheel vibration intensity can be adjusted.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

The Cruise Control and Distance Control alerts also apply.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 226.
- Distance Control, refer to page 229.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
I/O	Turn last active speed control system on/off. Stop/resume speed control systems.
MODE	Select the desired speed control system.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: Accept suggested speed manually.
+ −	Set speed.

Sensors

Assisted Driving Mode is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, via the front, side radar sensors.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, via the rear, side radar sensors.
- The sensors in the steering wheel.
- Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the Driver Attention Camera on the instrument panel.

Additional information:

- Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.
- Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 215.

Functional requirements

To use Assisted Driving Mode, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Depending on vehicle equipment, the speed must be below 130 mph/210 km/h or 110 mph/180 km/h.
- The lane is sufficiently wide.
- Hands are on the steering wheel rim.
- The bend radius is sufficiently large.
- The vehicle is driving in the center of the lane.
- The sensor system calibration process is complete.
- Distance Control is turned on.
- The seat belt on the driver's side is fastened.
- Forward Collision Mitigation is activated.

- Side Collision Protection must be activated, depending on vehicle equipment.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, use the Interaction Unit to configure the settings and specify whether the vehicle is towing a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 328.

Switching on Assisted Driving Mode

1.

To turn on Assisted Driving Mode, press the on/off button on the left side of the steering wheel.
2.

If necessary, repeatedly press the MODE button on the left side of the steering wheel until Assisted Driving Mode is selected.

System activates automatically as soon as all function conditions are fulfilled.

The status of Assisted Driving Mode is shown on the Interaction Unit.

The Assisted Driving Mode indicator light illuminates gray when the system is ready and not actively steering.

The Assisted Driving Mode indicator light illuminates green when the system is activated.

When this system is on, Forward Collision Mitigation and, depending on vehicle equipment, Side Collision Protection activate.

Stopping Assisted Driving Mode automatically

Assisted Driving Mode automatically interrupts steering support in the following situations, for example:

- Depending on vehicle equipment: At speeds greater than 130 mph /210 km/h or 110 mph /180 km/h.
- After releasing the steering wheel.
- With a strong steering intervention.
- When leaving own lane.
- When the turn signal is switched on or, depending on the vehicle equipment, when the driver turns the steering wheel while the turn signal is switched on.
- Lane is too narrow.
- If a lane boundary is not detected and there is no vehicle driving in front.
- The Cruise Control with Distance Control is interrupted.
- The seat belt on the driver's side is unfastened.

The Assisted Driving Mode indicator light illuminates gray when the system is ready and not actively steering.

After being stopped, Assisted Driving Mode goes into standby and reactivates when all functional requirements have been met.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Icon	Description
	Indicator light illuminates gray: The system is ready.
	Indicator light illuminates green: The system is active. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane.
	Warning light flashes yellow and steering wheel vibrates: A lane boundary has been crossed inadvertently.
	Warning light illuminates yellow and acoustic signal sounds: System interruption is imminent.
	Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: The system is switched off or will be interrupted very soon.
	Warning light illuminates yellow: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel. The system is still active. Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
	Warning light illuminates red, acoustic signal sounds: The driver's hands are not currently gripping the steering wheel or, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the driver is not looking at the surrounding traffic. System interruption is imminent. The system reduces the speed to a standstill if applicable. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. Immediately grasp the steering wheel with your hands and pay attention to the surrounding traffic.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, a Check Control message is displayed on the instrument panel if the Driver Attention Camera detects that the driver is inattentive.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, in Assisted View, Assisted Driving Mode information is shown in the central display area on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 153.

Displays on the steering wheel

Similar to the displays for Assisted Driving Mode on the Interaction Unit, the two LEDs above the keypads on the steering wheel illuminate.

1. To activate/deactivate the steering wheel displays, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Feedback via steering wheel" / "Light elements".
2. Select the desired setting.

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on vehicle equipment, Assisted Driving Mode information can also be shown on the Head-up display.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. To adjust the steering wheel vibration intensity, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Feedback via steering wheel" / "Vibration intensity".
2. Select the desired setting.

This setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

System limits

General information

Assisted Driving Mode cannot be activated or used meaningfully in certain situations, e.g., when towing a trailer.

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

The Cruise Control and Distance Control alerts also apply.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 226.
- Distance Control, refer to page 229.

System limits of the sensors

Assisted Driving Mode is subject to the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 36.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 37.
- Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 215.

Hands on the steering wheel

The sensors cannot detect hand-steering wheel contact in the following situations:

- Driving with gloves.
- Protective covers on the steering wheel.

Weather

With unfavorable weather or lighting conditions, Assisted Driving Mode may be limited as follows:

- Worse detection of vehicles and lane boundaries.
- Short-term interruptions in case of already detected vehicles and lane boundaries.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver.

Lane Change Assistant

Principle

The Lane Change Assistant also performs slight steering interventions to assist the driver when changing lanes on multilane roads.

The Lane Change Assistant is activated/deactivated from the Interaction Unit and operated with the turn signal lever.

System information is shown on the Interaction Unit.

The Lane Change Assistant uses the Assisted Driving Mode sensors.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Federal, state or local laws differ and the use of this function may be prohibited or limited. Before use, check federal, state and local laws.

The Assisted Driving Mode alerts also apply.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

Functional requirements

To use the Lane Change Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The functional requirements for Assisted Driving Mode have been met.
- Driving on a highway-like road without pedestrians or cyclists. The road is also structurally separated from oncoming traffic, e.g., guard rails.
- A vehicle has been detected at a sufficient distance behind your own vehicle since beginning the drive.
- Crossable lane boundaries are detected.
- Vehicle speed is max. approx. 110 mph/180 km/h.
- The minimum speed is country-specific.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, use the Interaction Unit to configure the settings and specify whether the vehicle is towing a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

Additional information:

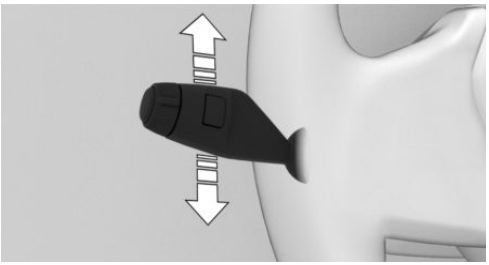
- Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.
- Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 328.

Activating/deactivating the Lane Change Assistant

To activate/deactivate the Lane Change Assistant, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Lane Change Assistant" / "Lane Change Assistant".

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits changing lanes.
2. To change lanes with Lane Change Assistant, press the turn signal lever in the desired direction to the resistance point. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the turn signal lever can also be pressed beyond the resistance point.



After a short time, Lane Change Assistant initiates a lane change.

After the lane change, the system helps keep the vehicle in the new lane.

The lane change can be canceled by steering movement into the opposite direction or by operating the turn signal in the opposite direction.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Icon	Description
	Steering wheel icon and lane change arrow icon are green: The system performs a lane change in the arrow direction.
	Steering wheel icon is green and line for lane boundary on respective side is gray: The system detected the lane change request. Lane change not currently possible.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, in Assisted View, Lane Change Assistant information is shown in the central display area on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 153.

System limits

The Lane Change Assistant is subject to the system limits of Assisted Driving Mode.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

Lane change with active guidance

Principle

The Lane Change Assistant with Active Guidance helps the driver when it is necessary to change lanes in order to reach a destination. A corresponding prompt appears on the Interaction Unit. In addition, a slight jerk can be felt on the steering wheel.

This function is turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

When route guidance is active, the Lane Change function uses the Assisted Driving Mode sensors.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

The Cruise Control, Distance Control, and Assisted Driving alerts also apply.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 226.
- Distance Control, refer to page 229.
- Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

Functional requirements

To change lanes when route guidance is on, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Cruise Control and Distance Control are turned on.
- Driving on a highway or highway-like road.
- A situation-dependent minimum speed has been reached.
- The system detects a sufficiently large gap in traffic in the adjacent lane.
- A crossable lane boundary on the side of the desired lane change is detected.
- Destination guidance is active on the navigation system.

  The function is not available when using navigation software via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
- The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.
- The Driver Attention Camera on the instrument panel detects whether the driver is paying attention to surrounding traffic.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, use the Interaction Unit to configure the settings and specify whether the vehicle is towing a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 328.

Activating/deactivating the lane change function with active route guidance

To activate/deactivate the lane change function with active route guidance, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Lane Guiding with Navigation" / "Lane Guiding with Navigation".

Activating/deactivating the steering wheel jerk

To enable/disable the steering wheel jerk for the lane change function, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Lane Guiding with Navigation" / "Steering wheel impulse".

Changing lanes

A corresponding prompt appears on the Interaction Unit when changing lanes is nec-

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

essary to reach a destination. In addition, a slight jerk can be felt on the steering wheel.

To change lanes, follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

1. The system detects a suitable gap in the flow of traffic in the adjacent lane. An icon with a green checkmark appears on the Interaction Unit. The system prepares for the lane change.
2. When a suitable gap is detected, the speed is adapted so that the vehicle remains level with the opening.
3. A Check Control message indicates a lane change suggestion.
4. When the traffic permits changing lanes, the driver can steer the vehicle into an adjacent lane.

   If your vehicle is equipped with the Lane Change Assistant, the Lane Change Assistant can be started by operating the turn signal after the Check Control message appears.
5. If necessary, the system automatically starts additional lane changes.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Icon	Function
	Indicates a necessary lane change. The icon varies depending on the traffic situation.
	A green checkmark on the icon indicates that the function is active. A red cross on the icon indicates that the system cannot assist with the lane change.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, in Assisted View, the traffic situation is shown in the central display area on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 153.

System limits

The Lane Change Assistant with Active Guidance is subject to the system limits of the following systems:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 226.
- Distance Control, refer to page 229.
- Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.
- Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 215.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus

Principle

Assisted Driving Mode Plus provides assistance with guiding the vehicle in traffic jams on select highways.

This system increases driving comfort in applicable driving situations.

Sensors in the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Assisted Driving Mode Plus is turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

System information is shown on the Interaction Unit displays and indicated by the steering wheel LEDs.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independ-

ently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

This system is only intended for use on roads with structural separation from oncoming traffic, e.g., highways. Because of the system limits, the system can also remain active on roads without structural separations and may not react as expected. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Deactivate the system if it is enabled on roads without structural separations.

Federal, state or local laws differ and the use of this function may be prohibited or limited. Before use, check federal, state and local laws.

The Assisted Driving Mode alerts also apply.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

Overview

Sensors

Assisted Driving Mode Plus is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Side radar sensors, front.
- Side radar sensors, rear.
- The sensors in the steering wheel.
- Driver Attention Camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.

Functional requirements

To use Assisted Driving Mode Plus, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Assisted Driving Mode Plus must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.
- The functional requirements for Assisted Driving Mode have been met.

  Assisted Driving Mode is operational and the LED displays on the steering wheel are activated.
- Driving on a highway-like road without pedestrians or cyclists. The road is also structurally separated from oncoming traffic, e.g., guard rails.
- Lane boundaries are detected.
- The lane is sufficiently wide.
- The bend radius is sufficiently large.
- The navigation system must clearly identify the road and vehicle position.
- This function must be available on the road on which the vehicle is driving.
- Do not allow antennas on the roof to become covered, e.g., by roof loads or snow.
- The Driver Attention Camera on the instrument panel detects whether the driver is paying attention to surrounding traffic.
- A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.
- Vehicle speed must be less than approx. 40 mph/60 km/h.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, use the Interaction Unit to configure the settings and specify whether the vehicle is towing a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

Additional information:

- Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.
- Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 328.

Activating/deactivating Assisted Driving Mode Plus

To activate/deactivate Assisted Driving Mode Plus, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Assisted Driving Plus" / "Assisted Driving Plus".

Assisted Driving Mode Plus is automatically offered when Assisted Driving Mode is active and all functional requirements for Assisted Driving Mode Plus have been met.

To activate this function, remove your hands from the steering wheel. Remain ready to steer and brake at all times.

Two green LED lights are illuminated on the steering wheel.

ASSIST PLUS The Assisted Driving Mode Plus indicator light on the Interaction Unit illuminates green.

The system begins to assist the driver with vehicle control.

When the system is switched on, the following functions are enabled:

- Forward Collision Mitigation.
- Side Collision Protection.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Icon	Description
ASSIST PLUS	Indicator light green: System is active.
ASSIST PLUS READY	Indicator light is white: System can be used.

Displays on the steering wheel

The two LEDs above the keypads on the steering wheel illuminate depending on the situation.

- The LEDs on the steering wheel illuminate green when Assisted Driving Mode Plus is active.
- The LEDs on the steering wheel illuminate yellow when the system is interrupted.

  Grab the steering wheel with your hands.
- The LEDs on the steering wheel illuminate red when the system is deactivated.

  Grab the steering wheel immediately with your hands.

Additional information:

Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.

Displays in the Head-up display

Depending on vehicle equipment, Assisted Driving Mode Plus information can also be shown on the Head-up display.

System limits

Assisted Driving Mode Plus is subject to the system limits of the following systems:

- Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.
- Driver Attention Camera, refer to page 215.
- Vehicle sensors, refer to page 36.

Speed Limit Assistant

Principle

Speed Limit Assistant supports driving at the speed limit. You can have speeds suggested by the Speed Limit Assistant adopted by your vehicle's speed control systems.

The Speed Limit Assistant is activated/deactivated from the Interaction Unit and operated with the steering wheel buttons.

Suggested speeds can be adjusted by entering tolerances.

System information is shown on the Interaction Unit.

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems:

- Cruise Control.
- Distance Control.
- Assisted Driving Mode.
- Assisted Driving Mode Plus.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be operational.

Depending on the equipment, destination system and national-market version, the value can be applied automatically.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
SET	Accept suggested speed manually.
	Set speed, refer to page 224.

Activating/deactivating the Speed Limit Assistant

1. To configure the settings for Speed Limit Assistant, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Speed Limit Assistant".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Adjust automatically": Depending on the equipment, detected speed limits are applied automatically.
   - "Adjust manually": Detected speed limits can be applied manually.

- "Show current limit": Current speed limits are shown on the Interaction Unit without being applied.
- "Off": Depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info and Speed Limit Assistant will be turned off.

  If necessary, other anticipatory comfort functions will be turned off.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Info, refer to page 222.

Views on the Interaction Unit

A appears on the Interaction Unit when the Speed Limit Assistant and a speed control system activate.

Icon	Function
SPEED LIMIT 30	Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.
50 km/h	Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
SET	Indicator light illuminates green: The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. After it has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

The speedometer on the Interaction Unit or Head-up display shows the set speed and the suggested speed with small triangles:

- The triangle on the Speedometer illuminates green when a speed control system is on.
- The triangle on the Speedometer illuminates gray when the system is stopped.
- A green/gray triangle on the Speedometer indicates a speed suggested by Speed Limit Assistant, which can be adopted using the SET button on the left side of the steering wheel.

Additional information:

Speedometer, refer to page 148.

Automatic adoption

"Adjust automatically": Distance Control automatically adopts any detected speed limits when driving on roads with barriers separating traffic in opposing directions.

It may not be possible to use this function when driving with a trailer.

SET After automatic adoption, the SET button on the left side of the steering wheel can be pressed to switch back to the last value set for desired speed. The SET button can only be used to switch back to a set speed for a limited time after automatic adoption and in suitable driving situations.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied manually to the active speed control system.

SET When the SET icon is displayed, press the SET button on the left side of the steering wheel.

Speed adjustment

Principle

Speed Limit Assistant can be configured to adopt the speed limit 1:1 or with a tolerance.

A speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph /60 km/h can be set up.

The additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph /60 km/h can be activated or deactivated.

Setting the speed adjustment

1. To adjust the speed for Speed Limit Assistant, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Speed Limit Assistant".
2. Select the desired setting:
   - "Adjust speed limits": Set a tolerance for a speed adjustment. This tolerance applies to all speed limits.
   - "2nd adjustment up to ": Activate or deactivate additional speed adjustment.
   - "Adjust speed limits": First activate additional speed adjustment, then set a tolerance for speed limits up to 40 mph /60 km/h.

System limits

Speed Limit Assistant is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Note the system limits for Speed Limit Info.

Speed limits cannot be applied automatically when using Cruise Control without Distance Control.

If your vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, the speeds to be adopted are limited to the trailer towing speed set on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

- System limits of Speed Limit Info, refer to page 223.
- System limits of the sensors, refer to page 36.
- Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 328.

Adapting the speed to the route

Principle

The Cruise Control can be configured to automatically adjust the vehicle speed to the route when Distance Control is active.

For instance, the speed will be reduced in the following situations as necessary:

- Before making turns.
- Before a roundabout.
- Before a curve.
- In front of an exit ramp on highways or highway-like roads.

This function is operated using the Interaction Unit.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steer-

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

ing and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

The Cruise Control, Distance Control, Assisted Driving Mode, and Speed Limit Assistant alerts also apply.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 226.
- Distance Control, refer to page 229.
- Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.
- Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 246.

Functional requirements

To adapt the vehicle speed to the route, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Cruise Control and Distance Control are turned on.
- Driving on a highway or highway-like road.
- Guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- The function must be available in the country in which the vehicle is driven.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, use the Interaction Unit to configure the settings and specify whether the vehicle is towing a trailer or rear carrier, respectively.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 328.

Adapting speed automatically to route

To activate/deactivate automatic speed adjustment, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Route control" / "Adjust speed automatically".

Adjusting the cornering speed

The cornering speed can be adjusted depending on national-market version.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Driving" / "Route control" / "Cornering speed".
2. Select the desired setting.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, in Assisted View, Route-Ahead Assistant information is shown in the central display area on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Assisted View, refer to page 153.

System limits

Depending on national-market version or the country in which the vehicle is currently being driven, the Route-Ahead Assistant may not be available.

The system does not react or reacts to a limited extent to the route ahead in the following situations:

- If the vehicle location cannot be clearly determined by the navigation system.
- The use of navigation software via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto may lead to functional limitations, for instance deviations with navigation instructions.
- On wintry roads.

Additionally, the limits for Cruise Control, Distance Control, Assisted Driving, and Speed Limit Assistant systems apply.

Additional information:

- Cruise Control, refer to page 226.
- Distance Control, refer to page 229.

- Assisted Driving Mode, refer to page 235.
- Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 246.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Parking

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Parking assistance systems

Principle

With the Park Distance Control display and various camera views, the parking assistance systems help to park, maneuver, and reverse the vehicle. Parking assistance systems are operated using the Park Assist key or via the Parking menu.

When parking or reversing, the following individual systems provide active support with assistance functions and sensors:

- Park Distance Control, refer to page 264.
- Active Park Distance Control, refer to page 267.
- Drive-Off Monitoring, refer to page 268.
- Automatic Park Assistant, refer to page 270.
- Maneuver Assistant, refer to page 278.
- Remote Control Parking, refer to page 282.
- Back Up Assistant, refer to page 276.
- Trailer Assistant, refer to page 329.

Various camera views and camera perspectives provide excellent visibility of the vehicle surroundings while parking and maneuvering. Depending on vehicle equipment, different camera views are available.

The following camera views can be used with the basic version:

- Rear View Camera, refer to page 256.
- Trailer hitch view, refer to page 259.
- Panorama view, rear, refer to page 260.

Depending on vehicle equipment, additional camera views can be used with parking view:

- Semi-automatic camera perspective, refer to page 257.
- Automatic camera perspective, refer to page 257.
- Side view, refer to page 259.
- 3D view, refer to page 259.
- Tunnel car wash view, refer to page 260.
- Panorama view, front, refer to page 260.
- Activating panorama view using activation points, refer to page 261.
- Door opening angle, refer to page 262.
- Remote 3D View, refer to page 263.

The individual camera-based systems are operated by selecting camera views on the Interaction Unit. The camera views can be turned on/off by selecting the corresponding icon. Additional views with parking assistance lines or obstacle markings can be shown.

Safety information

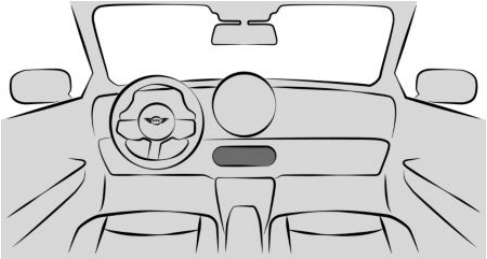
WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There

is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



The Park Assist key is located on the switch cluster.

Sensors

The parking assistance systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.
- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.

Calling up Park menu

Some parking assistance systems can be set individually in the Park menu.

1. To bring up the Parking menu, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking".
2. Select the desired settings.

Display

Turning display on/off

Turning on view with reverse gear

When drive-ready state is on, the parking assistance systems display is automatically turned on when you engage selector lever position R.

Turning on view with the Park Assist key

To turn on the parking assistance system display, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

Turning on views on the Interaction Unit

To turn on the parking assistance systems display, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Parking".

Turning off view automatically

The parking assistance systems view switches off automatically when driving forwards or if a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Indicator on steering wheel

The status of the parking assistance system currently in use is indicated as follows by

the LEDs above the keypads on the steering wheel:

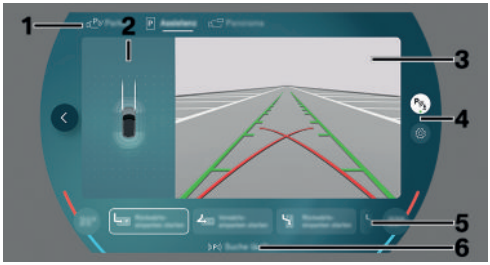
- LEDs illuminate green: A driving maneuver is being performed.
- LEDs flash green: The driving maneuver is complete and the driver must take control of the vehicle.
- LEDs slowly flash green: A driving maneuver is ready but not currently being performed. The system is waiting for driver interaction. Corresponding prompts appear on the Interaction Unit.
- LEDs flash red: A driving maneuver has been stopped or canceled, or there is an error. Driver must pay closer attention.

Views on the Interaction Unit

General information

The parking assistance system view on the Interaction Unit varies depending on vehicle equipment and the active parking assistance system.

Assistance view



1 Selecting a camera view
2 Vehicle top view
3 Camera image
4 Settings
5 Toolbar, bottom
6 Status of parking assistance systems

Parking view

1 Selecting a camera view
2 Selection window
3 Automatic camera perspective
4 Semi-automatic camera perspective
5 Side view
6 Camera image
7 Settings
8 Toolbar, bottom
9 Status of parking assistance systems

Camera image

Depending on vehicle equipment, one or more cameras record the area around the vehicle from different selectable perspectives.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

Depending on the national-market version, either the automatic or the semi-automatic camera perspective is displayed.

Selecting a camera view

Depending on vehicle equipment, various camera views can be selected at the top of the Interaction Unit:

- "Parking"
  Depending on vehicle equipment, camera views or the Park Distance Control view are displayed.
- "Assistance"

A stylized top view of the vehicle is displayed.

- "Panorama"

  The cross traffic view is displayed.
- "3D"

  A three-dimensional view of the vehicle is displayed.
- "Trailer coupling view"

  The view shows the zoom onto the trailer hitch.
- "Car wash"

  To make it easier to drive into a car wash, your own lane is shown.

Settings

Various settings are provided on the right side of the Interaction Unit:

- Depending on national-market version, the acoustic warning for Park Distance Control can be turned on/off.
- Settings can be configured in the Parking menu.

Toolbar, bottom

Parking Assistant functions are displayed on the bottom toolbar:

- Available parking methods of the Automatic Park Assistant.
- Functions of the Back Up Assistant.
- Functions of the Maneuver Assistant.
- Functions of the Trailer Assistant.
- Additional information in case of malfunction.

Status of parking assistance systems

The status of the parking assistance systems is indicated with icons as follows:

- At the bottom of the Interaction Unit.

  Supplementary text is displayed in addition to the icon.
- In the trip data area.
- On the Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

The following parking assistance systems are displayed:

- Automatic Park Assistant.
- Maneuver Assistant.
- Back Up Assistant.
- Trailer Assistant.

Icon	Meaning
	No search for parking assistance system offers. No other parking assistance systems available. Parking assistance systems have failed.
	Searching for parking assistance system offers is active.
	White: An available driving maneuver is selected but is not being performed. Functional requirements have not been met or the function transfer is complete. Green: A parking assistance system is on. Functions are controlled depending on the system activated.
	The Maneuver Assistant records the driving maneuver to be saved.

Additional displays

General information

Additional views can be shown in the camera image for the parking assistance sys-

tems display, e.g., parking aid lines. This makes parking and maneuvering easier.

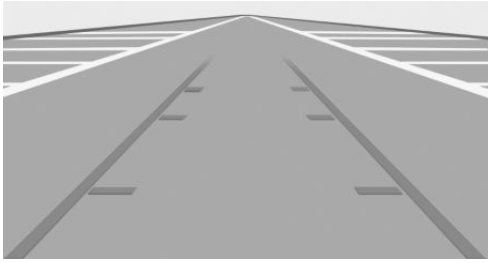
Several additional displays can be active at the same time.

Turning additional displays on/off

1. To turn additional displays in the camera view on/off, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking".
2. Select the desired setting.

Parking aid lines

Pathway lines

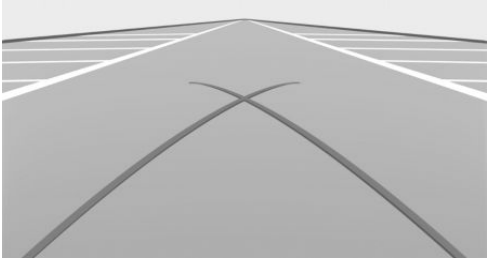


The pathway lines help to estimate the required space when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Depending on the gear position engaged, the Interaction Unit's camera view provides pathway lines in front of or behind the vehicle.

The pathway lines are continuously adjusted to the steering movements depending on the steering-wheel angle.

Turning circle lines



The Interaction Unit's camera view includes turning circle lines, or parking aid lines, that show the path with the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.

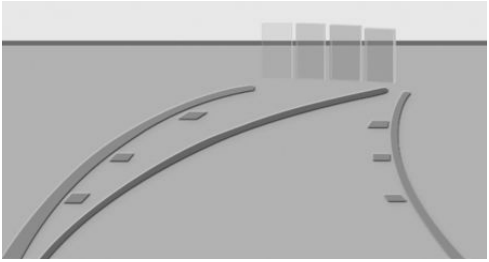
Only one turning circle line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

Using parking aid lines

1. To use the parking aid lines for a driving maneuver, position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line leads into the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



The sensors detect obstacles when parking.

Obstacles detected by Park Distance Control are shown and marked in the camera view on the Interaction Unit.

Colored gradients for the obstacle markings in green, yellow and red indicate the distances.

Functional limitations

The parking assistance systems can only be used to a limited extent in the following situations:

- With a door open.
- With open cargo area.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.

Areas with gray hatching with an icon in the camera image identify areas that are currently not shown such as an open door.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Parking assistance systems may be restricted by the system limits of the sensors.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 36.

Field of view

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

The sensors may not detect very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects, e.g., wall ledges.

Objects shown on the Interaction Unit may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects shown on the Interaction Unit.

The camera's detection range can be limited by protruding cargo, a rear carrier, or a trailer.

Malfunction

A camera failure is indicated on the Interaction Unit.

The malfunctioning camera's detection range is shaded.

Rear View Camera

Principle

The Rear View Camera helps when reverse parking and maneuvering. The area behind the vehicle is shown in the camera view on the Interaction Unit. The Rear View Camera turns on when reversing and can be operated via the Interaction Unit or Park Assist key.

Additional information can be displayed on the camera view, e.g., parking assistance lines and obstacle markings.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Functional requirements

To use the Rear View Camera, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The cargo area is fully closed.
- The Rear View Camera area is clean and clear.

Turning the Rear View Camera on/off

Turning the camera view on automatically

The Rear View Camera is automatically turned on if selector lever position R is engaged while drive-ready state is on.

Turning the camera view off automatically

The Rear View Camera turns off automatically when driving forward or when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Turning the camera view on/off manually

1. To manually turn on the Rear View Camera, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

   The Rear View Camera view is switched on.

   Depending on vehicle equipment: The icon for automatic camera perspective is automatically selected in the selection window.

To exit Rear View Camera view, select another camera view in the selection window or press the Park Assist key again.

Deactivated Rear View Camera

When the Rear View Camera is deactivated, for instance when the cargo area is open, the camera image is displayed with gray shading.

Semi-automatic camera perspective

Principle

Depending on the parking direction and engaged selector lever position, the semi-automatic camera perspective shows a fixed camera perspective with the areas in front of or behind the vehicle.

The camera perspective can be turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Turning the semi-automatic camera perspective on/off

1. To turn on semi-automatic camera perspective, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
2. Select the semi-automatic camera perspective icon in the selection window.

To exit the fixed camera view, select another camera view in the selection window.

Automatic camera perspective

Principle

The automatic camera perspective shows a steering-dependent view in the respective

driving direction. This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view changes to a fixed display of the area in front of or behind the bumper, or switches to side Park Distance Control as necessary.

The side Park Distance Control is automatically displayed when the automatic camera perspective is turned on. The function shows obstacles located next to the vehicle.

The camera perspective can be turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Turning the automatic camera perspective on/off

Turning the camera view on/off automatically

When the parking assistance systems' display is turned on, automatic camera perspective is selected automatically.

The icon for automatic camera perspective is automatically selected in the selection window.

To exit the steering-dependent camera view, select another camera view in the selection window.

When reverse gear is engaged, the automatic camera perspective is, if necessary, exited and the system uses a semi-automatic camera perspective to the rear. If necessary, manually turn on the automatic camera perspective when reverse gear is engaged. The automatic camera perspective will then be maintained for the current parking operation.

Turning the camera view on/off manually

1. To turn on automatic camera perspective manually, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

2. The icon for automatic camera perspective is automatically selected in the selection window.

To exit the steering-dependent camera view, select another camera view in the selection window or press the Park Assist key again.

Side Park Distance Control view

To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

Colored obstacle markings warn the driver when obstacles have been detected.

If no obstacle markings are displayed, no obstacles have been detected.

Side Park Distance Control limits

The Lateral Parking Aid only displays stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors while passing them.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. For this reason, at standstill, the marks are not shown anymore

in the display after a certain time. The area next to the vehicle must be newly captured.

Side view

Principle

Side view shows the vehicle's side surroundings, making it easier to position the vehicle at the curb or with other obstacles on the side.

The camera view looks from the rear to the front and, if there is a hazard, focuses automatically on potential obstacles.

Side view can be turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Turning the side view on/off

The selection window lets you choose the side view for the left or right side of the vehicle.

1. To turn on side view, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
2. Select the camera icon for the desired vehicle side in the selection window.

To exit the side view, select another camera view in the selection window.

3D view

Principle

With 3D view, a circle is displayed around the vehicle top view in the selection window.

Fixed perspectives can be selected directly on the circular path in the selection window, or by swiping the vehicle in the middle of the camera image.

The current perspective is marked with a camera icon on the circular path.

3D view can be turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Turning the 3D view on/off

1. To turn on 3D view, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
2. "3D"

To exit 3D view, select another camera view from the selection at the top.

Trailer hitch view

Principle

To make it easier to attach a trailer, you can zoom in on the view of the trailer hitch.

When zooming in, remember that the view may no longer show certain obstacles.

Trailer hitch view can be turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Turning the trailer hitch view on/off

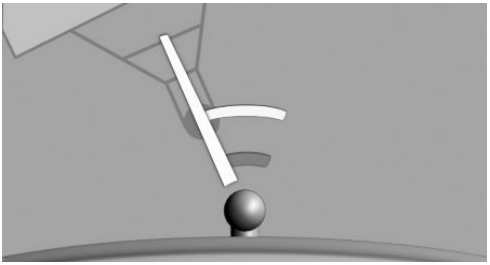
1. To turn on trailer hitch view, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

2. "Trailer coupling view"

To exit trailer hitch view, select another camera view from the selection at the top.

Display



Two static circle segments are displayed in the camera image. These circle segments help to estimate the distance of the trailer to the trailer hitch.

A docking line dependent on the steering-wheel angle helps with aiming for the trailer with the trailer hitch.

Tunnel car wash view

Principle

Car wash view helps when driving into a car wash by showing the vehicle's lane.

This function can be turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Turning the tunnel car wash view on/off

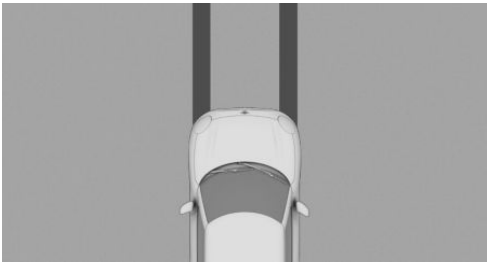
1. To turn on tunnel car wash view, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

2. "Car wash"

To exit tunnel car wash view, select another camera view from the selection at the top.

Display



Your own lane is displayed for easier driving into a car wash.

This view can be used to position the vehicle correctly within the washing system guide rails.

In a tunnel car wash, it is necessary that the vehicle be able to coast freely.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 127.

Panorama View

Principle

The panoramic view gives you an earlier view of crossing traffic at blind driveway exits and intersections.

Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. To provide greater visibility, the front camera and, depending on vehicle equipment, Rear View Camera cover the side of the vehicle.

The camera image shows different levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for distance estimations.

Depending on vehicle equipment, this function can be used when reversing or driving forward.

Panorama view can be turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

Depending on vehicle equipment, saved activation points can activate panorama view automatically.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Sensors

Panorama view is controlled by the following sensors:

- Rear View Camera.
- Depending on if vehicle is equipped with front camera.

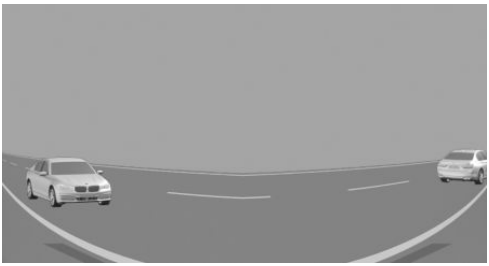
Turning the panoramic view on/off

1. To turn on panorama view, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
2. "Panorama"

To exit panorama view, select another camera view from the selection at the top.

Display



Yellow lines in the camera image indicate the vehicle bumpers.

When reverse gear is engaged, the Rear View Camera view is displayed. Depending on vehicle equipment, the front camera view is displayed when forward gear is engaged.

Automatic activation of panorama view

Principle

Positions at which panorama view should switch on automatically can be saved as activation points.

Up to ten activation points can be saved and deleted.

The activation points can be used when driving forward and, depending on national-market version, when reversing.

In addition, note the information in the Panorama view chapter.

Functional requirements

To have panorama view activate automatically, the following functional requirements must be met:

- A GPS signal must be received.
- Depending on national-market version: A MINI ID or driver profile must be activated.
- The Rear View Camera and front camera must be installed.
- The direction of travel, the selector lever position, and the vehicle angle must match a stored activation point.

Storing activation points

Desired activation points can be saved.

1. Drive the vehicle to the location where panorama view should turn on automatically, then stop.
2. Press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
3. Go through the menu as follows: "Panorama" / "Activation point" / "Save activation point".

Activation points are saved with the following information, for example:

- With the city/town.
- With the city/town and the street.
- A default name.

Using activation points

To enable/disable the use of activation points, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking" / "GPS-based".

Deleting activation points

Activation points can be deleted, individually or collectively.

1. Press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
2. Go through the menu as follows: "Panorama" / "Manage points".

   A list of all saved activation points is displayed.
   - To delete an activation point, swipe over the desired activation point.
   - To delete all activation points, select the following function: "Delete all points".

Door opening angle

Principle

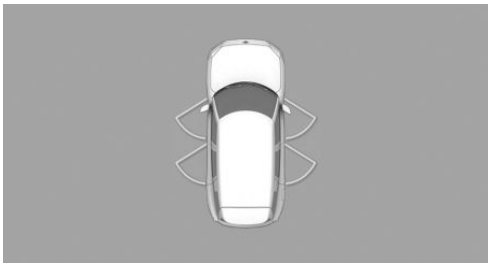
Depending on vehicle equipment, the door opening angle display is shown automatically when stationary.

This display helps estimate how far the doors can be opened when parking.

If obstacle marking is activated, the parking view indicates fixed obstacles that obstruct the opening angles of the doors.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Display



The maximum opening angle of the doors is displayed in selector lever position P.

System limits

The door opening angle view does not warn you of approaching road users.

The vehicle's surroundings are distorted in the display for technical reasons.

Even if no objects are visible in the door opening angle view on the Interaction Unit, park carefully when near other objects.

Because of the perspective, higher, protruding objects may be closer than they appear on the Interaction Unit.

Remote 3D View

Principle

The MINI App and parking camera views, e.g., automatic camera perspective, can be used to display the vehicle’s surroundings on a mobile device.

Remote 3D View shows a snapshot of the situation.

For reasons of data protection, Remote 3D View can only be used three times within two hours.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Sensors

Remote 3D View is controlled by the following sensors:

- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

To use Remote 3D View, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Data transfer must be activated.
- The MINI App must be installed on the mobile end device.
- In MINI Connected countries, an existing MINI Connected account must be used to activate a MINI ID.

Additional information:

- Data protection, refer to page 61.
- MINI ID, refer to page 62.

Activating/deactivating Remote 3D View

Remote 3D View can be activated or deactivated individually or together with other functions.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Data privacy".
2. Select the desired setting.

   After activating, Remote 3D View can be accessed in the MINI App.

System limits

Remote 3D View may not be fully operational or may not be available in the following situations:

- With a door or the cargo area open. Dark fields in the display indicate areas that are not recorded by the system.
- With manually folded-in exterior mirrors.

- When other camera functions are being performed in the vehicle.
- The vehicle moves faster than walking speed.
- In case of missing or weak Internet connection.

Park Distance Control

Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Acoustic and visual warnings signal obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle.

Obstacles that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors can also be reported.

The range of Park Distance Control, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft / 2 m.

Park Distance Control turns on and off automatically in certain situations. Automatic activation can be enabled or disabled on the Interaction Unit.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

Due to high speeds when the Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off quickly while Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Sensors

Park Distance Control is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.

Turning Park Distance Control on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Park Distance Control switches on automatically in the following situations:

- When drive-ready state is switched on when selector lever position R is engaged.
- While approaching detected obstacles if the speed is lower than approx. 2.5 mph /4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

To activate/deactivate automatic activation when obstacles are detected, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking" / "Automatic PDC activation".

Turning off the system automatically

Park Distance Control switches off automatically when driving forward or if a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Turning the system on/off manually

To manually turn on Park Distance Control, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

When the LED above the Park Assist key illuminates, the system is on. When the LED goes out, the system is off.

If the system is manually switched on when the reverse gear is engaged, the Rear View Camera image is displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the system cannot be turned off manually when the reverse gear is engaged.

Acoustic warning

General information

An intermittent tone is given as acoustic warning for Park Distance Control to signal an approaching object. E.g., when an object is detected at the rear left of the vehicle, a sound is heard from the rear left speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals of the intermittent tones.

An acoustic warning sounds if there is an impending collision with an object at a distance of approx. 27 in / 70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is issued at a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft / 1.50 m.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in / 20 cm, a continuous tone sounds.

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, at a distance less than approx. 8 in / 20 cm, an alternating continuous tone sounds between the front and rear speakers.

The intermittent tones and the continuous tone are turned off when selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on national-market version, the intermittent tones are switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

If an object approaches when the vehicle is stationary, the acoustic signal is reactivated.

Adjusting the volume

1. To adjust the volume of the acoustic warning, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking" / "PDC signal volume".
2. Set the desired value.

Depending on national-market version: Turn off acoustic warning

Depending on national-market version, the acoustic warning can be turned off while performing a parking maneuver.

Tap the acoustic warning icon on the right edge of the Interaction Unit. The icon turns gray and the LED below the icon goes out.

When the Park Distance Control is switched on again, the acoustic warning is automatically switched on again.

Visual warning

General information

If Park Distance Control is activated, the Interaction Unit will indicate when the vehicle is approaching an object.

Objects that are farther away are already displayed before a signal sounds.

Depending on the view, pathway lines, turning circle lines and obstacle markings are shown for a better estimation of the space required.

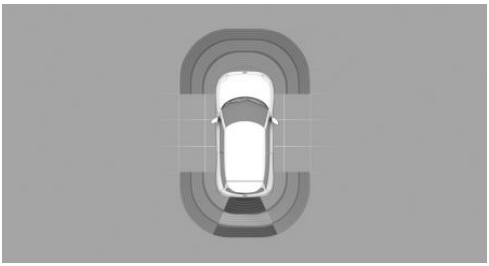
Depending on vehicle equipment, the sensor detection range is shown by the shaded, ring-shaped area. Green, yellow, and red markings indicate when obstacles are detected within the detection range.

If your vehicle is equipped with the Cross Traffic Warning, a warning is also shown on the display for vehicles approaching from the side at the rear and front.

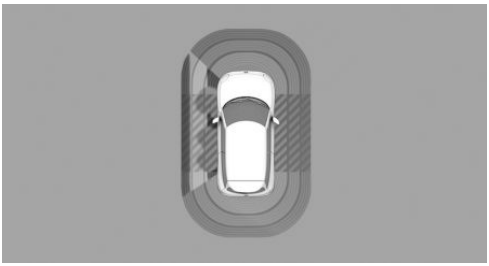
To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

Display

Depending on vehicle equipment, warnings may be displayed in front of, next to, and behind the vehicle.



Example display of warnings behind the vehicle.



Example display of warnings next to the vehicle.

The gray shaded areas indicate the sensor detection range. No obstacles have been detected within detection range.

Colored markings in the shaded area indicate that obstacles have been detected within the detection range.

If the shaded area is not continuous, the area next to the vehicle has not been scanned yet.

System limits

Detection capability

The function for protecting the vehicle sides only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when passing by.

Park Distance Control does not detect when an obstacle moves later. When the vehicle is at a standstill, the gray shaded areas on the sides fade out after a certain time. The area on the side of the vehicle must be newly captured.

Also follow the information on system limits in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Trailer towing

The rear functions of Park Distance Control are turned off when towing a trailer or when the trailer socket is occupied.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the sensor detection range is shown by the shaded area on the Interaction Unit.

Obstacles next to the vehicle are not displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the rear functions of Park Distance Control remain switched on when trailer towing is enabled.

The trailer towing icon is shown on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 328.

Unwarranted warnings

Unwarranted warnings may be given if the system limits of Park Distance Control are reached.

To prevent unwarranted warnings, for instance in tunnel car washes, turn off automatic Park Distance Control activation on obstacle detection.

Malfunction

If Park Distance Control malfunctions, the Attention icon appears on the Interaction Unit.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the sensor detection range may not be shown.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Park Distance Control may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Active Park Distance Control

Principle

Active Park Distance Control is the brake function of Park Distance Control and initiates emergency braking in the event of an acute risk of collision.

The system can be used below walking speed when reversing or coasting backward.

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

Pressing the accelerator pedal suppresses the brake intervention. Emergency braking is not performed.

The Interaction Unit can be used to temporarily deactivate Active Park Distance Control as well as configure the settings for this system.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are obscured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

Sensors

Active Park Distance Control is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.
- Rear View Camera.

Driving off after emergency braking

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. To move slowly forward, lightly press and release the accelerator pedal as needed.

Pressing the accelerator pedal longer causes the vehicle to drive off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

Deactivating Active Park Distance Control temporarily

After emergency braking, Active Park Distance Control can be temporarily deactivated on the Interaction Unit. A corresponding message is displayed.

Go through the menu as follows: "Configure" / "Deactivate temporarily".

No further emergency braking will be performed in this situation as you continue driving.

The function is automatically reactivated when Park Distance Control is switched on again.

Settings

You can configure which areas of your vehicle to protect with the Park Distance Control system.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking" / "Active PDC emergency braking".
2. Select the desired setting.

Display

As soon as the system engages, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Functional limitation

Active Park Distance Control cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

- While Hill Descent Control is regulating the vehicle speed, emergency braking is deactivated.
- When driving with a trailer.

If applicable, turn off the system temporarily, if needed.

Additional information:

Hill Descent Control, refer to page 219.

Drive-Off Monitoring

Principle

Drive-Off Monitoring reduces the drive power if there is a risk of collision when driving off, e.g., if the accelerator pedal and brake pedal are mixed up.

When obstacles are detected in close range in front of the vehicle, the acceleration will be reduced. If necessary, this permits timely manual braking.

When obstacles are detected behind the vehicle, the system will brake.

Drive-Off Monitoring can be activated or deactivated on the Interaction Unit.

This reduced acceleration can be canceled, e.g., by fully pressing the accelerator two times.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are obscured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

Sensors

Drive-Off Monitoring is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.

Functional requirements

To use Drive-Off Monitoring, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Selector lever position D or R is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.
- Obstacles in the immediate vicinity are detected in front of or behind the vehicle.
- The accelerator pedal is heavily applied, nearly to the end point.
- The accelerator pedal is immediately applied after engaging the selector lever position and obstacle detection.

Activating/deactivating Drive-Off Monitoring

To activate/deactivate Drive-Off Monitoring, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking" / "Drive-Off Monitoring".

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Depending on national-market version, this system turns on automatically for the next drive.

Canceling reduced drive power

The reduction of the drive power is canceled in the following situations:

- The accelerator pedal is released.
- After the accelerator pedal has been fully pressed two times.
- A specific distance has been traveled.

If the reduction in drive power is canceled by covering a certain distance, the drive power is released gradually.

Display

As soon as the system engages, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Functional limitation

Drive-Off Monitoring is deactivated when the trailer power socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, e.g., when using a trailer or rear bicycle rack.

Automatic Park Assistant

Principle

Automatic Park Assistant provides support when parallel parking and parking transverse to the road.

In addition, the system makes it easier to pull out of parallel and perpendicular parking spaces.

The ultrasonic sensors measure both sides of the vehicle when driving slowly forward. Suitable parking spaces are calculated based on the objects detected, e.g., parking vehicles. The system status is displayed.

The system calculates the best possible parking line for driving in or out of parking spaces, and takes control of the vehicle during the parking operation.

The operating principle and operation of the Automatic Park Assistant is divided into the following steps:

- Parking space search.
- Turning on.
- Parking.
- Driving out of parking spaces.

The parking manoeuver while parking is performed automatically.

When driving out of parallel parking spaces, the vehicle maneuvers automatically until it reaches a position where it can be driven out of the parking space without further steering movements.

When driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, the vehicle is maneuvered out of the parking space to enable continued driving in the desired direction.

A parking maneuver can be interrupted and continued manually.

Settings can be customized as desired, e.g., to adjust how parking maneuvers are displayed or to set a sound for suitable parking spaces.

Parking Assistant Plus and Automatic Park Assistant enhance driving comfort and the functionality of the Automatic Park Assistant. In addition to the parking methods of the Automatic Park Assistant, Parking Assistant Plus makes it possible to park in parking spaces that are marked with lines.

Parking Assistant Professional can also be used to perform a parking maneuver with Remote Control Parking on a smartphone.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

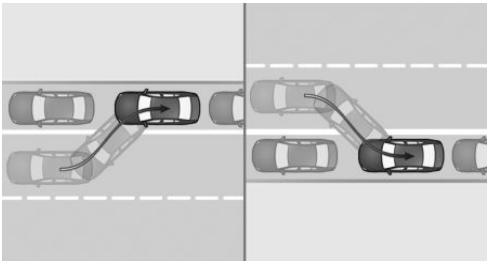
When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are obscured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

WARNING

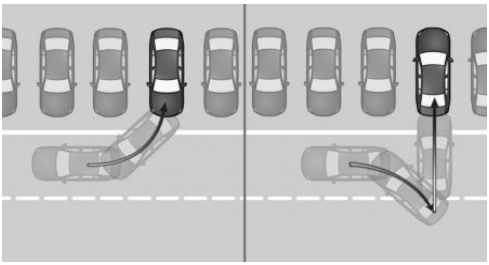
The system can steer over or onto curbs, which can result in an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Parking methods

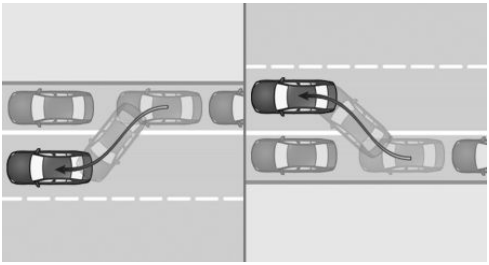
Automatic Park Assistant supports the following functions:



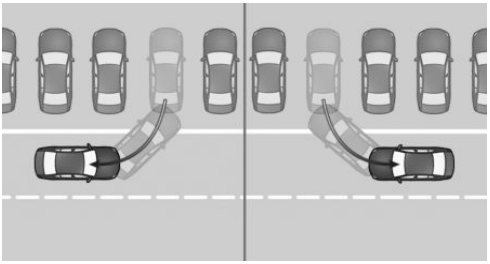
When parallel parking: Parking in reverse, parallel to the road.



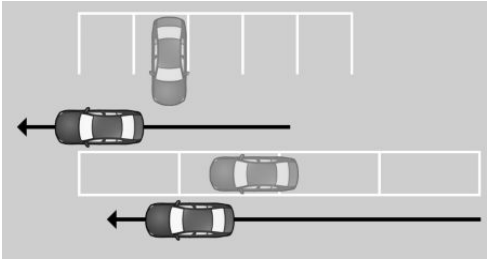
When perpendicular parking: Pulling into a parking space in reverse, or moving forward into a parking space perpendicular to the road.



When driving out of parallel parking spaces.



When driving out of perpendicular parking spaces.



With Parking Assistant Plus or Parking Assistant Professional: Parking in parking spaces with parking lines.

Sensors

The Automatic Park Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.

The enhanced functions of Parking Assistant Plus and Parking Assistant Professional are also controlled by the following cameras:

- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

Measurement of parking spaces

To measure parking spaces, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Driving forward: Up to approx. 22 mph /35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: Approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

To find suitable parking spaces, the following functional requirements must be met:

Longitudinal parking:

- Minimum length of detected object, e.g., parking vehicle, approx. 3.0 ft / 1.0 m.
- Minimum length of gap between two objects: Vehicle length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth of approx. 5.0 ft / 1.5 m.

Perpendicular parking:

- Minimum length of detected object, e.g., parking vehicle, approx. 3.0 ft / 1.0 m.
- Minimum width of gap: Vehicle width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- The minimum depth corresponds to your vehicle's length.

  The depth of perpendicular parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces.

Parking lines for Parking Assistant Plus and Parking Assistant Professional:

- The parking space must be clearly marked with lines.
- The one-time calibration of the camera after vehicle delivery must be complete. To complete the calibration process, drive a short distance of a few miles in daylight.

Parking operation

To pull into a parking space, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The doors and cargo area are closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

Leaving parking spaces

To pull out of a parking space, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The vehicle was parked using the Automatic Park Assistant, and an object has been detected in the area around the vehicle.
- The vehicle was manually parked in reverse, and objects have been detected in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle. The distance to a detected curb is at least 6 inches/15 cm.
- The parking space is at least 2.6 ft/0.8 m longer than the vehicle.

Displays

General information

The current status of the Automatic Park Assistant is shown as follows.

- At the bottom of the Interaction Unit.
- In the trip data area.
- On the Head-up display, depending on vehicle equipment.

Various icons are shown when selecting the parking method.

The sequence of the displayed icons corresponds to the prioritized parking option.

The direction of the arrow changes for the icons for parking methods for driving out of a parking space.

Icon	Meaning
	Reverse lengthwise parking, right.
	Reverse lengthwise parking, left.
	Reverse perpendicular parking.
	Forward perpendicular parking.

Turning parking operation display on/off

When the Automatic Park Assistant is enabled, the parking maneuver is shown in the camera view on the Interaction Unit.

To turn the parking view on/off, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking" / "Show assistance information".

Enabling/disabling the acoustic signal

To enable/disable the acoustic signal for suitable parking spaces, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking" / "Sound when available".

Parking using the Automatic Park Assistant

When parking with Automatic Park Assistant, you must select a parking method depending on the available parking spaces.

1. For the parking space search, drive past parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph / 35 km/h and a distance of max. 5.0 ft / 1.5 m.

((P)) The parking space search is activated.

2. Press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

   The parking space search and possible parking spaces are shown on the Interaction Unit.

3. Select one of the parking methods offered on the Interaction Unit. You can switch to another parking maneuver as necessary.

   The status symbol for the Automatic Park Assistant illuminates green. A message indicates that the system is performing the parking operation.

4. Follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

   The speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   Depending on national-market version, an intermittent or continuous tone sounds for Park Distance Control.

   Selector lever position P is engaged once the vehicle has finished pulling into a parking space.

   Once the vehicle has finished pulling into a parking space, this is indicated on the Interaction Unit.

5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Driving out of a parking space using the Automatic Park Assistant

1. Switch on drive-ready state to pull out of the parking space using the Automatic Park Assistant.

2. When your vehicle is stopped, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

3. On the Interaction Unit, select the desired parking method.

4. Follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

   The status symbol for the Automatic Park Assistant illuminates green. A message indicates that the system is performing the operation for driving out of a parking space.

   The speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   A message appears once the vehicle has finished pulling out of a parking space.

5. Make sure that the traffic situation permits driving out of parking space and driving off as usual.

   The Automatic Park Assistant is turned off automatically.

Canceling Automatic Park Assistant manually

The Automatic Park Assistant can be canceled manually at any time, e.g.:

- Step lightly on the accelerator pedal twice in succession.
- Step lightly on the accelerator pedal and move the steering wheel slightly at the same time.
- Depress the brake pedal and operate the selector lever at the same time.

The Automatic Park Assistant is canceled without engaging selector lever position P. Driving can continue immediately.

Canceling Automatic Park Assistant automatically

The Automatic Park Assistant is canceled automatically in situations such as the following:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- When pressing the accelerator pedal or operating the selector lever.
- When setting the parking brake.
- When unfastening the driver's seat belt.
- With open cargo area.
- With open hood.
- With the doors open.
- During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- When switching to other functions on the Interaction Unit.
- When overlaying messages on the Interaction Unit display.
- On snow-covered or slippery road.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- With insufficient distances, which are indicated by Park Distance Control.
- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.

When the system is automatically aborted, selector lever position P is engaged.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Continuing the parking operation

If it is necessary to stop when pulling in/out of a parking space, this maneuver can be continued as necessary.

Restart the Automatic Park Assistant and follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

No parking assistance

The Automatic Park Assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.
- When towing a trailer.
- Automatic Park Assistant: For parking spaces that are only marked with lines on the ground. The system orients itself according to objects.
- For special parking spaces, e.g., metered parking spaces with automatic locking mechanisms, or mechanical parking systems.

Functional limitations

The Automatic Park Assistant may be limited in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- If leaves or snow have accumulated in the parking space.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message appears if the Automatic Park Assistant malfunctions.

The Automatic Park Assistant may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Back Up Assistant

Principle

The Back Up Assistant helps when reversing, e.g., when pulling out of tight or unclear parking spots or roads.

The vehicle automatically stores all forward movement within the last distance covered. This stored distance can be driven in reverse with automated steering.

The Back Up Assistant takes control of steering. The driver must control the speed by depressing the accelerator and brake pedals.

With Back Up Assistant: A maximum distance of 164 ft/50 m is saved.

With Back Up Assistant Professional: A maximum distance of 656 ft/200 m is saved.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are obscured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the assistance system

while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

WARNING

The system can steer over or onto curbs, which can result in an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

To use the Back Up Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Drive forward without interruption to store the distance covered.
- To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 22 mph /35 km/h.
- No trailer towing.
- Back Up Assistant Professional: Sufficiently bright light conditions on the saved route.
- Back Up Assistant Professional: The cameras on the vehicle must be clean and clear.
- Back Up Assistant Professional: The one-off calibration of the camera after vehicle delivery must be complete. To complete the calibration process, drive a short distance of a few miles in daylight.

Driving in reverse with automated steering

Depending on availability, the Back Up Assistant can be used to reverse with automatic steering.

1. To reverse with automatic steering, switch on drive-ready state.
2. When your vehicle is stopped, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
3. "Start Back Up Assistant"

   The length of the saved maneuver is displayed on the Interaction Unit.

   Follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit as necessary.
4. Take your hands off the steering wheel and back up carefully by depressing the accelerator and brake pedals.

   The status symbol for the Back Up Assistant illuminates green. A message indicates that the Back Up Assistant has taken control of the steering.

   When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle's surroundings.

   In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Follow the instructions for Park Distance Control.
5. Right before the end of the stored distance covered, a signal tone will sound and a message is displayed.

   Stop no later than when normal road traffic is reached and take control of the vehicle such as by shifting to forward gear.

Canceling the Back Up Assistant manually

The Back Up Assistant can be stopped manually:

- On the bottom toolbar, select the following function: "Cancel".
- Press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

Canceling the Back Up Assistant automatically

The Back Up Assistant is canceled automatically in situations such as the following:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- When switching from reverse gear to another selector lever position.
- During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- When exiting the stored lane when reversing, for instance with maximum steering-wheel angle.
- When overlaying messages on the Interaction Unit display.
- In case of a slippery surface.
- When the vehicle is rolling such as on a slope.
- In case of changed ambient conditions.
- When the trailer power socket is occupied or when trailer towing is activated.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph /10 km/h.
- Back Up Assistant Professional: If sensor functionality is limited beyond approx. 164 ft/50 m.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Speed threshold

The maximum speed when reversing is limited to approx. 6 mph /10 km/h.

A warning is issued at a speed of approx. 4 mph /7 km/h.

If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function is interrupted.

Functional limitations

Different influences can lead to side deviations when driving the stored distance covered in reverse. The following influences, for example, can lead to deviation:

- Steering movements when the vehicle is stationary while storing the distance covered.
- The speed is not adapted to the distance covered.
- Certain road characteristics such as gradients, inclines or slippery road surface.
- Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the route, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like weather.
- Back Up Assistant Professional: With changed light conditions.

Maneuver Assistant

Principle

The Maneuver Assistant helps with parking and maneuvering by recording and automatically performing repeated maneuvers.

Driving maneuvers must be performed manually and then recorded. When the vehicle

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

reaches the activation range for the distance covered by the recorded driving maneuver, this maneuver can be activated on the Interaction Unit.

Once a maneuver is activated, this system takes control of the vehicle and performs the maneuver automatically.

Driving maneuvers can also be performed using Remote Control Parking on a smartphone.

Up to ten driving maneuvers can be recorded at different locations, and identical driving maneuvers with different conditions, e.g., lighting conditions, can be recorded. Up to four overlapping driving maneuvers can be recorded.

The distance covered by each maneuver must be between 20 ft / 6 m and 656 ft / 200 m. In total, approx. 1,969 ft / 600 m can be recorded.

Additional information:

- Parking assistance systems, refer to page 251.
- Remote Control Parking, refer to page 282.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

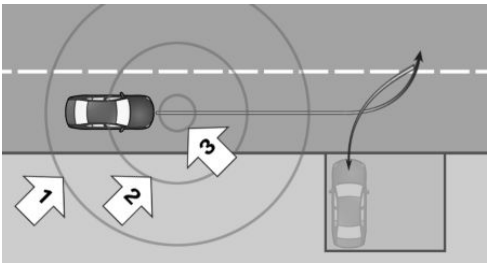
WARNING

When using the trailer hitch, the assistance system cannot react correctly because the sensors are obscured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the assistance system while towing a trailer or when using the trailer hitch, e.g., for a rear bicycle rack.

WARNING

The system can steer over or onto curbs, which can result in an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Detection range



The detection range for a driving maneuver is divided into the following areas:

- Proximity range, arrow 1: System begins localization in the background within a range of approx. 26 ft/8 m around the recorded driving maneuver.
- Close range, arrow 2: A recorded maneuver can be shown on the Interaction Unit within a range of approx. 6 ft / 2 m around the distance covered by the maneuver.
- Activation range, arrow 3: The recorded maneuver can be activated on the Interaction Unit within a range of approx. 3.5 ft / 1 m. Once a maneuver is activated, this system takes control of the vehicle and performs the maneuver automatically.

Sensors

The Maneuver Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors at the sides.
- Front camera.
- Exterior mirror cameras.
- Rear View Camera.

Functional requirements

To use the Maneuver Assistant, the one-off calibration process of the camera after vehicle delivery must be complete. To complete the calibration process, drive a short distance of a few miles in daylight.

Recording a driving maneuver

1. To record a maneuver, drive the vehicle to the desired starting point and stop.
2. Press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
3. "Record new path"
4. Drive the vehicle to the desired end position.

   The record icon for the driving maneuver appears.

   When recording a route, do not drive faster than 9 mph /15 km/h.

   While recording, the distance covered will be displayed.

   When the maximum distance covered or the maximum speed is reached, a message will be displayed and a signal tone will sound.
5. Vehicle stationary: "Save recording".

   The driving maneuver can be saved with an automatically generated name, or renamed using a name of your choice, or discarded.
6. Select the desired action.

Performing a recorded driving maneuver

1. To perform the recorded maneuver, drive the vehicle into the activation area and stop. The Interaction Unit indicates

when a recorded driving maneuver can be used.

2. Tap the Activate icon for the recorded driving maneuver.

   The status symbol for the Maneuver Assistant illuminates green. Once a maneuver is activated, this system takes control of the vehicle and performs the maneuver automatically. Follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit as necessary.

   The speed can be reduced by depressing the brake pedal. Other interventions will cancel the system.

   At the end of the parking operation, selector lever position P is set.

Canceling the Maneuver Assistant manually

The vehicle can be controlled manually when a driving maneuver is being performed by doing as follows:

- Step lightly on the accelerator pedal twice in succession.
- Step lightly on the accelerator pedal and move the steering wheel slightly at the same time.
- Depress the brake pedal and operate the selector lever at the same time.

The Maneuver Assistant is canceled without engaging selector lever position P. Driving can continue immediately.

Canceling the Maneuver Assistant automatically

The Maneuver Assistant is canceled automatically in situations such as the following:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- When pressing the accelerator pedal or operating the selector lever.
- When unfastening the driver's seat belt.
- With open cargo area.
- With open hood.
- With the doors open.
- During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- When the system limits of the ultrasonic sensors and cameras are reached.
- When switching to other functions on the Interaction Unit.
- When overlaying messages on the Interaction Unit display.
- In case of obstacles.
- On snow-covered or slippery road.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With trailer towing.

In the event of an automatic cancellation of the system, the vehicle is decelerated to a complete stop and selector lever position P is engaged.

If canceled, a driving maneuver can be continued as applicable. Restart the Maneuver Assistant and follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

Editing recorded driving maneuvers

The Interaction Unit can be used to edit driving maneuvers, individually or collectively.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking" / "Recorded paths".
2. Select the driving maneuver to be edited.
3. Select the desired action.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Functional limitations

The Maneuver Assistant does not provide support when towing a trailer.

System limits can cause functional limitations such as in the following situations:

- With poor GPS reception.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- If driving maneuvers are recorded but the system's minimum distance to other objects cannot be maintained.
- Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the distance covered, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like light conditions or weather.
- Overlapping maneuvers are shown at a delay when driving into activation range.
- In multi-story parking garages, for recordings at different parking levels, or for recordings that run over several parking levels.

If the calibration process for the camera is not completed after vehicle delivery, an icon appears on the display of the parking assistance systems when reverse gear is engaged.

Tap the icon and follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.

Remote Control Parking

Principle

With Remote Control Parking, the vehicle can be driven remotely from outside the vehicle when parking and maneuvering.

The parking maneuver is performed independently from outside the vehicle using the MINI App on a smartphone. Remote Control Parking makes getting in and out of the vehicle easier.

The function can be used when parking and maneuvering using the Maneuver Assistant and the Automatic Park Assistant.

When using this function, observe applicable national regulations.

When parking in a suitable spot, e.g., a garage, the vehicle's parking position can be corrected by maneuvering manually with the MINI App.

A parking operation that has already been started can be continued at any time with Remote Control Parking.

The smartphone is protected against unauthorized use.

The low-beam headlights are turned on for the duration of the parking operation.

A parking operation offered by the Automatic Park Assistant is only available for Remote Control Parking for a short time after exiting the vehicle.

In addition, note the information in the Automatic Park Assistant and Maneuver Assistant chapter.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Functional requirements

To use Remote Control Parking, the following functional requirements must be met:

- All occupants have left the vehicle.
- The doors and cargo area are closed.
- Make sure that no one is located within range of the parking operation.
- Make sure that no one is located in the narrow spaces between the vehicle and stationary objects, e.g., between the vehicle and a garage wall.
- To manually correct the vehicle position using the MINI App, the minimum width of the parking space must be the vehicle width plus 1.9 ft/0.6 m.
- The smartphone is compatible with Remote Control Parking.
- The MINI App must be installed on a compatible smartphone.
- The MINI App must be linked to a MINI Connected account.
- Bluetooth must be enabled on the smartphone.
- The distance between vehicle and smartphone is no greater than approx. 19 ft/6 m.
- A valid digital key must be set up for the vehicle, then recognized without issue.

Additional information:

Digital Key, refer to page 75.

Parking with Remote Control Parking

1. To perform the parking maneuver with Remote Control Parking, engage selector lever position P.
2. Leave the vehicle and close the doors and cargo area.
3. Open Remote Control Parking in the MINI App and maneuver forward or backward, or select the desired parking method.
4. Follow the instructions on the smartphone.

   Stop the vehicle manually if obstacles are present.

   Depending on the option selected in the MINI App, either the vehicle is parked at the end of the parking maneuver or control of the vehicle is given back to the driver.

System limits

Due to ambient conditions, e.g., impaired Bluetooth connection transmission due to external faults, Remote Control Parking may be interrupted.

If the power supply of the vehicle battery is not sufficiently ensured, e.g., due to excessive discharge, Remote Control Parking may not be available. Follow the instructions on the MINI App.

It may not be easy to maneuver into a parking space. The function is offered on the MINI App but cannot be used due to ambient conditions.

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Adaptive suspension

The adaptive suspension is a variable, mechanically controlled sport suspension that reduces movement of the vehicle body while driving with a sporty style or on uneven roads.

Driving dynamics and driving comfort are increased through the adjustment of the chassis.

MINI Sound

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle drive sound can be adjusted using MINI Sound.

1. To configure MINI Sound, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Drivetrain and chassis" / "MINI Sound".
2. Select the desired setting.

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Climate control

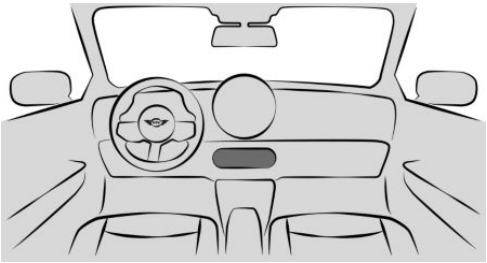
Overview

Functions in the Climate menu

Climate control functions, e.g., seat heating or air flow, can be configured using the Climate Control menu on the Interaction Unit.

Icon	Function
	Turn the air conditioning system on/off.
AUTO	Automatic program.
72.0°F	Temperature in the vehicle interior.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
	Automatic air recirculation.
	Fresh air.
SYNC	SYNC program.
	Seat heating.
	Steering wheel heating.
	Settings.

Buttons, air conditioning system



The defrost and rear window heating functions can be turned on/off using the switch cluster.

Icon	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.

Calling up climate control functions

To bring up the climate control functions, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.

Turning the air conditioning system on/off

The air conditioning system can be turned on/off using the Interaction Unit.

1. Select the Climate menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Tap the power button.

The entire air conditioning system is turned on/off with the last settings applied.

When the air conditioning system is on, individual climate control functions can be turned off.

Make sure that there is sufficient ventilation when staying in the vehicle for extended periods of time with the air conditioning system off, e.g., when sleeping.

Settings

Individual settings for climate control functions, e.g., seat heating intensity, can be configured using the Interaction Unit.

1. To configure the climate control functions individually, select the icon for the Climate Control menu on the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. Select the desired setting.

Automatic program

Principle

The automatic program ensures a comfortable climate, which can be adjusted by setting the desired temperature and configuring the settings.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the automatic program automatically adjusts the following climate control functions:

- Air flow.
- Air distribution.
- Temperature.
- Seat heating.
- Steering wheel heating.

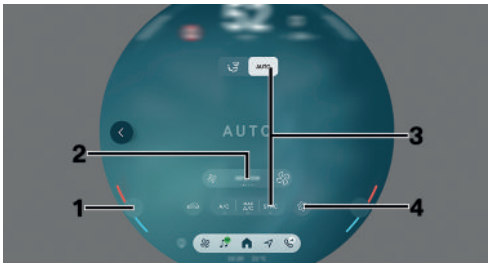
The settings depend on the following factors:

- Outside temperature.
- Interior temperature.
- Amount of direct sunlight.
- Seat occupancy.
- Desired temperature set.

The AUTO program takes seat occupancy into account to ensure that the energy consumption is low and the air conditioning is tailored to the occupants.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the automatic program in order to prevent window condensation to the extent possible.

Overview



1 Temperature
Seat heating
Steering wheel heating
2 Air flow intensity
3 Climate control functions bar
4 Settings

Turning the automatic program on/off

1. To turn the automatic program on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. AUTO Tap the automatic program button.

Setting the intensity

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of individual climate control functions, e.g., seat heating, is adjusted individually.

1. Select the Climate menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. Select the desired setting.

Each level has a specific control range of the intensity.

Based on the stored data models, the intensities are dynamically adjusted while driving. It is not necessary to manually change the desired intensity to lower or higher levels while driving.

Custom settings for climate control functions are saved and applied automatically, e.g., after the vehicle is started.

Display

The indicator on the temperature display provides information about the temperature difference between the set desired temperature and the current interior temperature:

- The flashing red or blue bar next to the temperature display indicates that the interior temperature is being adjusted.
- Once the bar stops flashing, the desired interior temperature has been reached.

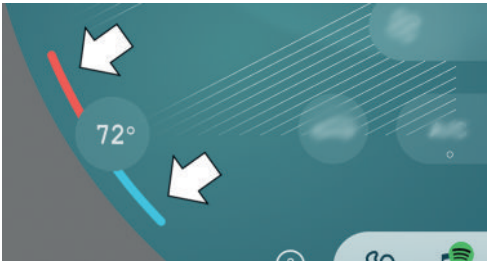
Temperature

Principle

The air conditioning system cools or heats to the set temperature, keeping the temperature constant.

Setting the temperature

The desired temperature can be set individually for the driver's side and front passenger side.



1. Tap the button with the temperature display.
2. Set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the air conditioning system will not have enough time to adjust to the set temperature.

Air flow

Principle

The air flow generated by the blower can be adjusted as needed.

The air flow may be reduced to preserve the vehicle battery.

Adjusting the air flow

1. To adjust the air flow, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Select the desired setting.
   - Tap the large air flow icon to increase the air flow.
   - Tap the small air flow icon to reduce the air flow.

Air distribution settings

Principle

In manual mode, the air distribution can be adjusted as needed.

Adjusting the air distribution

1. To adjust the air distribution, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Select the desired setting:
   - Aim the air flow into the footwell, arrow 1.
   - Aim the air flow toward the upper body area, arrow 2.
   - Aim the air flow at the windshield, arrow 3.

Air conditioning

Principle

With the climate control function, the air inside the vehicle is cooled and dehumidified, then warmed again depending on the temperature settings.

Functional requirement

Standby or drive-ready state is on.

Switching the cooling function on/off

1. To turn the cooling on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. A/C Tap the cooling button.

In recirculated-air mode, the air conditioning is automatically turned on to dry the air and avoid window condensation.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

Condensation may form in the vehicle air-conditioning system. Condensation leaking under the vehicle is due to technical reasons and does not constitute a malfunction.

Maximum cooling

Principle

Maximum cooling is used to cool the vehicle interior quickly and effectively.

The lowest temperature and the maximum air flow are set automatically.

Functional requirement

- Drive-ready state is on.
- The outside temperature is higher than 32°F / 0°C.

Turning maximum cooling on/off

1. To turn maximum cooling on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. MAX A/C Tap the maximum cooling button.

The air vents open. Air flows out of the air vents for the upper body area.

Air recirculation mode

Principle

With air recirculation, if unpleasant odors or pollutants are detected in the outside air, the outside air supply can be temporarily stopped. The interior air is recirculated.

With automatic air recirculation, outside air is fed in, or the interior air is recirculated, depending on the outside air quality.

When air recirculation is off, outside air is channeled into the interior.

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Turning air recirculation on/off

1. To turn air recirculation on/off, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. The current operating mode is displayed on the climate control functions bar. Tap the button and select the desired operating mode.
   - Recirculating air.
   - Fresh air.
   - Automatic air recirculation.

If there is window condensation, turn off the air recirculation.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the air recirculation turns off automatically after some time based on the ambient conditions in order to prevent condensation.

SYNC program

Principle

If the SYNC program is activated, the temperature settings for the driver's side are transferred to the passenger's side.

For improved comfort, when the SYNC program is deactivated, the following settings are adjusted automatically in the automatic program depending on seat occupancy:

- If the front passenger seat is unoccupied, the settings for the driver's side are applied to the front passenger side.
- When the seat is occupied again, the most recent settings are reapplied.

Turning the SYNC program on/off

1. To turn the SYNC program on/off for the rear air conditioning system, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. SYNC Tap the SYNC program button.

If the temperature settings for the front passenger's side are changed, the SYNC program turns off automatically.

Defrost function

Principle

With the defrost function, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air flow and air temperature are automatically optimized for the removal of ice and condensation.

The air distribution is directed toward the windshield and front side windows.

A clean windshield is less prone to fogging up. Clean the inner side of the windshield regularly.

If there is window condensation, turn on the automatic program to take advantage of the condensation sensor.

Turning the defrost function on/off

MAX To turn the defrost function on/off, press the defrost button on the switch cluster.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

Make sure that air is able to flow to the windshield and front side windows.

Rear window defroster

Principle

The rear window heating quickly removes ice and condensation from the rear window, depending on the outside temperature.

The rear window heating can either be set to turn off automatically after some time or used in continuous operation.

Functional requirements

- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- The rear window heating can only be activated and kept on at an outside temperature of below approx. 41°F / 5°C.

Turning the rear window defroster on/off

REAR To turn the rear window heating on/off, briefly press the rear window heating button on the switch cluster.

The LED illuminates when the rear window heating is turned on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

To keep the rear window heating on, press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds.

Seat heating

Principle

When the seat heating is used, seats are heated depending on the outside temperature and the interior temperature.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the functions are turned on automatically with the temperature that was last set.

Adjusting seat heating

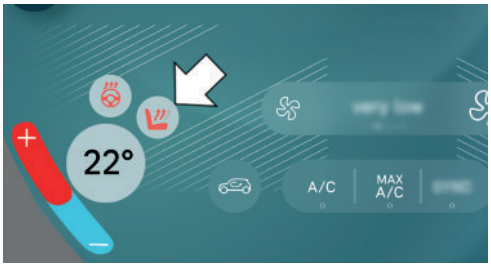
Automatic program

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of seat heating can be adjusted. As you drive, the heater output is automatically adjusted according to your set intensity.

Adjusting seat heating manually

The heater output level can be adjusted manually:

1. Tap the button with the temperature display.



2. Tap the seat heating button repeatedly until the desired level is selected.

To turn off the seat heating, press and hold the seat heating button for approx. three seconds.

If a consumption-optimized drive mode is selected, the heater output is reduced.

Steering wheel heating

Principle

When the steering wheel heating is used, the steering wheel is heated depending on the outside temperature and the interior temperature.

Adjusting steering wheel heating

Automatic program

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of steering wheel heating can be adjusted. As you drive, the heater output is automatically adjusted according to your set intensity.

Adjusting steering wheel heating manually

The heater output level can be adjusted manually:

1. Tap the button with temperature display.

2. Tap the steering wheel heating button repeatedly until the desired level is selected, arrow.

If a consumption-optimized drive mode is selected, the heater output is reduced.

Ventilation

Principle

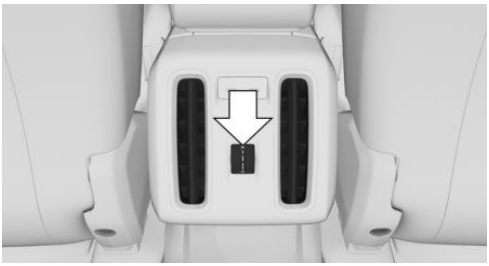
The ventilation system provides custom adjustment ranges for direct/indirect ventilation in order to optimize the flow of air within the vehicle.

The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the set desired temperature.

Front ventilation

- To adjust the air flow direction, push the adjustment knob in the desired air flow direction.
- To adjust the air flow, turn the adjustment knob to open/close the vents variably.

Ventilation in the rear



To adjust the air flow, turn the thumbwheel to open and close the vents variably.

Setting the ventilation

Depending on the desired ventilation, align the air flow directly or indirectly toward the passengers.

Open the air vents and position them to ensure effective air conditioning.

Air quality

Principle

The following components improve the air quality inside the vehicle:

- Emissions-tested vehicle interior.
- Interior filter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow, and air recirculation.
- Pre-ventilation.

Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Dust and pollen is filtered out from the inflowing air.
- Nano-particle emissions are reduced.
- Gaseous pollutants are filtered.
- Microbial particles, viruses and allergens are filtered.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the interior filter changed during preventive maintenance of the vehicle.

Pre-ventilation

Principle

Pre-ventilation is used to cool or heat the vehicle interior before beginning a trip. Depending on the set temperature and ambient temperature, the vehicle interior is ventilated or, depending on model variant, heated using the residual engine heat.

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the outside temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Functional requirements

To use the preventilation, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

  If pre-ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system can be used again once engine is started or after a short drive.
- The time and date are set correctly.
- The air vents are open.

Turning pre-ventilation on/off

1. To turn the preventilation on, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. Select the desired setting.

Departure time

Principle

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure:

- One-time departure time: The time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: Time and day of week can be set.

  On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set the departure time.
- Activate departure times.

Preventilation at the departure time can only be activated once.

Wait at least 10 minutes between setting and activating the departure time and departing at the planned time. This gives the air conditioning sufficient time to bring the vehicle interior to the desired temperature.

Setting the departure time

1. To set the departure time, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. Set the desired departure time.
7. Select the day of the week, as necessary.

Activating the departure time

1. To enable the departure time, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Activating with the MINI App

Depending on vehicle equipment, the MINI App with remote functionality can be used to turn on preventilation at a preset departure time or immediately.

Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start

Principle

Pre-conditioning cools or heats the vehicle interior to a comfortable temperature prior to the start of the trip. This system automatically cools, ventilates, and heats depending on the inside/outside temperature and set temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

This system starts the engine automatically and lets it run for a limited time.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can pollute the area in and around the vehicle or penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on pre-conditioning in enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, e.g. in enclosed garages.

WARNING

When pre-conditioning is in operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system. If combustible materials come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts during pre-conditioning, e.g. leaves, grass, natural gas, gasoline, oil or other combustible objects.

Functional requirements

To use the pre-conditioning, the following functional requirements must be met:

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The fuel tank is at a sufficient level.
- The hood is closed.
- The time and date are set correctly.
- The air vents are open.

Enabling the automatic engine start function

The automatic engine start must be enabled before using the system. Otherwise, the engine cannot switch on automatically to air-condition the vehicle interior.

1. To enable automatic engine starting, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Remote Engine Start"
5. "Start engine for climate control"
6. Confirm the legal disclaimer.

Turning on/turning off the pre-conditioning

Principle

The pre-conditioning turns off automatically after max. 15 minutes for safety reasons.

The pre-conditioning can only be activated twice in a row.

The pre-conditioning can be used again as soon as drive-ready state is activated and then deactivated again.

Turning on pre-conditioning via the Interaction Unit

1. Select the Climate menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Start now"

Switching on/off via vehicle key

Pre-conditioning can be turned on/off using the vehicle key:

Press the button on the vehicle key three times within 1 second.

The engine turns on approx. 3 seconds after the vehicle key is pressed.

To turn off pre-conditioning, press the button again three times within 1 second.

Switching off with the Start/Stop button

Pre-conditioning can be turned off directly by pushing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal.

Air conditioning for departure time

Principle

Scheduled departure times can be set up in the system to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure:

- One-time departure time: The time of the scheduled departure can be set.

  Pre-conditioning is turned on once.
- Departure time with weekday: Time and day of week for the scheduled departure can be set.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set the departure time.
- Activate departure times.

Pre-conditioning activates automatically a few minutes before the set departure time. Pre-conditioning stays on for a short time after the set departure time.

For safety reasons, the air conditioning can only be activated once for the departure time.

The pre-conditioning can be used again as soon as drive-ready state is activated and then deactivated again.

Observe the information about the intended use of the vehicle.

Additional information:

For your own safety, refer to page 10.

Setting the departure time

1. To set the departure time, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select the day of the week, as necessary.

Activating the departure time

1. To enable the departure time, tap the Climate Control menu icon on the menu bar.
2. Tap the settings button.
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

The Interaction Unit indicates when the pre-conditioning is on.

The engine runs for the purpose of operating the pre-conditioning. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

Activation of the pre-conditioning is confirmed by the light flashing twice.

The parking light turns on while the pre-conditioning is on.

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Integrated universal remote control

Principle

The integrated universal remote control in the interior mirror can operate remote-controlled systems such as garage doors, alarm systems, or locking systems.

The integrated universal remote control replaces various hand-held transmitters for remote-controlled systems. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system near metal objects in order to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

WARNING

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control such as the garage door may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

Make sure that the travel path of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.

Operating elements on the interior mirror

The operating elements on the interior mirror consist of the following elements:

- Buttons, arrow 1.
- LED, arrow 2.
- Hand-held transmitter for remote-controlled system, arrow 3.

Compatibility

If this icon is printed on the packaging or in the operating instructions for the remote-controlled system, the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

For any additional questions, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Programming the integrated universal remote control

Functional requirements

To program the integrated universal remote control, the following functional requirements must be met:

- To ensure optimum range of the integrated universal remote control, the hand-held transmitter's battery must be fully charged at the time of programming.
- The vehicle is parked within range of the remote-controlled system.
- There are no persons or objects in the area around the remote-controlled system.
- Standby state is switched on.

Programming individual buttons

1. Select desired button on interior mirror:
   - Program an available button:

     Press the button.
   - Program a button that is already in use:

     Press and hold the button for approx. 20 seconds.

     The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
2. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the remote-controlled system at a distance of approx. 1 to 3 in / 3 to 8 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror.

   The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter and can be found in the operating instructions for the remote-controlled system.
3. Press and hold the button on the hand-held transmitter until the LED on the interior mirror illuminates green. Programming is complete.

If programming could not be completed, the LED may react in different ways:

- LED flashes green: The hand-held transmitter has been detected but programming is not complete. Continue with the specific features for rolling code radio systems.
- If the LED does not illuminate green after 60 seconds, programming could not be completed. Repeat the programming procedure.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Refer to information on synchronization in the operating instructions for the remote-controlled system.

Synchronization is easier with the aid of a second person.

1. Program the desired button on the interior mirror.
2. Press the synchronize button on the remote-controlled system, e.g., on the garage door.
3. Within 30 seconds, press and hold the programmed button on the interior mirror for approx. 3 seconds.

   When synchronization is complete, the programmed function is performed, e.g., opening the garage door.

   If the function is not performed, repeat this step up to three times, if neces-

sary, until the synchronization is complete and the programmed function is performed as desired.

Operation

After programming, the remote-controlled system can be operated with the button on the interior mirror.

Press and hold the desired button on the interior mirror within range of the remote-controlled system until the function activates.

The interior mirror LED illuminates green while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting a button assignment

The programming for the interior mirror buttons can be deleted, e.g., before selling the vehicle.

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approx. 10 seconds until the LED flashes green.

All stored button assignments will be deleted.

Sun visor

Glare shield

To prevent glare, fold the sun visor up or down.

Glare shield from the side

Folding the sun visor in/out

To prevent glare from the side window, proceed as follows:

1. Fold down the sun visor.
2. Detach the sun visor from its holder and swing it toward the side window.

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

Sockets

Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when standby or drive-ready state is turned on.

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Safety information

WARNING

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags such as portable navigation devices can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior while unfolding. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

WARNING

If metal objects fall or are plugged into electronic interfaces, e.g., sockets or USB ports, these objects can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure to prevent metal objects from falling or being plugged into electronic interfaces. Close the socket again after use, e.g., with the socket cover.

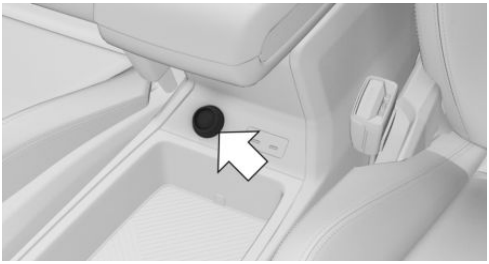
WARNING

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery from sockets in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12V electrical system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

Unsuitable connectors or exceeding the maximum power consumption can damage the socket and the vehicle electrical system. There is a risk of property damage. Only use devices with suitable connectors. Make sure that the maximum power consumption of all sockets is not exceeded.

Front center console



A socket is provided on the center console under a cover. Pull off the cover before using the socket.

In the cargo area

A socket is provided on the right side of the cargo area under a cover. Open the cover before using the socket.

USB port

Principle

Mobile devices can be charged via USB cable using the USB port.

General information

The range of functions of the USB port is indicated by an icon.

Icon	Meaning
	Compatible mobile devices are supplied with charging current.

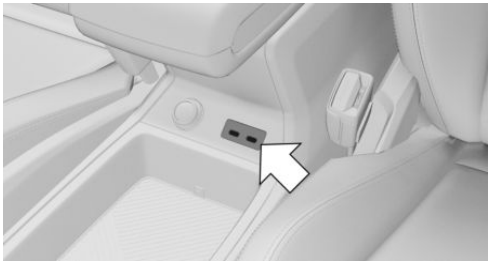
Safety information

WARNING

If metal objects fall or are plugged into electronic interfaces, e.g., sockets or USB ports, these objects can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure to prevent metal objects from falling or being plugged into electronic in-

terfaces. Close the socket again after use, e.g., with the socket cover.

Front center console

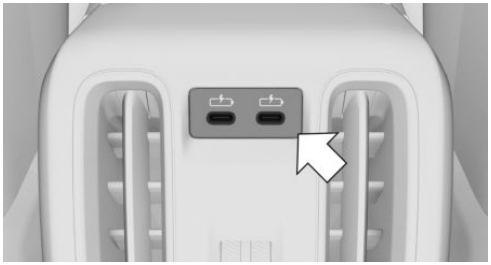


Two USB ports are located on the front center console.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging mobile devices.
- Charging power: Max. 15 W per connection.

Rear center console



Depending on vehicle equipment, the back of the center console will have one or two USB ports.

Properties:

- USB port Type C.
- For charging mobile devices.
- Charging power: Max. 15 W per connection.

Functional requirements

To use a USB connection, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The mobile device must support the maximum charging current of the USB port.
- Compatible device with USB port.

Connecting the device

When connecting the device to the USB port, note the following:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB port.
- If necessary, use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the mobile device from mechanical damage.
- Do not expose the mobile device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g., very high temperatures. See the device operating instructions.

Non-compatible USB devices

The following USB devices are not suitable for connecting to the vehicle:

- Devices such as fans or bulbs.
- Devices with a power consumption of more than 3 A at 5 V.

Wireless charging tray

Principle

The wireless charging tray is used to wirelessly charge Qi-certified smartphones.

Different charging powers, e.g., fast charging, are supported depending on the smartphone.

When inserting the smartphone to be charged, make sure that there is nothing

between the smartphone to be charged and the wireless charging tray.

The charging process is shown by the charge indicator on the Interaction Unit.

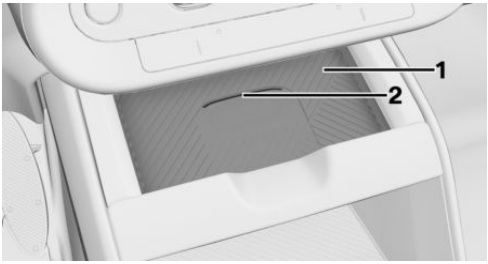
Safety information

WARNING

When charging a device in the Wireless Charging tray, any metal objects in the tray with this device may become very hot. Storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards for transmitting signals, may not function correctly when placed together on the tray with the device. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects on the tray with the device.

Overview

The wireless charging tray is located in the center console.



1 Wireless charging tray
2 Ventilation opening

Functional requirements

To use the wireless charging tray, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The smartphone being charged must be Qi-certified.
- The vehicle is set to standby.
- Charging is enabled.
- The smartphone does not exceed the maximum dimensions of approx. 6.69 x 3.34 x 0.7 in/170 x 85 x 18 mm.
- The smartphone being charged has been placed in the center of the wireless charging tray. The smartphone display is facing up.

Activating/deactivating charging

1. To activate/deactivate charging, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "System settings" / "Wireless Charging tray" / "Wireless charging".
2. Select the desired setting.

Inserting a smartphone

Place the smartphone in the center of the wireless charging tray, with the display facing up.

Forgotten warning

Principle

A warning may be issued if a smartphone is forgotten in the Wireless Charging tray when the vehicle is exited.

The Forgotten Warning is displayed on the Interaction Unit.

Enable/Disable Forgotten Warning

1. To activate/deactivate the Forgotten Warning, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "System settings" / "Wireless Charging tray" / "Mobile phone reminder".
2. Select the desired setting.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

System limits

The charge current may be reduced or charging may be temporarily interrupted in the wireless charging tray in the following situations:

- Due to excessive temperatures of the wireless charging tray and smartphone.
- If there are objects between the smartphone and wireless charging tray.
- If storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards for signal transmission, are located between the smartphone and wireless charging tray.
- By protective sleeves.
- Due to add-on parts for the smartphone, e.g., holders.
- By configuring the smartphone settings, e.g., for charging. Follow the instructions given on the Interaction Unit and smartphone, where applicable.

Interior camera

Principle

The interior camera can be used to record the vehicle interior.

Before the interior camera can be used for the first time, the recording function and, if necessary, data transfer must be enabled on the Interaction Unit. Additional activation may be required for some system functions.

Two infrared light sources next to the camera lens illuminate while the interior camera is active. Infrared light sources may be visible, depending on lighting conditions.

The interior camera can provide the following functions:

- Interior camera function.
- Media can be recorded, saved, and played.
- Remote Inside View.

  The vehicle interior can be recorded using the MINI App.
- Anti-Theft Recorder.

  If the alarm system is triggered, the vehicle interior is automatically recorded. Recordings can be shown using the MINI App.

Follow applicable legal requirements when using this system.

Data protection

General information

The permissibility of making and evaluating recordings for the interior camera depends on the applicable regulations of the country in which the system is to be used. The user is responsible for the use of the system and compliance with the respective regulations.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you verify there are no statutory or regulatory restrictions on using the system in your region or country prior to initial use. In addition, the laws with respect to use of the system should be verified in regular intervals, especially when borders are frequently crossed.

Other users and occupants of the vehicle must be informed about the system. In addition, information about the system is required when handing off the vehicle.

Data transfer and data storage

Whether recording data will be sent or stored depends on the recording function.

The following applies for the interior camera function:

- Data is sent to a mobile device. It must be possible to connect to the vehicle over Wi-Fi.
- Data is saved to the vehicle and assigned to the MINI ID or driver profile.

The following applies for Remote Inside View:

- Data is sent to a mobile device via the MINI App. The MINI App must be linked to the MINI Connected account.
- Data is saved to the MINI App and, after data is sent, to the mobile device.

The following applies for the Anti-Theft Recorder:

- Data is sent to a mobile device via the MINI App. The MINI App must be linked to the MINI Connected account.
- Data is saved to the vehicle and, after data is sent, to the mobile device.

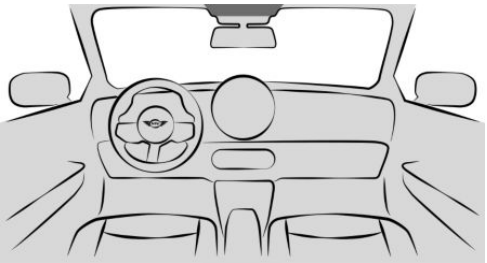
More information on the scope and content of data processing is available online in the MINI Connected privacy notices or service descriptions.

Occupying the seats

The interior camera is also used to detect occupied seats.

The interior camera turns on automatically at regular intervals when all doors are closed. This system analyzes the vehicle interior to detect which seats are occupied. No media recordings are made in the process.

Overview



The interior camera is located in the headliner.

Additional information:

Around the headliner, refer to page 35.

Functional requirements

To use the interior camera function, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- The camera is activated.

To send recordings to mobile devices, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Data transfer is activated.
- A mobile device is connected to the vehicle via Wi-Fi.

To use Remote Inside View and the Anti-Theft Recorder, the following functional requirements must be met:

- The Privacy Policy has been accepted.
- The MINI App is installed on the mobile device.
- The MINI App is linked to the MINI Connected account.
- The vehicle is parked and locked.
- The Anti-Theft Recorder can only be used if vehicle is equipped with an alarm system.

Ensure that the faces of occupants are visible and are not partially or completely covered, for instance by face masks.

Additional information:

Data protection, refer to page 61.

Activating/deactivating interior camera

The interior camera can record and send data when activated, then be deactivated.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Interior camera" / "Settings".
2. Select the desired setting.

Interior camera

Recording mode

Recording mode	Function
"Single photo"	Shortly after triggering, a photo will be taken.
"Smile"	When the system detects a smile, a picture will be taken.
"Self-timer (3 sec.)"	After the timer has expired, a photo will be taken.
"Burst mode"	Shortly after triggering, a series of pictures will be taken.

Take picture

1. To take a photo, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Interior camera" / "Camera".
2. Select the desired recording mode.
3. Trigger a photo.

Depending on the recording mode selected, photos are taken shortly after being triggered, when a smile is detected, or when the timer elapses.

For burst shots, the series of pictures will be displayed as a preview.

Recording video

1. To take a video, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Interior camera" / "Camera".
2. Select the recording mode for video recording.
3. Start the video recording.

   You can only record video for a certain time.

Displaying and managing recordings

Saved recordings can be played, sent, and deleted in the vehicle.

In some national-market versions, recordings are only shown on the Interaction Unit for up to approx. 2 mph /3 km/h for safety purposes.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Interior camera" / "Gallery".
2. Select the desired recording.
3. Select the desired setting.

Scan the QR code shown on the Interaction Unit to send recordings to a mobile device. The recording is transferred when the pop-up on the mobile device is opened. The mobile device must be connected to the vehicle via Wi-Fi.

Settings

1. To configure the settings for the interior camera, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "All" / "Interior camera" / "Settings".
2. Select the desired setting.

Remote Inside View

With Remote Inside View, recordings of the vehicle interior can be played on a mobile device using the MINI App. The vehicle interior can be checked, e.g., for forgotten items.

The function is not suitable for monitoring people or animals left behind.

Anti-Theft Recorder

The Anti-Theft Recorder automatically records the vehicle interior when the alarm system is triggered. The MINI App sends a notification when a recording is being taken. The recording can be shown on a mobile device.

Up to three recordings can be saved to the vehicle and synchronized with the MINI App. If the vehicle is reset to factory settings, recordings saved to the vehicle are deleted.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Storage compartments

Principle

The vehicle has various options for storing or stowing objects, e.g., the glove compartment or door storage compartments.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

WARNING

Breakable objects such as glass bottles or glasses can break in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

WARNING

Open flaps of the storage compartments, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest, protrude into the interior when folded open and may be in the way of an airbag that deploys. In addition, objects in the open storage compartment can be thrown into the vehicle interior during the trip, for instance, in the event of an accident or when braking or making an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Always close storage compartments immediately after use.

WARNING

Anti-slip mats and similar underlays can damage the instrument panel. Attached objects could come loose. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Glove compartment

Overview

The glove compartment is located at the bottom of the instrument panel on the front passenger's side.

Opening the glove compartment

To open the glove compartment, pull the glove compartment handle.

Closing the glove compartment

To close the glove compartment, press the glove compartment lid up until it snaps into place.

Locking the glove compartment

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

After the glove compartment has been locked, the vehicle key can be given to someone without the integrated key, for example, when the car is being parked by a parking attendant.

Additional information:

Integrated key, refer to page 69.

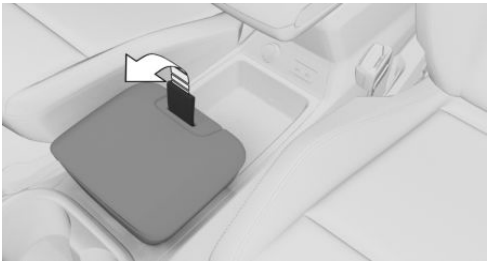
Storage tray in center console

Overview

The storage compartments are located in the center console.

Opening the storage compartment

To open the storage compartment, proceed as follows:



Use the loop on the storage compartment to open the lid, arrow.

Closing the storage compartment

To close the storage compartment, press the lid down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

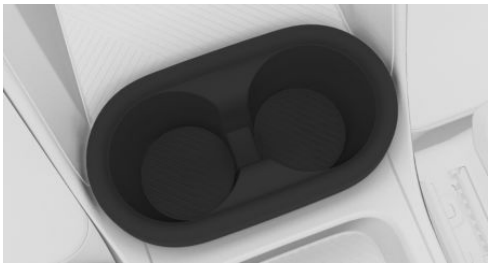
WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding.

There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

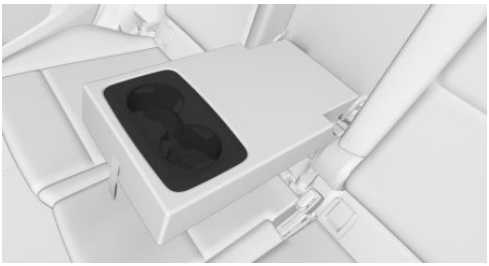
Do not force objects into the cup holder. Make sure that drink containers are secured firmly in the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Clean up spilled liquids immediately. Do not transport hot beverages.

Overview



The center console includes two cup holders.

Overview



Two cup holders are provided in the rear center armrest.

Rear cup holder

Safety information

WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding.

There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

Do not force objects into the cup holder. Make sure that drink containers are secured firmly in the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Clean up spilled liquids immediately. Do not transport hot beverages.

Coat hooks

Safety information

WARNING

Clothing articles on the coat hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. When suspending clothing articles from the coat hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

WARNING

Improper use of the coat hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the coat hooks.

Overview

The coat hooks are located on the rear grab handles in the headliner.

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Loading

Principle

When loading the vehicle, items and cargo must be stowed and secured properly. Do not exceed the permissible weights and loads.

Safety information

WARNING

High gross vehicle weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden tire pressure loss. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing directional stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Note the permissible load-carrying capacity of the tires, and do not exceed the gross vehicle weight.

WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

WARNING

Improperly stowed objects can slip and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

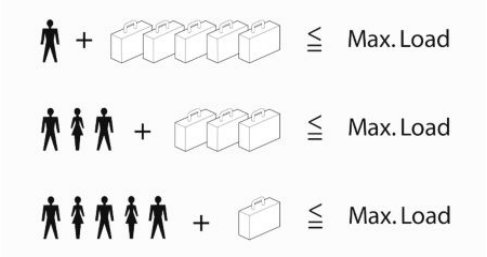
Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400–750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Payload



The maximum permissible payload is the sum of the weight of all occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

To stow and secure cargo, note the following:

- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the upper edge of the backrests.
- If stowing sufficiently large items in the cargo area, fold down the rear seat backrests completely.
- Fasten straps, etc. for securing the load to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.
- Small, light-weight cargo: Secure with tensioning/draw straps or with a cargo area partition net.
- Larger, heavy cargo: Secure with cargo straps.
- Stow particularly heavy cargo as far forward as possible, directly behind and below the rear seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer seat belts in the opposite buckle.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

Principle

Lashing eyes are devices used to secure loads. Depending on vehicle equipment, two lashing eyes are provided in the cargo area.

General information

To secure cargo, attach suitable devices, e.g., lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps, or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes.

Overview

The lashing eyes are located on the side panels in the cargo area.

Multifunction hook

Principle

Lightweight objects can be hung on the multifunction hooks in the cargo area.

Safety information

WARNING

Improper use of the multifunction hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects from the multifunction hooks. Heavy luggage in the cargo area must be properly secured.

Overview

Depending on vehicle equipment, multifunction hooks are provided on the left and right side of the cargo area.

Net

Depending on vehicle equipment, there is a net on the left side of the cargo area.

Smaller items can be stored behind the net. To transport larger objects, slide the net down.

Storage compartment on the right side

There is a storage compartment on the right side of the cargo area.

Cargo area floor

Principle

To stow cargo, a storage compartment is provided under the cargo area floor. The cargo area floor can be folded up and removed.

Safety information

WARNING

Improper use of the cargo area floor can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

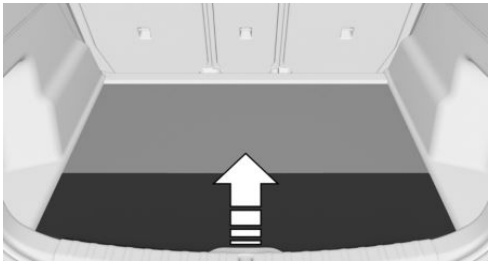
- Do not use the cargo area floor to separate the cargo area and vehicle interior in the sense of a luggage net.
- Only use the cargo area floor in the folded-up position when the rear seat backrests are folded back and locked.

- Fold down the cargo area floor before driving off.
- Always secure cargo against slipping, e.g., using straps, belts, and lashing eyes.

NOTICE

The storage space under the cargo area floor is only suitable for soft objects. Hard objects may result in damage to the vehicle electrical system in the event of an accident. There is a risk of property damage. Only stow soft objects under the cargo area floor.

Opening the storage compartment



To open the storage compartment, hold the rear edge of the cargo area floor and fold it forward.

Closing the storage compartment

To close the storage compartment, fold the cargo area floor backward and push it down.

Folding up the cargo area floor

Without mild hybrid technology:

The cargo area floor can be folded up as follows:

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo area floor forward.
2. Fold up the cargo area floor if it has been folded forward.

With mild hybrid technology:

The cargo area floor cannot be folded up.

Additional information:

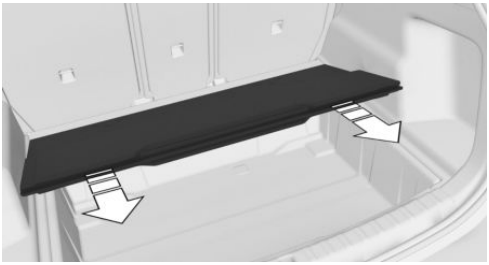
Mild hybrid technology, refer to page 391.

Removing the cargo area floor

Without mild hybrid technology:

The cargo area floor can be removed as follows:

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo area floor forward.
2. Slightly raise the cargo area floor.
3. Pull the cargo area floor backward, out of the mounts, then remove.



With mild hybrid technology:

The cargo area floor cannot be removed. Do not remove the cargo area floor.

Inserting the cargo area floor

Proceed in reverse order to insert the cargo area floor:

1. Place the folded cargo area floor flat against the mounts.
2. Push the cargo area floor forward into the mounts. The cargo area floor engages noticeably.

Enlarging the cargo area

Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment version, the cargo area can be enlarged as follows:

- The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position using the cargo setting.
- The rear seat backrests can be folded down.

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear.

Safety information

WARNING

There is a danger of jamming with folding down the rear seat backrests. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Before starting a trip, fold back the seat backrest and lock it.

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Cargo position

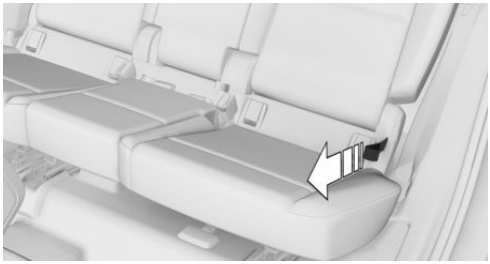
Principle

The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position individually. An adjustment in several tilt stages is possible as needed.

Adjusting the loading position

To adjust the loading position of the rear seat backrests, proceed as follows:

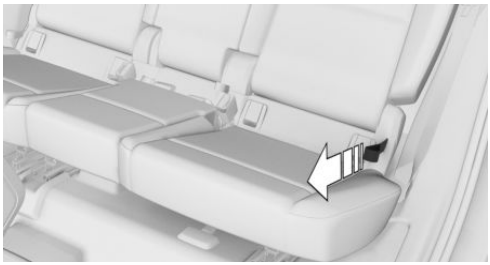
1. Pull the loop on the side of the seat.



2. Adjust the loading position of the rear seat backrest as necessary.
3. Engage the rear seat backrest.

Folding down the rear seat backrest

To fold in the rear seat backrests, proceed as follows:

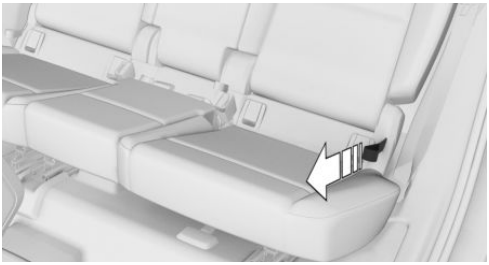


Pull the loop on the side of the seat and fold the rear seat backrest forward.

Folding back the rear seat backrest

To fold back the rear seat backrest, proceed as follows:

1. Fold the rear seat backrest down. The rear seat backrest first engages in the loading position.
2. Pull the loop on the side of the seat.



3. Fold back the rear seat backrest into the sitting position and snap it into place.

Cargo cover

Principle

The cargo cover separates the cargo area from the seat rows and is used to secure cargo. The cargo cover can be removed.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

WARNING

An incorrectly inserted cargo cover can be thrown about the car's interior such as in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure the cargo cover is securely engaged in the brackets.

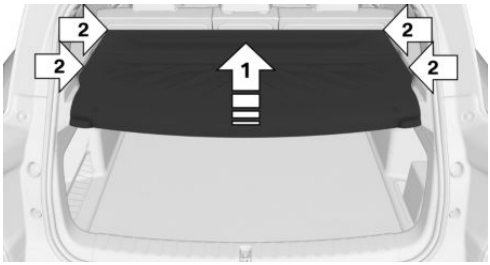
WARNING

Body parts can become trapped when the folding cargo cover is operated. There is a risk of injury. When operating the folding cargo cover, make sure that the travel path of the cover is clear.

Removing the cargo cover

The cover can be removed to load bulky luggage.

1. Detach the retaining straps on the tailgate.
2. Grasp the cover with both hands on the rear edge and lift slightly, arrow 1.



3. Firmly pull the cover backward out of the brackets, arrows 2.

Inserting the cargo cover

Install the cargo cover in reverse order. Make sure that the cargo cover is positioned correctly in the brackets and that it is engaged.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Break-in procedures

General information

Moving parts need to work together smoothly.

The following break-in procedures will help the vehicle achieve a long service life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

WARNING

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km, do not exceed the maximum engine speed and vehicle speed:

– 4,500 rpm and 100 mph /160 km/h.

Avoid full throttle or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km, the engine speed and the vehicle speed can be gradually increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake disks and brake pads must be broken in to avoid the conditions that can lead to brake noise. Drive carefully for the first approx. 300 miles/500 km.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedure should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed.

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

WARNING

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust gas or water may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

Drive with the tailgate closed. If it is necessary to drive with the tailgate open, note the following:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the blower output.
- Drive moderately.
- Secure the tailgate, e.g., with a tensioning belt.

Ground clearance

NOTICE

If the ground clearance is insufficient, e.g., underground garage entrances, speed bumps or curbs, the ground may come into contact with vehicle parts, e.g., spoiler, and the underbody. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available. Adjust your driving style to the respective conditions.

Driving at high speeds

WARNING

Damage to vehicle components can negatively impact handling at high speeds. This includes, among other things, tires, underbody and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Have damage corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Do not drive at high speeds until the damage is corrected.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe, when hot.

WARNING

If combustible materials such as leaves or grass come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts while driving, in Neutral or during parking.

Exhaust gas particulate filter

Principle

The exhaust gas particulate filter collects soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particulate filter as necessary.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with an exhaust particulate filter. For more information on the exhaust particulate filter, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The following may occur when cleaning for several minutes:

- The combustion engine may not run as smoothly for a short time.
- A somewhat higher RPM is necessary to reach usual power development.
- Fuel consumption may be higher. The higher fuel consumption is included as mean value in the display for the current consumption.
- The exhaust system is emitting a small amount smoke, even after the engine is shut off.
- There is audible noise, e.g., radiator fan is running, even several minutes after the engine is shut off.

Overrun of the radiator fan for several minutes is normal even after short trips.

Cleaning the exhaust gas particulate filter while driving

The self-cleaning function of the diesel particulate filter takes place automatically. There are no other measures, e.g., an adjustment of the driving style.

Preventing condensation in drive system

Various driving profiles ensure that the drive system functions properly. A driving style with consistently low loads can negatively affect overall functionality, e.g., condensation forming in the drive system. Occasionally running the engine longer with higher loads can counteract this.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, observe the following:

- Only drive through when the combustion engine is running.
- To prevent the combustion engine from being switched off by the Auto Start/Stop function, engage selector lever position S or L, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The combustion engine also does not shut off in selector lever position R.
- Drive through calm water only.
- Drive through water only up to a maximum height of 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- Drive through water at walking speed, max. 3 mph /5 km/h.

Additional information:

Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 122.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through deep water, the water can penetrate the engine compartment, the electrical system, or the transmission. There is a risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water

level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

Safety information

WARNING

Light but constant pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear, and even failure of the brake system. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Avoid placing excessive load on the brake system. Do not continuously depress the brake pedal and accelerator pedal at the same time. Do not let your foot rest on the brake pedal.

Antilock Braking System

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System as a standard feature. Perform emergency braking as required by the situation. To achieve the best possible braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering movement.

Sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System is regulating.

Objects in the travel path of the pedals

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

- Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell.
- Use (carpet) floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely attached to the floor.
- Do not use loose floor mats, and do not layer multiple floor mats on top of one another.
- Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals.
- Make sure that floor mats are securely reattached after removing them, e.g., when cleaning.

Pedal feel when driving off

After turning on drive-ready state from idle state, the pedal may feel unusual, e.g., the pedal travel path may feel short or long. After the brake pedal has been fully released, the pedal will feel as usual again.

Driving in wet conditions

In case of wet roads, exposure to road salt or in heavy rain, gently depress the brake pedal every few kilometers. Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way the brake power will be available when you need it.

Hills

Principle

Use the braking effect of the drive system on downhill gradients.

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat and reduce braking effect.

You can increase the engine braking effect by downshifting, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

In Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may be restricted or not available. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not attempt to drive in Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off.

Brake disk corrosion

Corrosion on the brake disks and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended stationary periods.
- Low load.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake disks will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes when braking slowly - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

Condensation may form in the vehicle air-conditioning system.

Condensation escaping under the vehicle is not a cause for concern.

Driving on poor roads

Principle

Because of its greater ground clearance, the vehicle can be driven on a variety of road types and qualities.

Safety information

NOTICE

Objects in unpaved areas, for instance stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.

When driving on poor roads

For your own safety and the safety of passengers as well as your vehicle, when driving on poor-quality roads, note the following:

- Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving off.
- Do not take risks when driving.
- Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road, the slower your speed should be.
- When driving on steep uphill or downhill gradients, add engine oil up to near the max. level mark.
- For steep downhill driving, use Hill Descent Control.
- If necessary, activate Trail Mode under MINI Modes. Trail Mode provides helpful information, e.g., the lateral and longitudinal inclination of the vehicle.
- Do not allow the vehicle body or underbody to come into contact with the ground.

- To ensure the best possible traction when driving off, activate driving off support as necessary.
- With ALL4: If the wheels continue to spin, press the accelerator pedal with sufficient force so that the driving stability control systems can distribute the driving power to the wheels.

Additional information:

- Hill Descent Control, refer to page 219.
- Drive-off support, refer to page 219.
- MINI Modes, refer to page 131.

After a trip on poor roads

To ensure driving safety, check the wheels and tires for damage after driving on poor-quality roads. Clear heavy soiling from the body.

If the vehicle body or floor has come into contact with the ground, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Driving on racetracks

General information

Before and after driving on a racetrack, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. Use of the vehicle in M sport or motorsport type competition is an improper use of the vehicle and may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Safety information

WARNING

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motorsport-like competition. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the vehicle for motorsport or motorsport-like competitions.

Sport tires

The vehicle manufacturer recommends using special sport tires, e.g., high-performance tires. Sports tires are matched to the special requirements of a sporty driving style. For more information on sport tires, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Roof bars

Principle

Roof bars are devices that are mounted on the vehicle to facilitate the transport of luggage. When driving with a roof bar, various specifications, e.g., correct load, must be followed.

General information

The roof bar can only be installed if the vehicle has a roof rail.

Roof racks are available as optional accessories.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Installation

Follow the installation instructions for roof bars when installing.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a significant effect on vehicle handling and steering.

When loading and driving, note the following:

- Do not exceed the permissible roof load, axle load, and gross vehicle weight.
- Distribute the roof load evenly.
- The roof load should not extend past the vehicle sides.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure roof luggage firmly, for instance using tie-down straps.
- Do not let objects project into the swiveling range of the tailgate.
- Drive carefully. Do not drive off or brake suddenly or take corners at speed.

Trailer and rear carrier

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Using trailers and rear carriers

Principle

The trailer and rear carrier, e.g., rear bicycle rack, can be connected to the vehicle. When driving with a trailer or rear carrier, certain values and specifications for tongue weight, load, tire pressure, the exterior mirrors, and electrical consumption must be followed.

General information

For safe trailer operation, comply with all regulations and the national legal requirements in the respective state.

The permissible trailer load, gross axle weight rating, drawbar nose weight, and gross vehicle weight rating are specified in the technical data.

Safety information

WARNING

Exceeding or falling below specified limit values, e.g., weight, distance traveled, or speed, can result in damage and malfunctions as well as put health at risk. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Comply with the specified limit values.

Tongue weight

The towing vehicle's maximum payload is reduced by the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight. The tongue weight increases the vehicle weight. Do not exceed the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle.

Loading

To load the trailer, distribute the cargo as evenly as possible over the loading surface.

Stow the cargo as low and close to the trailer axle as possible. A low center of gravity in the trailer increases the driving safety of the entire trailer.

Do not exceed the gross trailer weight and permissible trailer load of the vehicle. The smaller value applies in each case.

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, follow the tire pressure specifications for the vehicle and trailer.

For the vehicle, the tire pressure for higher loads applies.

For the trailer, the specifications of the manufacturer apply.

After correcting the tire pressure or connecting or disconnecting a trailer, reinitialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Additional information:

- Tire pressure specifications, refer to page 342.
- Flat tire monitor, refer to page 361.
- Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 353.

Exterior mirrors

Exterior mirrors, which bring both rear edges of the trailer into the driver's field of vision, are available as optional accessories from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Electrical consumption

General information

To conserve the vehicle battery and reduce electrical consumption, do not keep electrical components on for long periods of time when operating a camper.

Trailer power consumption

The power of the electrical loads in the trailer via unswitched supply must not exceed 140 W.

Before the start of a trip, make sure that the trailer lighting is working properly.

The power of the trailer lighting must not exceed the following values:

- Turn signals/Brake lights: 54 W per side.
- Tail lights: 100 W total.
- Reversing lights: 54 W total.

Care for trailer hitch mount

Depending on vehicle equipment, keep the trailer hitch mount clean.

Regularly treat the bearing points and sliding surfaces with resin-free grease or oil.

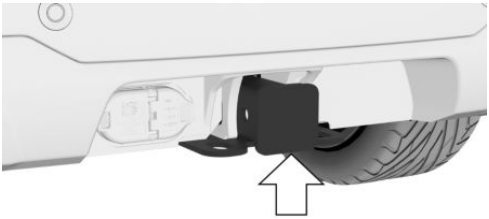
Before using steam/high-pressure cleaners on the vehicle, remove the ball head and insert the cover into the mount.

Mount for trailer hitch

Principle

The trailer hitch mount is located at the rear of the vehicle and is used to mount a trailer hitch.

General information



The mount for the trailer hitch is located on the rear of the vehicle, see arrow.

Information on suitable trailer hitches is provided on the underside of the mount cross member.

Follow the instructions for maintaining the trailer hitch mount.

Additional information:

Caring for special components, refer to page 404.

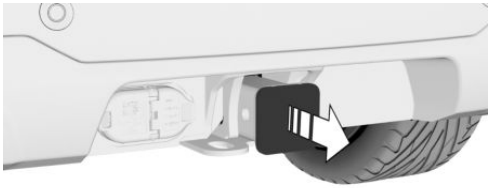
Safety information

WARNING

When driving, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., due to the exhaust system, brakes or radiator. Contact with the hot components can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do

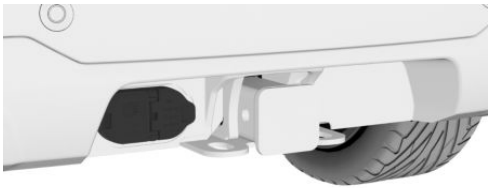
not touch hot components. Do not perform work in the vicinity of hot components until after they have cooled down.

Removing the cover



Pull the cover to the rear out of the mount and stow it in your vehicle.

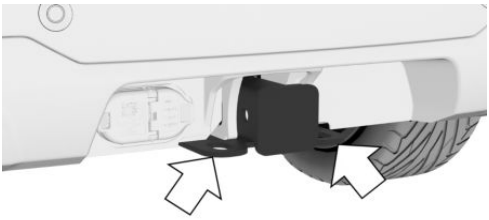
Trailer power socket



The trailer power socket is located to the left of the trailer hitch mount.

Loops for trailer safety chain

General information



Two eyes can be found on the mount for the trailer hitch for attaching the trailer safety chain.

Safety information

WARNING

If the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain is not fastened correctly, the trailer may unintentionally come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before driving with a trailer, correctly couple the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain to the eye of the trailer hitch.

WARNING

If the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain is not fastened correctly, the safety line or safety chain may get caught and cause damage to the vehicle or trailer. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before driving with a trailer, correctly couple the trailer safety line or the trailer safety chain to the eye of the trailer hitch. Ensure that the safety line or safety chain can move freely and is not dragging on the ground.

Driving with trailers or rear carriers

Principle

To drive with a trailer or rear carrier, your vehicle must meet certain requirements, e.g., trailer towing is activated. In certain driving situations, you must follow given instructions for correct handling of your trailer or rear carrier, e.g., when driving uphill or downhill.

When driving with a trailer or rear carrier, some driver assistance systems may be restricted or not available. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable. The driving stability control systems, e.g., Anti-lock Braking System, are still available.

Additional information:

- Driver assistance systems, refer to page 222.
- Driving stability control systems, refer to page 216.

Safety information

WARNING

If a trailer hitch is faulty, a trailer cannot be sufficiently secured. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving with a faulty trailer hitch.

WARNING

Depending on the design and loading of trailers, they may begin swinging at speeds exceeding approx. 50 mph /80 km/h. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

Adapt your speed when driving with a trailer. Immediately brake in the case of swinging. Apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

WARNING

The tire pressure must be adjusted to the increased axle load in trailer towing. Driving with too low tire pressure can damage the tires. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 60 mph /100 km/h. Increase the tire pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar/3 psi. Note the maximum possible tire pressure indicated on the tire.

Using a trailer or rear carrier

General information

When the trailer power socket is occupied, a menu appears on the Interaction Unit. The menu can be used to specify whether the vehicle is being driven with a trailer or rear carrier.

Some driver assistance systems may have limited functionality or may malfunction when driving with a trailer or rear carrier, e.g., rear bicycle rack, and an unoccupied trailer power socket. To avoid malfunctions, activate use of the trailer or rear carrier manually.

When the trailer socket is occupied or trailer towing is activated, some driver assistance systems may be restricted or not available. A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Safety information

WARNING

If the settings are configured incorrectly in the menu, some driver assistance systems may have limited functionality or malfunction. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the corresponding setting is enabled when using the trailer or rear carrier.

Activating/deactivating trailer towing manually

Trailer towing can be activated or deactivated manually.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Trailer mode" / "Type".
2. Select whether you are driving with or without a trailer/rear carrier.

Maximum speed

The maximum permitted speed for the vehicle-trailer combination can be set when towing a trailer. Depending on vehicle equipment, this setting is considered by speed limit systems.

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Trailer mode" / "Max. speed".
2. Select the desired speed.

Additional information:

- Speed Limit Info, refer to page 222.
- Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 246.

Uphill grades

Permissible gradients

Trailer towing is permitted up to gradients of 12 %.

If higher trailer loads are approved at a later point in time, the permitted gradient limit is 8 %.

Driving off on uphill grades

When driving off on gradients with a vehicle-trailer combination, use the parking brake to prevent the vehicle-trailer combination from rolling backwards.

1. On the switch cluster, press and release the parking brake button shortly before driving off.

   The parking brake is set.
2. Step on the accelerator pedal sufficiently to drive off.

   The parking brake releases automatically when the accelerator pedal is pressed.

Hills

A car-trailer combination has the tendency to swing more readily on hills.

Manually downshift to the next-lowest gear before driving on a hill and drive downhill slowly.

Trailer Assistant

Principle

The Trailer Assistant helps when reversing with a trailer.

With the Trailer Assistant, the steering wheel is not used to steer the vehicle-trailer combination when reversing. The vehicle-

trailer combination is steered by continuously entering and correcting the articulation angle on the Interaction Unit or using the buttons for adjusting the exterior mirrors. The articulation angle is the angle between the vehicle and trailer. This angle is thus the desired direction of travel for the vehicle-trailer combination in reverse.

When reversing, the system takes control of steering the front wheels. The driver must control the speed by depressing the accelerator and brake pedals.

In addition, note the information in the Parking assistance systems chapter.

Additional information:

Parking assistance systems, refer to page 251.

Vehicle features and options

This system may not be available in the owned vehicle, e.g. due to the selected optional equipment, the national-market version or the option for later enabling and software updates. This also applies to individual functions of the system.

For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Safety information

WARNING

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING

The system can steer over or onto curbs, which can result in an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Functional requirements

To use the Trailer Assistant, the following functional requirements must be met:

- A trailer is attached and connected.
- The system is taught for the trailer to be used.
- Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, trailer towing is activated.
- The Rear View Camera is clean and clear.
- Vehicles with removable trailer hitch: Only use suitable accessories approved by the vehicle manufacturer.

Teaching the Trailer Assistant

The teach-in process for the Trailer Assistant must be performed again whenever a trailer is hitched. The Trailer Assistant will begin the teach-in process automatically once it is electrically connected to the vehicle or, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, trailer towing has been activated on the Interaction Unit.

If the Trailer Assistant is started on the Interaction Unit during the teach-in process, a message may appear stating that the teach-in process has not completed yet. The mes-

sage prompts the driver to drive forward at low speed while also steering.

Once the teach-in process is complete, the desired parking maneuver can be performed with the Trailer Assistant.

Turning operating tips on/off

The Trailer Assistant operating tips provide specific information for operating the system properly. The operating tips can be turned on/off.

1. Select a MINI ID or driver profile on the Interaction Unit.
2. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking" / "Operating tips for Trailer Assistant".

Reversing with the Trailer Assistant

The Trailer Assistant can be used for reversing with a trailer.

1. Attach and connect a trailer to the vehicle or, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, activate trailer towing on the Interaction Unit.

   Starts the teach-in process for the Trailer Assistant.
2. When your vehicle is stopped, press the Park Assist key on the switch cluster or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
3. On the bottom toolbar, select the following function: "Start Trailer Assistant".

   The Rear View Camera display appears with a view of the tow bar and a stylized view of the vehicle with trailer.

   If the teach-in process for the Trailer Assistant has not completed yet, follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.
4. Confirm or turn off operating tips as necessary.
5. If necessary, shift into reverse.
6. Set the desired articulation angle.

   Follow the instructions on the Interaction Unit.
7. Take your hands off the steering wheel and back up carefully by depressing the accelerator and brake pedals.

   The status symbol for the Trailer Assistant illuminates green. The system takes over the steering.

   When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle's surroundings.

   In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over steering.
8. If necessary, adjust the kink angle while driving to correct the direction.
9. Engage selector lever position P when you are finished maneuvering.

Canceling the Trailer Assistant manually

Maneuvering of the car-trailer combination can be aborted manually:

On the bottom toolbar, select the following function: "Cancel".

Canceling the Trailer Assistant automatically

The Trailer Assistant is canceled automatically in situations such as the following:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- When switching from reverse gear to selector lever position D, the Trailer Assistant switches to standby mode.

If reverse gear is engaged again after a short distance, the function is active again.
- During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- When overlaying messages on the Interaction Unit display.
- In case of a slippery surface.
- When the vehicle is rolling such as on a slope.
- In case of changed ambient conditions.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph /10 km/h.

Activating/deactivating trailer safety braking

Trailer safety braking helps prevent the vehicle-trailer combination from rolling away in an uncontrolled way. Whenever the Trailer Assistant is canceled, trailer safety braking is applied and the vehicle is secured at a standstill. Trailer safety braking can be activated or deactivated on the Interaction Unit.

Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Driving settings" / "Driver Assistance" / "Parking" / "Trailer protection braking".

System limits

Speed threshold

The maximum speed is limited to approx. 6 mph /10 km/h.

If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function is interrupted.

A warning is given at a speed of approx. 4 mph /7 km/h.

Functional limitations

The Trailer Assistant may be limited in the following situations:
- Trailers with fifthwheel steering are not supported.
- Accessories on tow bar, e.g., a rear bicycle rack.
- Tow bars and trailers with unusual shapes.
- Unsuitable removable trailer hitches.
- Rear View Camera is dirty or covered.

Additional information:

Cameras, refer to page 36.

Trailer stabilization control

Principle

Trailer stabilization control helps by absorbing the swinging movements of the trailer.

The system detects swinging and automatically brakes the vehicle quickly in order to leave the critical speed range and stabilize the trailer.

General information

If the trailer power socket is occupied but a trailer has not been hitched, the system can also become active in extreme driving situations, e.g., when using a bicycle rack with lighting.

Functional requirement

To use trailer stabilization control, the following functional requirements must be met:
- A trailer is attached.
- The trailer power socket is occupied.
- Vehicle speed must be more than approx. 40 mph /65 km/h.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

System limits

The system cannot intervene or not intervene in time in the following situations, for instance:

- If a trailer jackknifes suddenly, for instance on slippery roads or loose surfaces.
- If a trailer with a high center of gravity tilts, before swinging is detected.
- If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or has malfunctioned.
- When the power consumption of a trailer is too low, for instance due to tail lights with LED technology, to be detected by the system.

Brake controller

A brake controller must be installed in order to use a trailer with electric brakes. Electrically controlled trailer brakes do not work without a brake controller.

WARNING

Connecting the brake controller incorrectly can cause the brake controller or trailer lighting to malfunction. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

It is recommended that the work on the Brake Controller, in particular installation, maintenance and repair, is performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends checking the function of the brake controller before each trip. For safe operation, also observe the operating and safety instructions of the manufacturer of the brake controller.

The maximum current of the brake controller must not exceed 16 A. This allows for the operation of trailers with up to two axles.

Rear carriers

Principle

Rear carriers, e.g., rear bicycle racks, are devices that are mounted on the vehicle in order to help transport cargo.

When driving with a rear carrier, you must follow various specifications, e.g., correct load.

General information

Rear carriers recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle are available as optional accessories.

Rear bicycle racks for a maximum of three bicycles can be used.

Only use rear carriers that are mounted directly on the mount for the trailer hitch.

Safety information

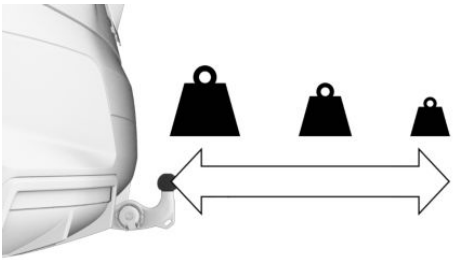
WARNING

Exceeding or falling below specified limit values, e.g., weight, distance traveled, or speed, can result in damage and malfunctions as well as put health at risk. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Comply with the specified limit values.

Installation

Follow the assembly instructions for the rear carrier when installing.

Loading



The gross vehicle weight of the loaded rear carrier depends on how far its center of gravity is from the ball head.

- If the center of gravity is up to 11.8 inches/30 cm from the ball head, the gross weight of the rear carrier must not exceed 165 lbs/75 kg.
- If the center of gravity is 23.5 inches/60 cm from the ball head, the gross weight of the rear carrier must not exceed 77 lbs/35 kg.
- Stow heavy cargo as close as possible to the ball head.
- Fasten cargo securely to the rear carrier, making sure it will not slip.

Before driving

Before starting your trip, make sure that the tail lights on the rear carrier are working.

The maximum output of the rear carrier tail lights should not exceed that of the trailer lighting.

Activate trailer towing when necessary in order to prevent functional limitations or malfunctions of the driver assistance systems.

Additional information:

- Electrical consumption, refer to page 326.
- Driving with trailer or rear carrier, refer to page 328.

Driving with a rear carrier

When loaded, rear carriers move the vehicle's center of gravity, which affects how the vehicle handles and steers.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- Do not exceed the gross axle weight rating and gross vehicle weight.
- Drive cautiously and avoid driving off and braking with jerky movements or fast cornering.

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Reducing fuel consumption

Principle

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

There are some actions you can take to change your fuel consumption and environmental impact:

- Remove unnecessary cargo from the vehicle.
- Remove add-on parts, e.g., a rear carrier, after use.
- Close the windows and glass sunroof while driving.
- Check the tire pressure regularly and increase it as necessary.
- Shut off the engine if the vehicle is to remain stationary for a longer period.
- Select Green Mode or Timeless Mode.
- Practice anticipatory driving and let the vehicle coast more often.
- Deactivate functions that are not required, e.g., rear window heating.
- Have the vehicle serviced regularly.

Coasting

Principle

The drive system allows the vehicle to coast with reduced consumption and minimal deceleration in selector lever position D. This driving condition is referred to as coasting. This reduces fuel consumption.

Vehicles with mild hybrid technology do not consume fuel when coasting.

An anticipatory driving style helps the driver to coast often and enhances the energy-saving effect of coasting.

If you can travel a certain distance without any foreseeable need to brake, it is beneficial to coast.

Coasting is suitable in the following driving situations, for example:

- Coasting on a straight downhill gradient with no obstacles.
- Coasting on a distance without obstacles.

To coast efficiently, avoid late or heavy braking.

Coasting is automatically adapted to the respective driving situation.

Depending on their equipment, vehicles that have mild hybrid technology do not display the engine speed on the tachometer when coasting.

Functional requirements

To coast, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Selector lever position D is engaged.
- The brake pedal is not being depressed.
- The accelerator pedal is not being pressed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

- Green Mode is selected.
- Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

This function is available in the speed range from approx. 16 mph / 25 km/h to 100 mph / 160 km/h.

Operation via shift paddles

Principle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the Coasting mode can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

To activate coasting mode, pull the right shift paddle and hold it briefly.

To deactivate coasting mode, pull the left shift paddle.

System limits

Coasting cannot be used, or can only be used to a limited extent, in the following situations:

- When Active Cruise Control is on.
- If driver assistance system sensors are inoperative, dirty, or covered.

Green Mode

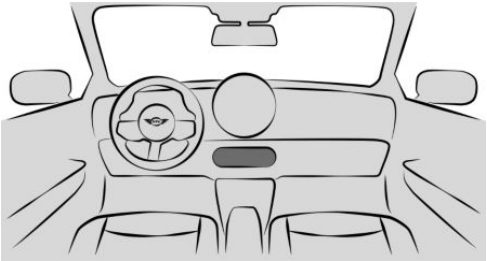
Principle

Green Mode is a drive mode that provides consumption-optimized tuning and anticipatory display.

In addition, the efficiency trainer displays situation dependent notes to assist with an efficient driving style.

The achieved range extension can be displayed as a bonus range on the Interaction Unit.

Overview



The MINI Modes switch is located on the switch cluster and labeled EXPERIENCE.

Selecting the driving mode

On the switch cluster, select Green Mode using the MINI Modes switch.

Configuring Green Mode

1.

To configure Green Mode, select Green Mode using the MINI Modes switch on the switch cluster.
2. Tap the Settings icon on the Interaction Unit.
3. Select the desired setting.

Resetting the settings

1.

To reset the settings for Green Mode, select Green Mode using the MINI Modes switch on the switch cluster.
2. Tap the Settings icon on the Interaction Unit.
3. "Reset settings"

Efficiency trainer

Principle

The Efficiency Coach supports an anticipatory and comfort-oriented driving style. The Efficiency Coach uses map and sensor data to analyze the current driving situation, e.g., preceding vehicles. Based on this information, the driver is promptly instructed to drive in a manner that reduces their consumption.

This system provides various indicators that help the driver to reduce their consumption.

Functional requirements

To use the Efficiency Coach, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Selector lever position D is engaged.
- It may be necessary to activate Experience View in the MINI Modes settings.

Display

General information

When Green Mode is enabled, the view on the Interaction Unit switches to the specific Green Mode view.

In addition, full-screen view and minimalist view contain visualizations for the Efficiency Coach.

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

A green range appears on the power gauge, indicating reduced consumption while driving. Additionally, the bonus range will be displayed.

The bonus range and an animal symbol appear when driving in a manner that reduces consumption, depending on the driving situation.

If the power gauge moves within this green range, the vehicle is being driven with reduced consumption. If the green range turns red and the animal symbol changes, the fuel consumption has increased.

Additional information:

Power gauge, refer to page 148.

Bonus range

A modified driving style helps you extend your driving range.

The extended range is shown as a bonus range on the Interaction Unit.

An increase/decrease in the bonus range is shown by the arrow to the left of the bonus range, providing an indication of the current driving style.

The intervals for resetting the bonus range depend on the settings of the trip data.

Indicator for increased consumption

If the vehicle is not being driven in a manner that reduces its consumption, an icon appears on the Interaction Unit to indicate that the accelerator pedal is being pressed too hard.

For instance, this is displayed in the following situations:

- Excessive acceleration.
- Excessive speed.

In addition, information on the reason for the delay can be displayed.

System limits

The Efficiency Coach may not be available in the following situations, for example:

- When Active Cruise Control is on.
- With trailer towing.
- When the transmission Sport program is activated.

Route Ahead Assistant

Principle

An indicator on the Interaction Unit informs the driver when deceleration will soon be necessary, even if the cause is not yet apparent. Situations requiring vehicle deceleration include, for example: Roundabouts or lower speed limits.

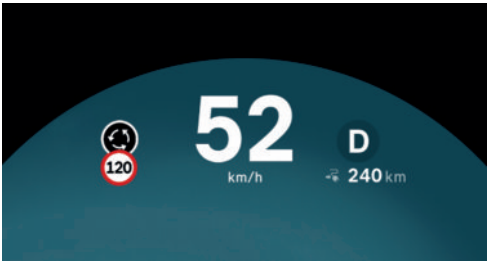
Situation-specific information and the distance to upcoming route segments is shown above the current speed limit on the Interaction Unit.

If an alert is received, the vehicle's speed and its consumption can be reduced using the appropriate accelerator pedal position and coasting until the route section is reached.

This system prompts the driver to begin coasting by shrinking the green range on the power gauge on the Interaction Unit. The blue range on the power gauge remains small until the route segment is reached.

Views on the Interaction Unit

Predictive driving notices are displayed on the Interaction Unit.



The note about a route section ahead is made as recommendation to let the vehicle coast to a halt.

The icon, e.g., to turn, indicates the route section detected.

Icon	Meaning
	Turn.
mph	Speed limit or entering an urban area.
	Roundabout.
EXIT	Exit on roads outside of towns and cities.
	Curve.

System limits

The display of the upcoming route sections is not available in the following situations, for instance:

- The speed limits are temporary and variable, e.g., in construction zones.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- With country-specific restrictions on map based route sections.

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Observe the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, hook the fuel pump nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting the pump nozzle while refilling causes the diesel exhaust fluid to shut off prematurely and reduces fuel vapor recirculation.

The fuel tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may illuminate.

Follow safety regulations posted at the filling station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 377.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling.

Fuel filler cap

General information

If the fuel filler cap is not fitted correctly, the emissions indicator light illuminates.

Additional information:

Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 142.

Safety information

WARNING

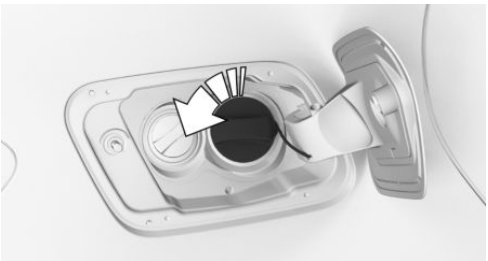
The fuel filler cap's retaining strap can become pinched and crushed when the cap is closed. It will then not be possible to close the fuel filler cap correctly. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the retaining strap does not become

pinched or crushed when closing the fuel filler cap.

Opening the fuel filler cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.

2. Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the mount on the fuel filler flap.

Closing the fuel filler cap

To open the fuel filler cap, proceed as follows:

1. Fit the fuel filler cap and turn it clockwise until it clicks audibly.
2. Press the fuel filler flap in until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical malfunction.

In this case, have the fuel filler flap unlocked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Tire pressure

General information

The tire condition and tire pressure influence the following:

- Tire service life.
- Driving safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

WARNING

A tire with too little or no tire pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Regularly check the tire pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire pressure specifications

In the tire pressure table

The tire pressure table contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for given tire sizes at ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications apply to the tire sizes approved by the vehicle manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle types.

To identify the correct tire pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of the vehicle.
- Maximum speed for driving.

On the Interaction Unit

Current tire pressures and nominal tire pressures for fitted tires can be displayed on the Interaction Unit.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tire sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the mounted tires.

The current tire pressure value is located on each tire.

The reference tire pressure is shown at the bottom of the Interaction Unit.

Checking the tire pressure

General information

The tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Check the tire pressure regularly and correct as necessary.

Tires have a natural, consistent tire pressure loss. The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Functional requirements

Only check the tire pressure when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- A distance traveled of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- If the vehicle has not moved again for at least two hours after a trip.

In the tire pressure table

To check the tire pressure using the tire pressure specifications in the tire pressure table, proceed as follows:

1. Determine the nominal tire pressure for your tires using the information on the door pillar in the driver's door.
2. Check the tire pressure in all four tires, e.g., using a pressure gage.
3. Correct the tire pressure if the current tire pressure deviates from the target tire pressure.
4. Make sure that all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire pressures specified in the tire pressure table only correspond to cold tires or tires at ambient temperature.

If vehicle is equipped with an emergency wheel: Check the tire pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly and correct as necessary.

On the Interaction Unit

To check the tire pressure using the tire pressure information on the Interaction Unit, proceed as follows:

1. Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Tire Pressure Monitor".
2. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
3. Correct the tire pressure if the current tire pressure deviates from the target tire pressure.

The Interaction Unit may not be able to display current tire pressures when the vehicle is stationary. The tire pressure will update after a short drive.

After correcting the tire pressure

If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the tire settings are correct. When using tires not listed in the tire inflation pressure specifications on the Interaction Unit, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

If your vehicle is equipped with the flat tire monitor, reinitialize it.

Tire pressures up to 100 mph /160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph /160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, follow the tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire pressure table and adjust as necessary.

The tire inflation pressure specifications can also be found on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph /160 km/h.

Tire pressure values up to 100 mph / 160 km/h

S ALL4

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire pressure table correspond to cold tires and full load.

Tire size	Front wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI	Rear wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI
225/55 R 18 102 H XL A/S 245/45 R 19 102 H XL A/S 225/55 R 18 102 Y XL 245/45 R 19 102 Y XL 225/55 R 18 102 H XL M+S 245/45 R 19 102 H XL M+S 245/45 R 19 102 V XL	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
245/40 R 20 99 H XL A/S 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL 205/60 R 18 99 H XL M+S 245/40 R 20 99 V XL M+S	2.7 / 39	2.7 / 39
245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	3.1 / 45	3.1 / 45
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 17 103 M	4.2 / 60	4.2 / 60

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

JCW ALL4

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire pressure table correspond to cold tires and full load.

Tire size	Front wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI	Rear wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI
245/45 R 19 102 H XL A/S 245/45 R 19 102 Y XL 225/55 R 18 102 H XL M+S 245/45 R 19 102 H XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
245/40 R 20 99 H XL A/S 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL 205/60 R 18 99 H XL M+S 245/40 R 20 99 V XL M+S	2.7 / 39	2.7 / 39
245/35 R 21 96 Y XL HL 195/55 R 19 97 H XL M+S	3.1 / 45	3.1 / 45
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 17 103 M	4.2 / 60	4.2 / 60

Tire pressures over 100 mph /160 km/h

WARNING

When driving at speeds greater than 100 mph /160 km/h, incorrect tire pressures can negatively affect vehicle handling, e.g., safety or comfort while driving. The tires can become damaged, which may cause an accident. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. To drive at maximum speeds, note the specified tire pressure for driving above 100 mph /160 km/h in the tire inflation pressure table, and adjust as necessary.

Tire pressure values over 100 mph / 160 km/h

S ALL4

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire pressure table correspond to cold tires and full load.

Tire size	Front wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI	Rear wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI
225/55 R 18 102 H XL A/S 245/45 R 19 102 H XL A/S 225/55 R 18 102 Y XL 245/45 R 19 102 Y XL 225/55 R 18 102 H XL M+S 245/45 R 19 102 H XL M+S	2.7 / 39	2.7 / 39
245/45 R 19 102 V XL 245/40 R 20 99 H XL A/S 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL 205/60 R 18 99 H XL M+S	3.0 / 44	3.0 / 44
245/40 R 20 99 V XL M+S 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	3.2 / 46	3.4 / 49
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 17 103 M	4.2 / 60	4.2 / 60

JCW ALL4

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire pressure table correspond to cold tires and full load.

Tire size	Front wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI	Rear wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI
245/45 R 19 102 H XL A/S 245/45 R 19 102 Y XL 225/55 R 18 102 H XL M+S 245/45 R 19 102 H XL M+S	2.7 / 39	2.7 / 39
245/40 R 20 99 H XL A/S 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL 205/60 R 18 99 H XL M+S	3.0 / 44	3.0 / 44

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Tire size	Front wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI	Rear wheel Tire pressure specifications in bar/PSI
245/40 R 20 99 V XL M+S 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL HL 195/55 R 19 97 H XL M+S	3.2 / 46	3.4 / 49
Emergency wheel: T 135/80 R 17 103 M	4.2 / 60	4.2 / 60

Tire marking

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: Nominal width in mm

45: Tire aspect ratio in %

R: Radial tire code

18: Rim diameter in inches

96: Load index

Y: Speed code letter

ZR tires: Reinforced radial tires for speeds exceeding 150 mph /240 km/h

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	100 mph / 160 km/h
R	106 mph / 170 km/h
S	112 mph / 180 km/h
T	118 mph / 190 km/h
H	131 mph / 210 km/h
V	150 mph / 240 km/h
W	167 mph / 270 km/h
Y	186 mph / 300 km/h
(Y)	over 186 mph / 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 0126

xxxx: Manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: Tire size and tire design

0126: Tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread depth, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Production date

The tire's production date is found on the tire sidewall.

Designation	Production date
DOT ... 0126	1st week 2026

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. There is a risk of accident, injury and a risk of damage to property.

Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 352, are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.

M+S

Winter tires, as well as all-season tires with better winter performance than summer tires, are indicated by the letters M+S on the tire sidewall.

Tire tread depth

Safety information

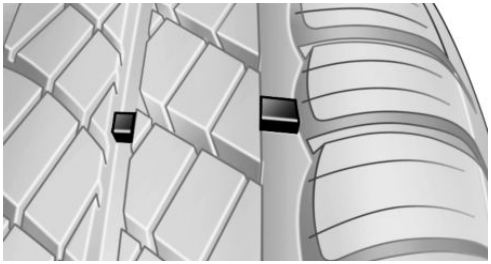
WARNING

If the tire tread depth is too low, driving safety may be limited in critical situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Follow applicable legal requirements for minimum tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

Generally speaking, the legal minimum tread depths may differ for summer tires, winter tires, and all-season tires. To ensure optimum handling, e.g., in wet or snowy conditions, it may be useful to change a tire before it reaches the legal minimum tread depth. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wear indicators



The tire manufacturer's wear indicators are distributed around the tire circumference and have a height of at least 0.06 in/1.6 mm.

The wear indicators serve as indicators for the wear of the tire tread.

The locations of the wear indicators are indicated by the letters TWI (tread wear indicator) on the tire sidewall.

Tire damage

General information

Check your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

The following abnormalities may indicate tire damage or a malfunction on the vehicle:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual vehicle handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.
- Uneven wear pattern such as increased wear near tire shoulder.

Tire damage can be caused by situations such as the following:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce

speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. Drive carefully to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have the vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

WARNING

The wheels, tires and chassis components can become damaged when driving over curbs, road damage, or other obstacles. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over curbs, road damage or other obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Exchanging wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have the wheel mounted and balanced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Suitable wheels and tires

General information

Only certain wheel/tire combinations are suitable, depending on vehicle and equipment. The vehicle manufacturer determines wheel/tire combinations based on the following criteria:

- Tire size, e.g., tire width, aspect ratio.
- Wheel size, e.g., rim diameter, offset.

For more information on wheel/tire combinations and special equipment, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Wheels and tires that are not suitable for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been recommended for the vehicle type.

WARNING

Wheel and tire combinations that are not suitable for the vehicle can affect vehicle handling and a number of system functions, e.g., the Antilock Braking System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for the vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Recommended tire brands

Tire types are developed for each vehicle and optimized specifically for the individual requirements of that vehicle, e.g.:

- Handling.
- Comfort.
- Noise characteristics.

Specially developed tires are indicated by a star on the tire sidewall. After replacing wheels and tires, the vehicle manufacturer recommends using star-marked tires again. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using tires of the same make and tire tread.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

WARNING

Retreated tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life may be limited. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Maximum speed

Safety information

WARNING

If the maximum permissible speed of your mounted tires is exceeded, the tires may be damaged. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of the tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the vehicle's maximum speed is higher than the maximum permissible speed of the winter tires, place a sign indicating the maximum permissible speed in the driver's field of vision. The info label is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Winter tires are indicated by the mountain/snowflake icon and the letters M+S on the tire sidewall.

So-called all-season tires with the M+S designation but no mountain/snowflake icon perform better in winter than summer tires. As a rule, all-season tires do not perform the same as winter tires.

Changing run-flat tires

When changing from run-flat tires to standard tires, it must be ensured that the vehicle contains an emergency wheel or tire mobility kit. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel change between axles

Different tread wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can

be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even abrasion. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After changing a wheel, check the tire pressure and correct as necessary.

Storing tires

When storing tires, do not exceed the maximum tire pressure specified on the tire sidewall.

When storing tires, note the following:

- Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Protect tires from coming into contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave the tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Run-flat tires

Principle

Run-flat tires permit continued driving under limited conditions even in the event of a complete tire pressure loss.

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree and may also include special rims.

The reinforced tire sidewall makes it possible to continue driving to a limited extent if a tire loses pressure.

Follow the instructions for continuing to drive with a flat tire.

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph /80 km/h.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph /60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. If the trailer swings, brake immediately and apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire. Tire components may come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Reduce your speed and stop. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Identification

Run-flat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Snow chains

Safety information

WARNING

Mounting snow chains on unsuitable tires can cause the snow chains to come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only fit snow chains on tires recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for use with snow chains.

WARNING

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING

When driving with snow chains, the snow chains and other vehicle components may be damaged if the vehicle speed is too high. The handling characteristics also change, e.g., altered braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive carefully and do not exceed a maximum speed of 30 mph / 50 km/h.

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains.

For information on suitable snow chains, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Snow chains can only be used in pairs on front wheels of the following wheel/tire sizes:

Tire size	Wheel size	Rim offset (IS)
205/60 R18	6.5J x 18	41
HL 195/55 R19	6.5J x 19	42

Information on the wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list may also include wheel/tire sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information on wheels and tires approved for the vehicle can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, note the following: Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor when using snow chains, otherwise incorrect values may be displayed.

If your vehicle is equipped with a flat tire monitor, note the following: Do not initialize the flat tire monitor when using snow chains, otherwise incorrect values may be displayed.

When using with snow chains, activate drive-off support to optimize the drive power as necessary.

Tire Pressure Monitor

Principle

The Tire Pressure Monitor monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

The sensors in the tire valves measure the tire pressure and tire temperature.

Depending on the tires detected or entered, the system displays the specified nominal pressures on the Interaction Unit and compares these with the current tire pressures.

When using tires not found in the tire inflation pressure specifications on the vehicle such as tires with special approval, the Tire Pressure Monitor must be actively reset. The system will then take over the current tire pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire pressure, refer to page 342.

Safety information

WARNING

The nominal tire pressures shown on the display are not a substitute for the tire inflation pressure specifications of the vehicle. Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a tire pressure loss will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the sizes of your mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the information on the tires and the tire inflation pressure specifications on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

To use the Tire Pressure Monitor, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Whenever a tire or wheel is changed, this system detects and updates the mounted tires, displaying them on the Interaction Unit after driving for a short time.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel change.
  - After a reset, when using tires with special approval.
  - After changing tire settings.
- When using tires with special approval, note the following:
  - After a tire or wheel change, a reset was performed with the correct tire pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with tire pressure sensors are mounted.

Tire settings

General information

You can enter information on your mounted tires in the tire settings if the tires are not automatically detected by the system.

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure specifications on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel change, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Configuring the tire settings

1. To enter information on the tires mounted in the tire settings, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Tire

Pressure Monitor" / "Tire settings" / "Tire selection" / "Manual" / "Tire type".

2. Select the tire size for the rear axle.

   When using tires with special approval: "Other tires".

3. Select the maximum speed to be driven.
4. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, e.g., whether this system is active, can be shown on the Interaction Unit.

Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Tire Pressure Monitor".

Current tire pressure

The current tire pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire pressures may change while driving or depending on the outside temperature.

Nominal pressure

The nominal pressure for the tires on the front and rear axles is displayed.

The specified nominal pressures take the influence of driving and outside temperature on the tire temperature into account. The appropriate nominal pressure is always displayed, independent of the weather situation, tire temperatures and travel times.

The displayed nominal pressure may change and may differ from the tire inflation pressure specifications on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tire pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed target pressures.

The nominal pressure is immediately adjusted if the vehicle load state is changed in the tire settings.

Tire conditions

General information

The tire condition and system status are indicated by the wheel color and text on the Tire Pressure Monitor on the Interaction Unit.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the nominal pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

When the system is active, all wheels illuminate green.

- This system bases any warnings on target pressures.
- When using tires with special approval, this system bases any warnings on the last tire pressures saved at the reset.

One to four yellow wheels

The corresponding wheels illuminate yellow if the tire is flat or a significant pressure loss has been detected for the tires shown.

Gray wheels

If no pressure loss has been detected for the tires, the wheels illuminate gray.

Possible causes are:

- The system may not be operational.
- After confirming the tire settings, the tire pressure is measured automatically.
- When using tires with special approval: The system is being reset.

For tires with special approval: Performing a reset

1. To reset tires with special approval, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Tire Pressure Monitor".
2. Make sure that the tire settings are correct.
3. Turn on the drive-ready state but do not drive off.
4. "Perform reset"
5. Drive off.

The wheels are shown in gray and the tire pressure is reset.

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the predefined tire pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After resetting, the wheels are shown in green on the Interaction Unit. A message is displayed.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue driving the reset resumes automatically.

Additional information:

Tire settings, refer to page 354.

Messages: For tires without special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Tires with emergency running properties can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire pressure measurement is required

Message

If it is necessary to check the tire pressure, a message appears.

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the Interaction Unit.

Icon	Possible cause
	Leak detected on the tire. Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire pressure is too low

Message

If the tire pressure is too low, a message appears.

A yellow warning light illuminates on the Interaction Unit.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the Interaction Unit.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not continue to exceed a speed of 80 mph / 130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message

If the tire pressure drops significantly, a message appears.

A yellow warning light illuminates on the Interaction Unit.

In addition, an icon with the corresponding tire appears in a Check Control message on the Interaction Unit.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and come to a stop carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.
3. Follow the instructions for what to do in case of a flat tire.

Messages: For tires with special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Tires with emergency running properties can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

If a tire pressure measurement is required

Message

If it is necessary to check the tire pressure, a message appears.

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the Interaction Unit.

Icon	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire pressure is too low

Message

If the tire pressure is too low, a message appears.

A yellow warning light illuminates on the Interaction Unit.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the Interaction Unit.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not continue to exceed a speed of 80 mph / 130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Perform a system reset.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message

If the tire pressure drops significantly, a message appears.

A yellow warning light illuminates on the Interaction Unit.

In addition, an icon with the corresponding tire appears in a Check Control message on the Interaction Unit.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and come to a stop carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.
3. Follow the instructions for what to do in case of a flat tire.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Standard tires

1. In the event of a flat tire, identify the damaged tire.
2. Check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: When the tire pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. Then perform the reset.

   If no tire damage can be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
3. Repair the flat tire, e.g., using a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

   The use of sealant, e.g., from the tire repair set, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

WARNING

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph /80 km/h.

WARNING

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph /60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. If the trailer swings, brake immediately and apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

WARNING

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire. Tire components may come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Reduce your speed and stop. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maximum speed

It is possible to continue driving with a damaged tire up to a maximum speed of 50 mph / 80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Observe the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not continue to exceed a speed of 50 mph / 80 km/h.
3. Check the tire pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

Possible driving distance with a flat tire

The possible driving distance which may be safely traveled varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed,

road conditions, outside temperature. The distance traveled may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the possible distance traveled may be up to 50 miles / 80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of skidding of the vehicle.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

Temperature

The tire pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire temperature, thus increasing the tire pressure.

The tire pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Following a temperature-related warning, the nominal pressures are shown on the Interaction Unit again after driving for a short time.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system is not able to indicate sudden and serious tire damage and the resulting loss of tire pressure caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

For tires with special approval, this system will not function correctly if it has not been reset. For example, a flat tire is being reported despite the tires having the correct pressure.

Malfunction

Message

The Tire Pressure Monitor displays a message if the system is not operational.

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

If the Tire Pressure Monitor system is not operational, proceed as follows:

- If a wheel without air pressure sensor is mounted, have the wheels checked as necessary.
- Fault due to systems or devices with same transmission frequency: The system reactivates automatically upon leaving the interference zone.

- The system was unable to completely reset when using tires with special approval. Perform a system reset again.
- If the Tire Pressure Monitor has failed: Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat tire monitor

Principle

The flat tire monitor detects a tire pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

The system does not measure the actual pressure in the tires.

The system detects tire pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

If a tire loses pressure, the diameter and thus the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirements

To use the flat tire monitor, the following functional requirements must be met:

- After a tire or wheel change, an initialization was carried out at the correct tire pressure.
- After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed on the Interaction Unit, e.g., to check whether the flat tire monitor is active.

Go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Flat tire monitor".

Initialization required

The flat tire monitor must be initialized in the following situations:

- After the tire pressure has been adjusted.
- After a tire or wheel change.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. To initialize the flat tire monitor, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Flat tire monitor".
2. Switch on drive-ready state.
3. "Perform reset"
4. Drive off.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving continues.

Messages

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. Tires with emergency running properties can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Indication of a flat tire

A message appears if there is a flat tire.

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is turned on, if needed.

A yellow warning light illuminates on the Interaction Unit.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the Interaction Unit.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and come to a stop carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with standard tires or run-flat tires.

Run-flat tires are indicated by a circular icon containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.

3. Follow the instructions for what to do in case of a flat tire.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Standard tires

1. In the event of a flat tire, identify the damaged tire.
2. Check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display of a flat tire kit.

   When the tire pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. Initialize the system.

   If tire damage cannot be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
3. Repair the flat tire, e.g., using a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

WARNING

The vehicle handles differently when a runflat tire has insufficient or no tire pressure; for instance, reduced directional stability when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph /80 km/h.

WARNING

Heavy trailers can start swinging when continuing to drive with a flat tire. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed a speed of 35 mph /60 km/h when driving with a trailer and a flat tire. If the trailer swings, brake immediately and apply necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

WARNING

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire. Tire components may come loose. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Reduce your speed and stop. Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maximum speed

It is possible to continue driving with a damaged tire up to a maximum speed of 50 mph / 80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

Observe the following when continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

- Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
- Do not continue to exceed a speed of 50 mph / 80 km/h.
- Check the tire pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

  When the tire pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with a flat tire

The possible driving distance which may be safely traveled varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, outside temperature. The distance traveled may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, the possible distance traveled may be up to 50 miles / 80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- Greater likelihood of skidding of the vehicle.
- Longer braking distances.
- Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The flat tire monitor may be react with a delay or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire pressure regularly.
- Sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snow-covered or slippery road.
- For sporty driving, e.g., due to slippage on the drive wheels or high lateral acceleration.
- When driving with snow chains.

Repairing a flat tire

If you get a flat tire, take the following safety precautions:

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Engage the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at a suitable distance.

Repair the flat tire, e.g., using a tire repair set or by changing the wheel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Tire repair set Plus

Principle

Minor tire damage can be temporarily sealed using the tire repair set Plus. The battery-operated device is magnetically fitted to the wheel center and pumps tire sealant and air into the tires through a hose, both when stationary and while driving.

The filled in tire sealant closes the damage from the inside when it hardens.

The current tire pressure can be read on the vehicle Interaction Unit.

The tire repair set Plus is only designed to be mounted once to the wheel.

The tire repair set Plus may be ineffective if the tire damage measures more than approx. 0.16 in/4 mm. Remove foreign objects from the tire only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.

Follow the instructions for using the tire repair set Plus on the housing.

Safety information

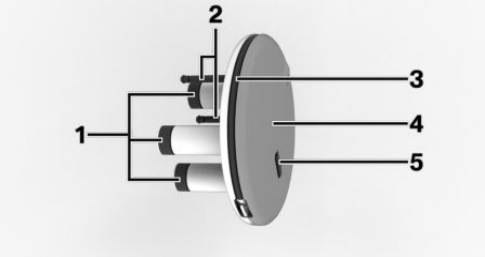
WARNING

If the tire repair set Plus is not correctly secured to the wheel, the tire repair set Plus may come loose while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only use the tire repair set Plus while driving if the vehicle is equipped with original wheels and wheel bolts from the vehicle manufacturer.

WARNING

A loss of tire pressure causes the handling characteristics to change, e.g., decreased directional stability during braking, longer braking distances, and altered roll steer. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive carefully and do not exceed a maximum speed of 50 mph / 80 km/h nor a maximum distance of 125 miles / 200 km.

Overview



1 Magnetic feet
2 Guide pins
3 Filler hose
4 Housing/compressor
5 Power switch

Storage

Depending on vehicle equipment, the tire repair set Plus is stored as follows:

- In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

Safety precautions

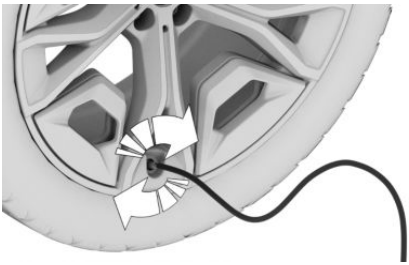
When using the tire repair set Plus, take the following safety precautions:

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Engage the parking brake.

- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at a suitable distance.
- Remove the warning label for the maximum permissible speed from the tire repair set Plus and attach it in a visible location in the vehicle interior.

Preparing the tire repair set Plus

1. Unwind the filler hose from the tire repair set Plus.
2. Unscrew the valve cap on the wheel.
3. Screw the filler hose connector clockwise onto the tire valve.



Operation

1. To attach the tire repair set Plus to the wheel center, insert the magnetic feet into the wheel bolt holes and insert the guide pins into the small holes between the wheel bolts.

2. Push the device into the holes to the stop, until it magnetically locks to the wheel bolts in an audible manner.
3. Turn on the tire repair set Plus.
4. Read the current tire pressure on the vehicle Interaction Unit. If the tire pressure does not reach min. 1.0 bar/15 psi, it is not possible to continue driving. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
5. Do not drive off until a minimum tire pressure of 1.0 bar/15 psi has been reached.

   The tire repair set Plus turns off automatically when the tire pressure reaches 2.0 bar/29 psi. If another tire loses pressure, the tire repair set Plus will inflate the tire automatically.

   Drive carefully and do not exceed a speed of max. 50 mph /80 km/h.
6. Immediately contact an authorized service center, or another qualified service center or repair shop, to have the tire repair set Plus removed and the defective tire replaced.

   Do not exceed the maximum travel distance of 125 miles/200 km.
7. Do not continue driving if the tire pressure drops below 1.0 bar/15 psi. Contact

an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

8. Replace the tire repair set Plus.

Additional information:

- Flat tire monitor, refer to page 361.
- Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 353.

Operation when stationary

If it is not possible to attach the tire repair set Plus to the wheel, e.g., with snow chains attached, proceed as follows:

1. Once the filler hose is connected to the tire valve, turn on the tire repair set Plus.

   Hold the tire repair set Plus in your hand during the inflation process.
2. The tire repair set Plus turns off automatically when the tire pressure reaches 2.0 bar/29 psi.

   If the tire pressure does not reach 2.0 bar/29 psi after 15 minutes, turn off the device. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
3. Turn off the tire repair set Plus and stow it away.
4. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
5. Drive off.

   Drive carefully and do not exceed a speed of max. 50 mph /80 km/h.
6. After starting a trip, for approx. 15 minutes or 6 miles / 10 km, observe whether the tire pressure drops.

   Do not continue driving if the tire pressure drops below 1.2 bar/18 psi. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replace the faulty tire and the tire repair set Plus.

Change the tires within the next 125 miles/200 km.

Additional information:

- Flat tire monitor, refer to page 361.
- Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 353.

Charging the tire repair set Plus

The integrated battery of the tire repair set Plus is subject to system-related self-discharging, even if the device is not turned on.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends checking the state of charge of the tire repair set Plus regularly, or every two years at least.

To check the state of charge, press the switch next to the USB port on the rear of the device.

The LED integrated into the switch illuminates in the corresponding color:

Color	Meaning
Green	The tire repair set Plus is sufficiently charged and can be used.
Red	The battery of the tire repair set Plus has a low state of charge. It may not be fully operational.

To charge the tire repair set Plus, connect the device to a suitable power source via USB cable.

Malfunction

Using tire sealant can damage the tire pressure sensor on the wheel. If the vehicle is equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor, have the damaged tire pressure sensor replaced.

Emergency wheel

Principle

In the event of a flat tire, one emergency spare wheel maximum can be used as a replacement for defective tires. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the faulty tire/wheel has been replaced.

Also check the tire pressure of the spare wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct as necessary.

If the vehicle is equipped with a Sport brake, the emergency wheel can only be mounted on the rear axle. If there is tire damage on the front axle, the emergency wheel must first be fitted on the rear axle on the same side of the vehicle. The intact wheel of the rear axle can then be mounted on the front axle.

Safety information

WARNING

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed handling characteristics may occur, for instance reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed roll steer in the stability limit. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph /80 km/h.

WARNING

The vehicle can be damaged when the emergency wheel is used for too long. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive moderately and do not exceed a driving distance of 600 miles/1,000 km.

Overview

The emergency wheel and wheel change set are located in the cargo area under the cargo area floor.

Removing the emergency wheel

1. To remove the emergency wheel, pull the cargo area floor up and out.
2. Loosen the wing screw.
3. Remove the bracket or cover.
4. Remove the mount and trailer tow hitch as necessary.
5. Remove the jacking point next to the emergency wheel.
6. Push the emergency spare wheel to the left and remove it.

Inserting the emergency wheel

To fit the emergency spare wheel, proceed as follows:

1. To insert the emergency wheel, insert the emergency wheel and slide it to the right.
2. Insert and secure the jacking point next to the emergency wheel.
3. Where applicable, mount the holder and the trailer hitch.
4. Position the holder or cover.
5. Screw on and tighten the wing screw.
6. Insert the cargo area floor.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Changing wheels/tires

Principle

When using run-flat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately in case of a breakdown when there is a tire pressure loss due to a flat tire.

If necessary, a suitable wheel change tool, e.g., a jack, is available as an accessory from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

The jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety precautions are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling if the jack tips over. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. When the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie under the vehicle and do not switch on the drive-ready state.

WARNING

Placing supports, e.g., wooden blocks or similar, under the jack may reduce its ability to bear weight because of the limited height. The load-carrying capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded and the vehicle may tip over. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Do not place supports under the jack.

WARNING

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use, e.g., changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only use the jack to change an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

WARNING

The jack may slip on soft, uneven, or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, slip-resistant surface.

WARNING

The jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the jack.

WARNING

When the jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When cranking up the jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel well.

WARNING

A vehicle that is raised on a jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral effort on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by an authorized

service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Using an impact wrench to loosen or tighten the wheel lock bolt can damage the wheel lock bolt. There is a risk of property damage. Only use a lug wrench to loosen and tighten the lug bolt lock.

Securing the vehicle against rolling away

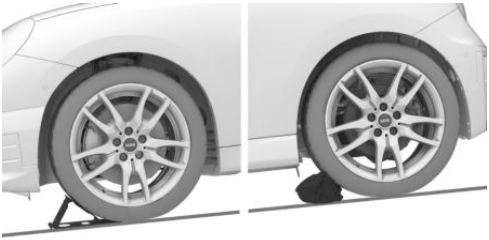
General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends securing the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away when changing a wheel, in addition to engaging the parking brake.

On a level surface

Place chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel being changed.

On a slight downhill gradient



Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects, e.g., rocks, under the wheels of the front axle and rear axle, opposite the rolling direction.

Lug bolt lock

Principle

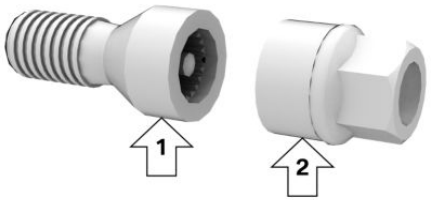
The wheel bolt lock offers effective protection against wheel theft.

The locking lug bolts are specifically coded. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

Depending on vehicle equipment, store the lug bolt lock adapter as follows:

- In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.



- Locking lug bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing the locking lug bolt

1. To unscrew the locking lug bolt, place the adapter onto the locking lug bolt.
2. Unscrew the locking lug bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on the locking lug bolt

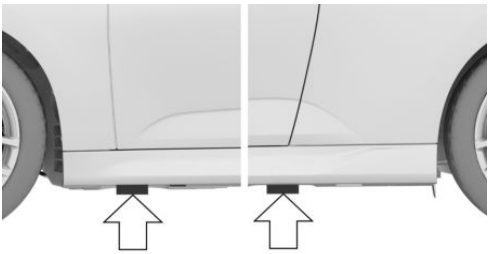
1. To screw on the locking lug bolt, place the adapter onto the locking lug bolt. Turn the adapter as necessary until it fits onto the locking lug bolt.
2. Screw on the locking lug bolt. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.
3. After screwing on, remove the adapter again.

Safety precautions

Take the following safety measures when changing a wheel:

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Engage the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Engage a gear or selector lever position P.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at a suitable distance.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, remove the wheel change set and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- Secure the vehicle so that it does not roll away.
- Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points



The jacking points are located at the indicated positions.

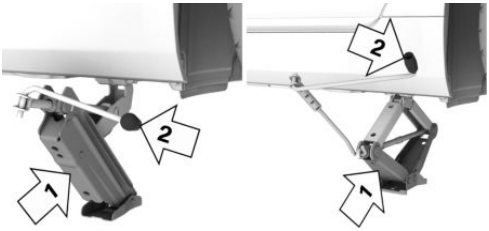
Jacking up the vehicle

WARNING

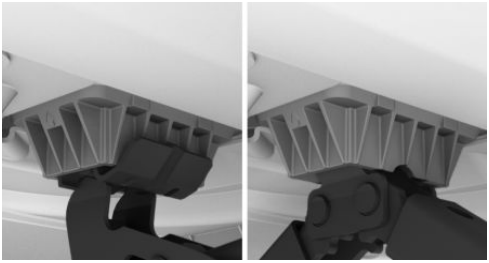
Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the jack.

To raise the vehicle so that you can change a wheel, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the jack with one hand, arrows 1. With the other hand, grip the jack crank handle or the lever, arrows 2.



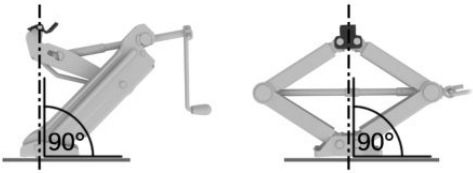
2. Insert the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



3. Extend the jack by turning the jack crank handle or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue turning the jack crank handle or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the jack foot is extended vertically and that the jack's entire face is on the ground.



6. Extend the jack until the corresponding wheel is raised max. 1.2 in / 3 cm from the ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

To change a wheel, proceed as follows:

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the jack crank handle counterclockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

After changing the wheel, do the following:

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.
3. Check the tire pressure at the next opportunity and correct as necessary.
4. Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, then have the damaged tire replaced.

Engine compartment

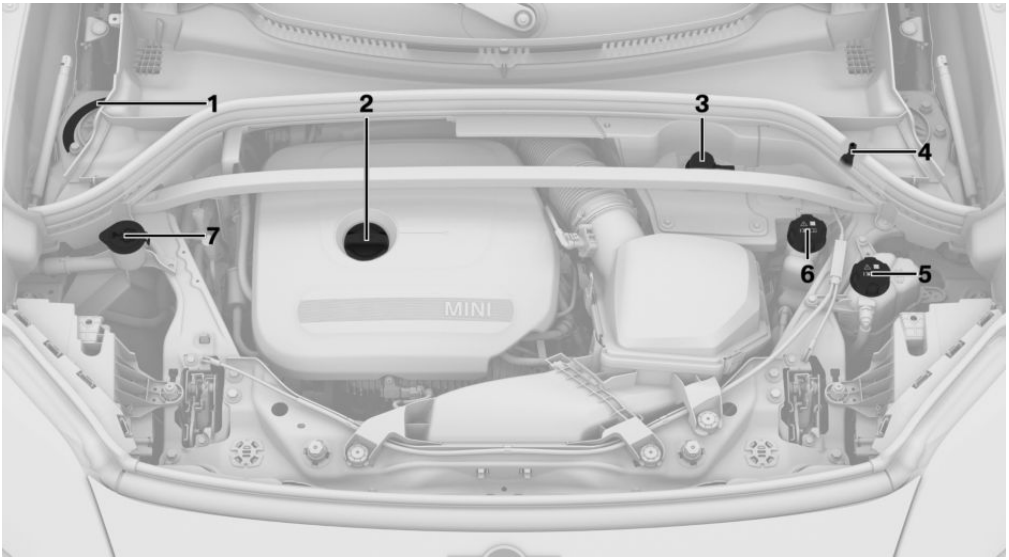
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Overview



1 Vehicle identification number
2 Oil filler neck
3 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
4 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
5 Depending on motorization: Coolant reservoir for additional radiator
6 Coolant reservoir, engine
7 Filler neck for washer fluid

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Hood

Safety information

WARNING

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage components and lead to a safety hazard. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The vehicle manufacturer recommends having work in the engine compartment performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WARNING

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

WARNING

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hooks, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

WARNING

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the hood is clear while opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When closed, the hood must engage fully. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of property damage. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening hood

1. In the footwell, pull the lever to open the hood, arrow 1.

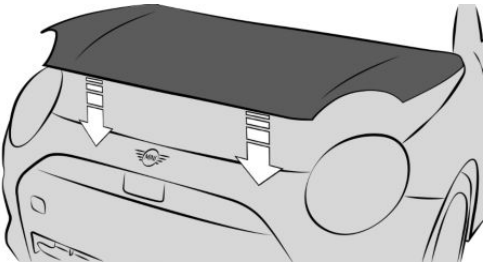
   The hood is unlocked.

2. Release the lever and pull it again, arrow 2.

Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

Closing the hood



Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

Operating fluids

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 15 %, i.e., E10 or E15, may be used for refueling.

The power and consumption specifications correspond to operation with 98 RON E10 fuel.

Knocking noises, strange sounds, and driving issues may occur when using fuel with an ethanol content of 10 % to max. 15 %. These have no effect on the engine service life.

Safety information

Caution

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for additional maintenance.

WARNING

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter can be permanently damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not turn on standby after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

87 AKI fuel or lower can cause the engine to malfunction or become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not refuel with 87 AKI fuel or lower.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use fuels with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended gas quality

91 AKI.

John Cooper Works:

93 AKI.

Minimum fuel grade

87 AKI.

Using fuel with this minimum AKI rating may result in driving issues and strange sounds. Knocking noises may occur, especially when starting the engine at high temperatures. This has no effect on engine service life.

Engine oil

Principle

The engine oil consumption and engine oil properties depend on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine's oil consumption may increase in situations like the following:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idle operation of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are not recommended.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Interaction Unit depending on the engine oil level and engine oil properties.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having engine oil changed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

Electronic oil measurement

Principle

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when cornering aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the MINI Interaction Unit.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

Functional requirements

To use the electronic oil measurement, the following functional requirement must be met:

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

To display the engine oil level, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Engine oil level".

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

During a detailed measurement, the engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed on a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message appears on the Interaction Unit.

General information

The idle speed increases slightly while the engine oil level is measured.

Functional requirements

Note the following functional requirements for detailed measurement:

- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- Drive-ready state is turned on by pressing the Start/Stop switch.
- The engine is at operating temperature.
- Selector lever is in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not pressed.

Performing a detailed measurement

To perform a detailed measurement of the engine oil level, go through the menu as follows: Apps menu / "Vehicle" / "Vehicle status" / "Engine oil level" / "Oil level measurement" / "Start measurement".

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

Principle

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed. The top-up quantity is indicated in the message.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating fluids, e.g., oil, grease, coolant, fuel, may contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Do not allow operating fluids to come into contact with your clothing, skin, or eyes. Do not fill operating fluids into different bottles. Store operating fluids out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

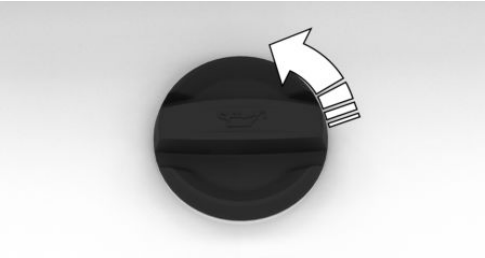
Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 374.

Adding engine oil

To top up the engine oil, proceed as follows:

1. Opening the hood.
2. Turn the lock in the engine compartment counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the cap in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Opening the hood, refer to page 375.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil grade is critical for the service life of the engine.

Only add with the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil specification.

Suitable engine oil types

When topping up engine oil, the following oil specification applies:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-17 FE+.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil specification
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has a suitable viscosity grade. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

More information about suitable oil specifications and engine oil viscosity grades can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

MINI recommends
MINI Original Engine Oil.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and a coolant additive.

Not all commercially available coolant additives are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using coolant additive with BMW LC-18 specification. Do not mix coolant additives of different colors. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive. Information on suitable coolant additives can be provided by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

WARNING

Additives are harmful to health. Using the wrong additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or ar-

ticles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

NOTICE

Too much water reduces the coolant's frost protection and corrosion protection. There is a risk of property damage. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive.

Coolant level

General information

Depending on the drive variant, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check and add the coolant levels on a regular basis.

The coolant reservoir may be overfilled with coolant when the vehicle is delivered from the factory or following maintenance measures. The specified coolant level is achieved with longer operating periods.

The nominal coolant level is indicated by the maximum mark in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 374.

Checking the coolant level

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.
3. Opening the hood.
4. Turn the coolant reservoir cap slightly counterclockwise until the excess pressure dissipates.
5. Open the coolant reservoir cap.
6. The coolant level is correct when it is just below the max. level mark on the filler neck.
   This can be found on the filler neck or on the outside of transparent coolant tanks.
7. Close the coolant reservoir cap.

Additional information:

- Climate control, refer to page 285.
- Opening the hood, refer to page 375.

Adding coolant

To refill the coolant, proceed as follows:

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.
3. Opening the hood.
4. Turn the coolant reservoir cap slightly counterclockwise until the excess pressure dissipates.
5. Open the coolant reservoir cap.
6. If necessary, slowly add coolant up to the specified fill level. Be careful not to spill coolant.
7. Close the coolant reservoir cap.

Additional information:

- Climate control, refer to page 285.
- Opening the hood, refer to page 375.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

Principle

Washer fluid is used to clean the windshields and sensors. All spray nozzles are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

The recommended minimum fill quantity is 0.5 US gal/2 liters.

Safety information

WARNING

Some types of antifreeze can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not fill operating fluids into different bottles. Store operating fluids out of reach of children.

United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-based additives in the washer fluid, which are used to repel water on window glass, can cause damage to the car wash. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washer system. There is a risk of property damage. Do not mix different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixture ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment on the right side of vehicle.

Refilling washer fluid

To refill the washer fluid, proceed as follows:

1. Opening the hood.
2. Open the cap and refill the washer fluid.
3. Close the cover.

Additional information:

Opening the hood, refer to page 375.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer fluid concentrate or alcohol-based anti-

freeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5°F/-15°C.

Preventive maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Maintenance system

Principle

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

General information

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service

Principle

Condition Based Service determines the maintenance recommendation using sensors and special algorithms that take into account the operating conditions of the vehicle.

Information on service notifications can be displayed on the Interaction Unit.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 155.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Stationary periods

Stationary periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are taken into account.

Some maintenance measures are time-dependent, e.g., replacing equipment. Have this maintenance work updated by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maintenance Booklet for US Models

Please consult your Maintenance Booklet for additional information on the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Diagnostic socket

Principle

Using the diagnostic socket, the vehicle owner can have data saved to the vehicle read out by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

General information

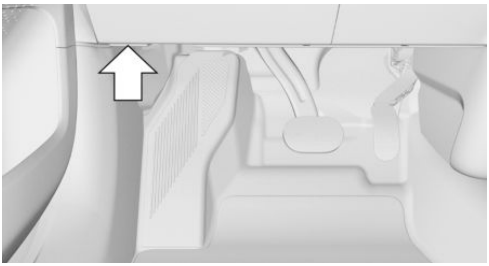
Disconnect devices from the diagnostic socket before locking the vehicle or starting a Remote Software Upgrade.

Safety information

NOTICE

The diagnostic socket is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the diagnostic socket, or contact with the diagnostic socket for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, it is strongly recommended that access to the diagnostic socket is limited to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the diagnostic socket.

Overview



The diagnostic socket for reading out vehicle data is located on the driver's side.

Pollutant emissions

- The warning light illuminates:

  The exhaust gas quality is declining, e.g., because the fuel filler cap is fitted incorrectly. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Otherwise, severe engine misfires will very quickly cause serious damage to emissions-related components, especially the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Taking the vehicle out of service

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, some special measures are necessary. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Deep sleep mode, refer to page 42.

Replacing components

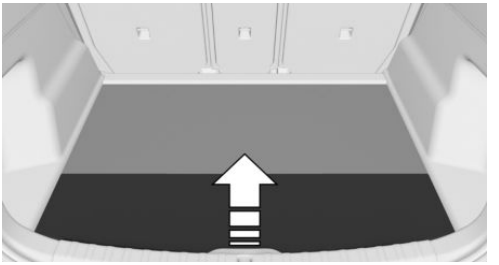
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo area floor.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window glass may be damaged if the wiper is set onto it without a wiper blade. There is a risk of property damage. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

NOTICE

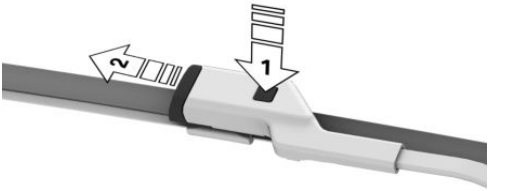
Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing the front wiper blades

To replace the front wiper blades, proceed as follows:

1. Move the wipers to the fold-out position.
2. Lift the wipers off the windshield and hold.

3. Press the button on the wiper, arrow 1, turn the wiper blade clockwise slightly, then pull it forward and out, arrow 2.



4. Insert the new wiper blade by pressing it on until you hear it snap into the holder.
5. Fold in the wipers.

Additional information:

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 168.

Replacing the rear wiper blade

The rear wiper blade is engaged on the end of the wiper arm. To replace the wiper blade, proceed as follows:

1. Push the lever on the wiper arm down, arrow 1, and pull off the wiper blade, arrow 2.

2. Attach the new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.

Bulbs and lights

Principle

The bulbs and lights contribute significantly to driving safety.

All headlights and lights are designed using LED technology at least.

In the event that they are no longer operating properly, have the headlights and lights checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Intense brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

The inside of the headlight glass may fog up in cool or damp weather. Condensation will disappear after a short time when driving with the lights on. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If, despite driving with the headlights on, moisture such as water droplets continues to condense on the lights, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

Principle

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free.

If the vehicle battery is not operational, it is recommended to have any corresponding work, for instance, replacing the vehicle battery, performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

More information on the vehicle battery can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

WARNING

Vehicle batteries that are not recommended can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use vehicle batteries recommended by the vehicle manufacturer. For information on suitable vehicle batteries, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Registering the vehicle battery in the vehicle

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been changed. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without limitation and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Hazard icons

The following hazard icons can be found on the vehicle battery:

Icon	Meaning
	No smoking, no open flames, no sparks.
	Wear safety goggles.
	Keep away from children.
	Risk of chemical burn: Wear gloves, do not tilt battery.
	Flush acid splashes with water immediately. In the event of contact with the eyes or swallowing, seek a physician immediately.
	No direct daylight, no frost.
	Follow the operating instructions.
	Explosive gas mixture. Do not close any openings of the battery.

Charging the vehicle battery

Principle

Make sure that the vehicle battery is always sufficiently charged to ensure that the vehicle battery can be used for its entire service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the vehicle battery when the drive-off power is insufficient.

The following circumstances can negatively affect the vehicle battery's performance:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- Stationary periods of more than one month.

Safety information

WARNING

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery from sockets in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12V electrical system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the vehicle battery

To charge the vehicle battery, first switch off the combustion engine, then use the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

With mild hybrid technology: Open the hood before charging the vehicle battery.

Additional information:

Jump-start terminals, refer to page 395.

Power interruption

After a power interruption, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- Initialize the parking brake.
- With memory function: Save the positions again.
- Update the time.
- Update the date.
- With glass sunroof: Initialize the system.

Additional information:

Initialize the parking brake after a power interruption, refer to page 136.

Deep sleep mode

Use deep sleep mode for long stationary periods.

Additional information:

Deep sleep mode, refer to page 42.

Mild Hybrid technology

Principle

Mild hybrid technology helps to reduce fuel consumption. The mild hybrid technology includes a battery with a voltage of 48 V.

The battery for mild hybrid technology is located below the cargo area floor.

With mild hybrid technology: Do not remove the cargo area floor and do not fold up the front part of the cargo area floor.

Additional information:

Cargo area floor, refer to page 312.

Safety information

WARNING

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Notice

Do not exchange or work on the battery for the Mild Hybrid technology.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Transport and store full vehicle batteries in an upright position. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Batteries contain harmful chemicals. Disposing of batteries with household waste is prohibited by law.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

For information on the fuse layout and locations of the fuse boxes, visit: fusecard.mini.com.

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components and lead to fire. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the fuses replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Breakdown Assistance

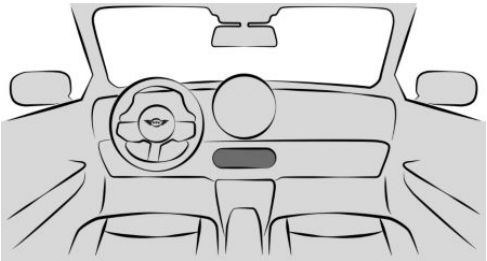
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

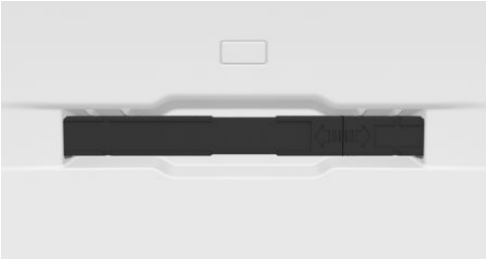
Hazard warning system



The button for the hazard warning system is located on the switch cluster.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning system is turned on.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located in the tailgate.

Move the warning triangle sideways and remove it.

First-aid kit

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with a first-aid kit.

Storage for the first-aid kit is provided in the cargo area.

Some of the articles have a limited service life. Check the expiration dates for the contents regularly, replacing any expired items promptly.

Emergency call

Principle

In case of an emergency, an emergency call can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

Only press the SOS button in the headliner in an emergency.

For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview

The SOS button is located in the headliner.

Functional requirements

To use the emergency call, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Emergency Call system is functioning correctly.
- The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.

Intelligent emergency call

The vehicle features an Intelligent Emergency Call system, depending on vehicle equipment.

The Intelligent Emergency Call system establishes a connection with the MINI Response Center.

Intelligent emergency calls are made using a SIM card that is integrated into the vehicle.

The MINI Response Center then makes contact with the vehicle occupants and initiates further action to help.

If an intelligent emergency call is made, the data used to determine necessary rescue measures, e.g., the current vehicle position if it can be determined, is sent to the MINI Response Center.

Even if the driver is unable to respond, the MINI Response Center can, under certain circumstances, initiate steps to provide further assistance.

Even if the MINI Response Center can no longer be heard through the loudspeakers, the MINI Response Center may still be able to hear the vehicle occupants.

The MINI Response Center ends the emergency call.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for example if the airbags are deployed, an emergency call is automatically triggered immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic emergency call is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

If an emergency call is placed, all other signal tones and audio sources such as the Park Distance Control are muted.

Manual triggering

To initiate an emergency call manually, proceed as follows:

1. Tap the cover flap of the SOS button to open it.
2. Press and hold the SOS button in the headliner until the LED near the button illuminates green.
   - The LED is illuminated green when an emergency call has been initiated.

     If a cancel prompt appears on the Interaction Unit, the emergency call can be canceled. If the situation allows, wait in the vehicle until

the voice connection has been established.

– The LED flashes green when the connection to the MINI Response Center has been established.

Malfunction

If the emergency call system is malfunctioning, the LED near the SOS button flashes for approx. 30 seconds. A Check Control message is displayed.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Jump-starting

Principle

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the combustion engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

WARNING

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

WARNING

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, spark formation may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

WARNING

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur while jump-starting. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the vehicle battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the vehicle battery.
2. Switch off the engine on the donor vehicle.
3. Switch off any power consumers in both vehicles.

Jump-start terminals

The jump-start terminals are located in the engine compartment.

Open the covers of the jump-start terminals.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 374.

Connecting jumper cables

Before beginning with a jump start, turn off all unnecessary consumers on the donor vehicle and the receiving vehicle, e.g., the radio.

1. Open the lid of the jump-start terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second terminal clamp to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal, of the vehicle being started.

4. Attach one terminal clamp on the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine ground or body ground, of the assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine ground or body ground, of the vehicle being started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine on the donor vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.

   If the vehicle being started has a diesel engine: Let the donor vehicle's engine run for approx. 10 minutes.
2. Start the engine on the vehicle to be started as usual.

   If the first attempt to start the engine is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables again in the reverse order.

Check the vehicle battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting/towing

Safety information

WARNING

When tow-starting/towing while safety systems or driver assistance systems are activated, the behavior of certain systems may lead to an accident, e.g., due to automatic braking or acceleration. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the corresponding safety systems or driver assistance systems when tow-starting/towing.

WARNING

Exceeding or falling below specified limit values, e.g., weight, distance traveled, or speed, can result in damage and malfunctions as well as put health at risk. There is a risk of injury, danger to life, and risk of property damage. Comply with the specified limit values.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the hazard area, it can be pushed for distances of approx. 328 ft/100 m at a speed of max. 6 mph /10 km/h.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 127.

Without ALL4: Transporting the vehicle

Principle

When towing the vehicle, make sure to tow it in the direction of traffic.

The vehicle must be transported by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

NOTICE

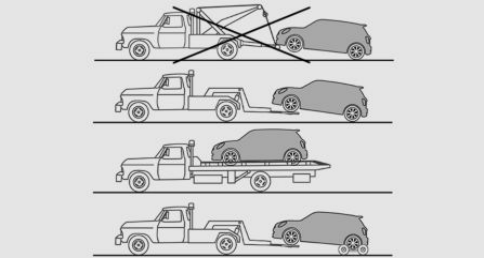
The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle while the front wheels are rolling. There is a risk of property damage. The front axle must be raised when the vehicle is towed, and the vehicle must be transported on a loading platform or using a tow dolly. Tow dollies must be used under the rear wheels only. Also make sure that no wheel is touching the ground.

WARNING

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

- Only lift the vehicle using a suitable device.
- Do not lift or secure the vehicle on the towing eye, rims, body components, or chassis components.
- For transport, secure the vehicle by placing special tire straps over the tire tread surfaces in the vehicle's longitudinal direction.

Tow truck



The vehicle should be transported with a tow truck with a so-called spectacle lift or on a loading platform.

When using a tow dolly, make sure that none of the wheels touch the ground. This method should be used for distances of 124 miles/200 km. Follow the instructions, as well as specified loads and speeds, given by the tow dolly manufacturer.

With ALL4: Transporting vehicle

Principle

When towing the vehicle, make sure to tow it in the direction of traffic.

The vehicle must be transported by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

NOTICE

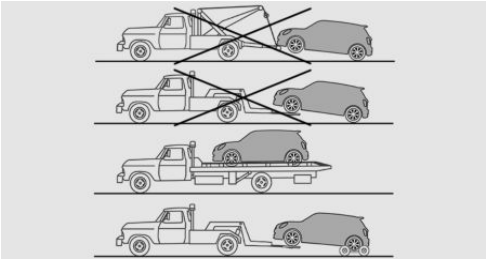
The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle while the front wheels are rolling. There is a risk of property damage. The front axle must be raised when the vehicle is towed, and the vehicle must be transported on a loading platform or using a tow dolly. Tow dollies must be used under the rear wheels only. Also make sure that no wheel is touching the ground.

WARNING

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

- Only lift the vehicle using a suitable device.
- Do not lift or secure the vehicle on the towing eye, rims, body components, or chassis components.
- For transport, secure the vehicle by placing special tire straps over the tire tread surfaces in the vehicle's longitudinal direction.

Tow truck



Have vehicle transported on a loading platform or use a tow dolly.

When using a tow dolly, make sure that none of the wheels touch the ground. This method should be used for distances of 124 miles/200 km. Follow the instructions, as well as specified loads and speeds, given by the tow dolly manufacturer.

Towing other vehicles

Principle

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system fails, mark the vehicle being towed clearly by placing a sign or warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

WARNING

If the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the towing eye may shear off or the vehicle may become uncontrollable. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

WARNING

Different levels of braking may occur when tow-starting/towing with Adaptive Recuperation. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Deactivate Adaptive Recuperation before tow-starting/towing.

NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the towing eye.

Tow bar

The towing eyes used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

If it is not possible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an incline, note the following:

- Free movement will be restricted when cornering.
- The inclination of the tow bar will generate lateral forces.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the attachment of the towing eye and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph /50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When driving off to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Towing eye

Principle

The towing eye is a device that can be screwed onto the vehicle in order to, e.g., secure tow cables or tow rods.

General information

The screw-in towing eye should always be carried in the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the towing eye. There is a risk of property damage. Follow the notes on using the towing eye.

Storage

Depending on vehicle equipment, the towing eye may be stored in a bag as follows:

- In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

Using the towing eye

When using the towing eye, note the following:

- Use only the towing eye provided with the vehicle.
- Screw in the towing eye, completely and firmly, by turning it at least five turns clockwise. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.
- After use, unscrew the towing eye counter-clockwise.
- Use the towing eye for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the towing eye, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the towing eye.
- Check the attachment of the towing eye in regular intervals.

Towing eye thread

The towing eye thread is located behind a cover on the front and rear bumper.

To remove the cover, press the mark on the edge of the cover.

To make removal easier, simultaneously pull on the opposite side of the cover.

John Cooper Works: Rotate the cover on the upper front bumper forward and pull it out to the left. Do not drop the cover.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the cause of starting issues corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 395.

Vehicle care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

Washing the vehicle

General information

The vehicle must be washed more frequently, especially in the winter. Intense contamination and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Foreign objects, e.g. leaves or snow, must be removed from the area below the windshield on a regular basis. The wipers can be folded down in order to clean the windshield completely.

Additional information:

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 168.

Safety information

WARNING

When driving, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., due to the exhaust system, brakes or radiator. Contact with the hot components can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch hot components. Do not perform work in the vicinity of hot components until after they have cooled down.

NOTICE

When washing with an open fuel filler flap, damage may occur. There is a risk of property damage. Close the fuel filler flap before washing. Clean dirt behind the fuel filler flap with a cloth.

Steam-jet cleaner and high pressure cleaner

Safety information

NOTICE

When using high-pressure cleaners, components can be damaged due to the pressure or high temperatures or because an insufficient distance was maintained. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that sufficient distance is maintained. Do not spray continuously on one spot. Follow the operating instructions for the high pressure cleaners.

Distances and temperature

When using a steam/high-pressure cleaner, maintain the following distances and temperatures.

- Maximum temperature: 140°F/60°C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals and lights: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic car washes or tunnel car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic car washes or tunnel car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Observe the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Note the permissible vehicle dimensions for the tunnel car wash or car wash.
- Do not drive through a car wash or tunnel car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the body.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the window wiper system.
- Take off all removable attachments, e.g., antennas.

Driving into a tunnel car wash

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a tunnel car wash.

In a tunnel car wash, the vehicle must be able to coast freely.

Some tunnel car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 127.

Driving out of a tunnel car wash

When exiting a tunnel car wash, make sure that the vehicle key is in the vehicle.

Switch on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 43.

Lights

When cleaning, do not rub wet lights dry, and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents or cleaning agents containing alcohol.

Soak the area soiled by insects with an insect remover and rinse with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray, do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. Otherwise, their braking effect may be reduced. The heat generated while braking dries the brake disks and brake pads and protects them from corrosion.

Completely remove all wash residue, e.g., smearing, on the window glass to ensure sufficient visibility and to reduce wiper noise and wiper blade wear.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

The manufacturer recommends using care and cleaning products from the vehicle manufacturer. Suitable vehicle care products are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use cleaning agents that are intended for cleaning the respective component. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General information

Regular vehicle care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants can affect the vehicle paintwork. Environmental influences include tree resin or pollen, for example.

To prevent paint alteration and discoloration, remove corrosive substances immediately. Corrosive substances include spilled fuel, oil, grease, or bird droppings, for example.

Matte paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte paintwork.

Plastic wrap

Use only cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with a plastic wrap.

Leather care

Dust and crumbs can work into pores and folds, causing heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the leather surface.

Clean leather regularly with a damp cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Certain clothes and other influences can cause discoloration of the leather. To prevent discoloration, clean and maintain the leather approx. every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because contamination on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products to preserve the protective coating of the leather.

To prevent leather alteration and discoloration, remove corrosive substances immediately. Corrosive substances include sunscreen, for example.

Synthetic leather care

Dust and crumbs can work into pores and folds, causing heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the artificial leather surface.

Clean synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfiber cloth or vacuum cleaner. In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

To prevent artificial leather alteration and discoloration, remove corrosive substances immediately. Corrosive substances include sunscreen, for example.

Fabric care

General information

In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

To prevent material alteration and discoloration, remove corrosive substances immediately. Corrosive substances include sunscreen, for example.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners, zippers, or applications, e.g., studs on clothing can damage the seat covers and the other fabric and leather covers in the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the fasteners are closed.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum the cushions regularly with a vacuum cleaner. Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Textile care

Using a damp microfiber cloth, clean the fabric regularly.

Alcantara

Use microfiber cloth soaked with water to clean minor soiling. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Fabric care

Use a vacuum to clean the fabric on the instrument panel and doors if lightly soiled, or clean with a damp microfiber cloth. Use a grease-soluble cleaner and soft brush for heavy soiling.

Caring for special components

Displays, operating elements, and projection screen of the Head-up display

NOTICE

Surfaces can be damaged by improper cleaning, e.g., by using chemical cleaners, or from moisture or liquid of any kind. There is a risk of property damage.

- Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.
- Use a dry, clean antistatic microfiber cloth for cleaning displays.
- Clean the operating elements and, depending on vehicle equipment, the projection screen of the Head-up display with a damp microfiber cloth and standard household dish soap.

Light-alloy wheels

Corrosive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents can damage the rim surface and the protective layer on adjacent components, e.g., the brakes.

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral rim cleaners with a pH value of 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam-jet cleaners above 140°F/60°C. Follow instructions given by the manufacturer.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated while braking dries the brake disks and brake pads and protects them from corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean chrome-like surfaces, especially if exposed to road salt, using plenty of water and adding auto shampoo as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface contamination of rubber parts and a loss of shine. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care products at regular intervals. To avoid damage or noise, use care products containing silicone to maintain the profile seals.

Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the window washer system.

To prevent a reduction in wiper quality, avoid cleaning the wiper blades manually unless necessary.

Windows

If noise is heard when the windows are opened and closed, e.g. squeaking, proceed as follows:

1. Clean the inside and outside of the windows with a damp cloth and conventional dish soap.
2. While wet, open and close the windows several times so that the window cavity cover also becomes wet.
3. Rub the windows dry.

Side windows

If there is noise when opening and closing the side windows, e.g., squeaking, clean the inside and outside of the side windows once using a damp cloth and standard dish soap. Then open and close the slightly damp side windows once.

Fine wood parts

Clean the fine wood veneer and fine wood components with a damp cloth. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Solvent cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents such as lacquer thinners, cold cleaning agents, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Moisten the cloth lightly with water if necessary.

When cleaning plastic parts, make sure that no fabric parts, e.g., the headliner, become wet.

Seat belts

WARNING

Chemical solvent cleaners can destroy the fabric of the seat belts and lead to seat belts no longer having their protective effect. There is a risk of injury and danger to life. Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the seat belts.

The seat belts should be cleaned for safety reasons. Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus should be avoided for safety reasons.

Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Seat belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Rear head restraint cushion

When cleaning cushions and rear head restraints, note the following:

Cover must be washed by hand.

Inner cushions are not washable.

Carpets and floor mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

- Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell.
- Use (carpet) floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely attached to the floor.
- Do not use loose floor mats, and do not layer multiple floor mats on top of one another.
- Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals.
- Make sure that floor mats are securely reattached after removing them, e.g., when cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the interior for cleaning.

If the carpets are heavily soiled, clean them with a microfiber cloth and water or a fabric cleaner. Rub back and forth in the direction of travel to prevent the carpet from becoming matted.

Sensors and camera lenses

General information

To clean the sensors or camera lenses, use a cloth that has been wetted with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Cleaning the Rear View Camera

When the rear window is cleaned, the Rear View Camera is also cleaned automatically.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 9.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. Vehicle-specific data may deviate from this, for instance due to the optional equipment chosen, national-market version, or country-specific measuring process. More specific values can be obtained in approval documents, on the vehicle info label, or from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment version or country-specific measurement procedure.

The height of the vehicle can also differ, e.g., due to tires and vehicle load.

Detailed technical data

MINI Countryman Dimensions		
Width with mirrors	in	81.5
	mm	2,069
Width without mirrors	in	72.6
	mm	1,843
Height	in	65.2
	mm	1,657
Length	in	175.1
	mm	4,447
Wheelbase	in	106.0
	mm	2,692
Turning circle Ø	ft	38.7

MINI Countryman Dimensions		
	m	11.8
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal	14.3
	Liters	54

MINI Countryman S ALL4 Weight		
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1,100
	kg	499
Maximum permissible total weight	lb	4,949
	kg	2,245
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2,524
	kg	1,145
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2,624
	kg	1,190

MINI Countryman S ALL4 Trailer towing		
Maximum permissible trailer load without brakes	lb	1,653
	kg	750
Maximum permissible trailer load, braked, 12 % gradient	lb	3,499
	kg	1,587
Maximum permissible drawbar nose weight	lb	348
	kg	158
Maximum permissible rear axle load, towing vehicle	lb	2,624
	kg	1,190
Maximum permissible total weight, towing vehicle	lb	4,949
	kg	2,245

MINI Countryman JCW ALL4 Weight		
Maximum permissible payload	lb	1,089
	kg	494
Maximum permissible total weight	lb	4,960
	kg	2,250
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2,546
	kg	1,155
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2,590
	kg	1,175

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Everything from A to Z

Index

0-9

3D view 259
48-volt technology, see Mild Hybrid technology 391

A

ABS, see Antilock Braking System 216
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 130
Acceleration sensor, see G-Meter 154
Accessories and parts 10
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 212
Activated carbon filter, see Interior filter 292
Activation points, panorama view 261
Activation, trailer towing 328
Activation word 52
Active Blind Spot Detection 193
Active Cruise Control, see Speed control systems 224
Active Guard, see Collision warning systems 174
Active Park Distance Control 267
Active Park Distance Control with Side Protection, see Automatic camera perspective 257
Active Protection 212
Adaptive lighting functions 163
Adaptive suspension 284
Adding engine oil types 380
Additional camera views 254
Additives, engine oil types 380
Adjusting driving dynamics, see MINI Modes 131
Adjusting speed to route 248
Adjusting the airflow direction, see Ventilation 292
Advanced Real Time Traffic Information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
After run of fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 320
Airbags 170
Airbags, warning light 172
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 289
Air cleaning, see Air quality 292
Air conditioning, climate 288
Air conditioning system 285
Air distribution, manual 288
Air drying, see Air conditioning 288
Air flow, air conditioning system 288
Air outlets, see Ventilation 292
Air pressure, tires 342
Air quality, vehicle interior 292
Air vents, see Ventilation 292
Alarm, avoiding 93
Alarm system 91
ALL4 219
All-season tires, see Winter tires 351
All-season tires, tread, see Tire tread depth 349
All-wheel drive, see ALL4 219
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 55
Ambient light 165
Android Auto, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 382
Antilock Braking System 216
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 370
Anti-trap mechanism, glass sunroof 98
Anti-trap mechanism, windows 95
Apple CarPlay, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Applications, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Apps, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Articulation angle, Trailer Assistant 329
Assistance with breakdown 393
Assistance with driving off on inclines, see Drive-off assistant 134
Assisted Driving Mode, lane keeping, see Speed control systems 224
Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see Speed control systems 224
Assisted View 153
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
AUTO H, see Automatic Hold 136
Automatic camera perspective 257
Automatic car wash, see Washing the vehicle 401
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 112
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 173
Automatic dimming, see High Beam Assistant 157
Automatic driving lights control 160
Automatic emergency braking, see Post-Crash-iBrake 213
Automatic headlight control 160
Automatic Hold 136
Automatic locking 90
Automatic Park Assistant 270
Automatic Parking Assistant, see Maneuver Assistant 278
Automatic transmission 125
Automatic unlocking 90
Automatic wiper system, see Rain sensor 167
AUTO program, climate control 286
Auto Start/Stop function 122

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 103
Backrest, seats 100
Backrest tilt 102
Backrest tilt, rear seats 104
Back Up Assistant 276
Back Up Assistant Professional 276
Balance Mode, see MINI Modes 131
Ball head, removable 326
Bandages, see First-aid kit 393
Bar for tow-starting/towing 398
Battery, disposal 391
Battery, vehicle 389
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 396
Belts, see Seat belts 105
Beverage holder, front 308
Beverage holder, rear 309
Blind spot collision warning 193
Blocking, power windows, see Safety switch 96
Blower, see Air flow 288
Bluetooth audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Bluetooth connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Boost, see Sport Boost function 131
Bottle holder, front, see Cup holder, front 308
Bottle holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear 309
Brake assistant 216
Brake Controller 333
Brake disks, see Brake system 318
Brake pads, see Brake system 318
Brake system 318
Braking, information 321
Breakdown assistance 393
Breakdown, see Wheel change 369
Break-in 318
Break-in procedures 318
Break recommendation, see Fatigue Alert 213
Brightness, Interaction Unit 49
Bulbs and lights 389
Button, central locking system 88
Buttons on the steering wheel 32
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 394

Button, Start/Stop, see Start/Stop switch 122
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 395

C

Calibration of the front seats 103
California Proposition 65 Warning 10
Camera behind windshield, see Cameras 36
Camera cleaning, see Sensors and camera lenses 406
Camera, instrument panel, see Driver Attention Camera 215
Camera, interior mirror, see Interior camera 303
Camera lenses, care 406
Camera perspective, automatic 257
Camera perspective, semi-automatic 257
Camera, Rear View Camera 256
Cameras 36
Camera view aid lines, see Additional views 254
Car battery, see Vehicle battery 389
Care, displays, screens 404
Care, Head-up display 404
Care, light-alloy wheels 404
Care, vehicle 403
Cargo area 310
Cargo area, enlarging 314
Cargo cover 315
Cargo position, see Enlarging the cargo area 314
Cargo, see Loading 310
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 311
Car key, see Vehicle key 69
Carpet, care 406
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 115
Car washes, automatic 401
Car wash, see Washing the vehicle 401
Car wash view 260
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 319
CBS, see Condition Based Service 385
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center console 34
Central locking switch, see Central locking system 88
Central locking system 88
Changes, technical, see For your own safety 10
Changing parts 388
Changing, wheels and tires, see Replacing wheels and tires 350
Charging a smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 301
Charging cradle 301
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 301
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 15
Check Control 141
Checking the engine oil level, electronic 379
Checking the oil level, electronic 379
Children, seating position 115
Children, transporting safely 115
Child restraint seats 115
Child restraint system LATCH 118
Child restraint systems, mounting 116
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 115
Child safety lock, see Securing rear doors and windows 121
Child seat installation 116
Child seat, mounting 116
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 115
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 404
Chrome surfaces, care 404
Cleaning, see Vehicle care 403
Closing the cargo area, see Access to the cargo area 84
Closing with smartphone, see MINI Digital Key 75
Clothes hooks 309
Coasting 335
Coasting with idling engine 335
Coat hooks 309

Collision warning systems 174
Comfort Access, see Comfort Access 79
Comfort entry 105
Comfort exit 105
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 368
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 48
Compound brake, see JCW Performance Brake 216
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 322
Condensation, windshield, see Defroster 290
Condition Based Service 385
Confirmation signals 90
Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle 55
Connecting, see Connecting to the vehicle 55
Connection, electrical devices, see Sockets 299
Contactless trunk opening/closing 86
Contacts, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Continuing driving with flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 361
Continuing driving with flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Control display, see MINI Interaction Unit 45
Control systems, driving stability 216
Convoy Assistant, Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see Speed control systems 224
Coolant 381
Coolant level 382
Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature 150
Cooling, maximum 289
Cooling system 381
Core Mode, see MINI Modes 131
Cornering light 163
Corrosion, brake disks 322
Cosmetic mirror 299
Cross Traffic Warning 206
Cruise Control, Cruise Control, see Speed control systems 224
Cruise Control, see Speed control systems 224
Cruising range 152
Cup holder, front 308
Cup holder, rear 309
Current system software, see Version history 58
Cushions for rear head restraints, care 405

D

Damage, tires 349
Dashboard 32
Dashcam, see Drive Recorder 209
Data memory 12
Data protection, settings 61
Data, see Personal data, deleting 61
Data, technical 408
Date, see Date and time 155
Daytime driving lights 162
Daytime running lights 162
Deep sleep mode 42
Defrost 290
Defrosting the windscreen, see Defroster 290
Defrosting the windshield, see Defroster 290
Defrosting windows, see Defroster 290
Defrosting, windshield, see Defroster 290
Deleting, personal data 61
Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation 293
Departure time, pre-conditioning via Remote Engine Start 295
Departure time, pre-ventilation 293
Destination input 6
Diagnostic port 386
Diagnostic socket 386
Digital Key 75
Digital key, see MINI Digital Key 75
Dimmable interior mirror 112
Dimming exterior mirror 112
Direct access 51
Direct access buttons 51
Direct dial buttons, see Shortcuts 48

Display and operating concept 45
Display, GREEN Mode 336
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 163
Displays 139
Displays and icons 8
Disposal, coolant 382
Disposal, vehicle battery 391
Distance Control, see Speed control systems 224
Distance, see Speed control systems 224
Distance Warning, see Park Distance Control 264
Door handle lighting, see Welcome lights 161
Door opening angle 262
Downhill control, see Hill Descent Control 219
Drive-off assistant 134
Drive-Off Monitoring 268
Drive-off support 219
Drive power reduced 148
Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera 215
Driver Assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 251
Driver assistance systems 222
Driver Attention Camera, see Driver Attention Camera 215
Drive-ready state, see Operating state of vehicle 41
Drive Recorder 209
Driver profiles 62
Driver profiles, welcome screen 62
Drive sound, see MINI Sound 284
Driving 122
Driving Assistant, see Collision warning systems 174
Driving comfort 284
Driving Dynamics Control, see MINI Modes 131
Driving dynamics, setting 218
Driving information 50
Driving lights mode 163
Driving mode, GREEN 336
Driving Mode, see MINI Modes 131
Driving notes 318
Driving off, see Drive-off support 219
Driving on poor roads 322
Driving stability control systems 216
Driving through water 320
Driving tips, see General driving notes 319
DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control 217
DTC, see Setting for increased driving dynamics 218
Dynamic shock absorber, see Adaptive suspension 284
Dynamic Stability Control 217
Dynamic Traction Control, see Setting for increased driving dynamics 218

E

EDR, see Event data recorder 14
Efficiency Coach, Green Mode 337
Electromechanical parking brake 134
Electronic oil measurement 379
Electronic stability program, see Dynamic Stability Control 217
Emergency brake, see Emergency Stop Assistant 205
Emergency call 393
Emergency detection, vehicle key 74
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 341
Emergency release, parking lock 128
Emergency start function, engine start 74
Emergency Stop Assistant 205
Emergency wheel 368
Emissions, see Pollutant emissions 386
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 151
Engine, Auto Start/Stop function 122
Engine compartment 374
Engine coolant 381
Engine hood, see Hood 374
Engine idling when driving, see Coasting 335
Engine oil filler neck 379
Engine oil, refilling 379
Engine oil types to add 380
ENGINE, see Drive-ready state 41
Engine sound, see MINI Sound 284
Engine start during malfunction 74

Engine start in case of fault 74
Engine starting, see Vehicle operating state 41
Engine start, see Jump-starting 395
Engine temperature 150
Entering a destination, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, selection list on Interaction Unit 150
Entry assistance, exit assistance 105
Entry comparison 48
Error indicators, see Check Control 141
eSIM telephony, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control 217
Evasion Assistant, see Forward Collision Mitigation 176
Event data recorder 14
Exhaust emissions, see Pollutant emissions 386
Exhaust gas particulate filter 320
Exhaust, see Exhaust system 319
Exhaust system 319
Exit Warning 187
Experience switch, see MINI Modes 131
Exterior lighting, locked vehicle, see Welcome light 162
Exterior mirror 110
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Exterior mirror cameras, see Cameras 36
External start, see Jump-starting 395
Eye for towing 399
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 311

F

Factory settings, see Vehicle data, resetting 62
Failure message, see Check Control 141
Fan after run, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 320
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts 105
Fatigue Alert 213
Fatigue warner, see Fatigue Alert 213
Fault indicators, see Check Control 141
Filler neck for engine oil 379
Filling pressure, tires 342
Filter, see Interior filter 292
Fine wood parts, care 405
First-aid kit 393
Fittings for trailer safety chain, trailer towing 327
Flat tire, continuing driving, see Flat tire monitor 361
Flat tire, continuing driving, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Flat tire monitor 361
Flat tire notification, see Flat tire monitor 361
Flat tire notification, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Flat tire, repairing 364
Flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 361
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Flat tire warning light, see Flat tire monitor 361
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Flooding, see Driving through flood 320
Floor carpet, care 406
Floor mats, care 406
Fold-away position, wiper 168
Fold-out position 168
Foot brake, see Braking safely 321
Foot movement to open and close the tailgate, see Opening and closing the cargo area hands-free 86
Forward Collision Mitigation 176
Forward Collision Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 176

For your own safety 10
Front airbags 170
Front camera, see Cameras 36
Front lights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 389
Front passenger's side exterior mirror, tilting down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 173
Front radar sensor, see Radar sensors 37
Front-seat passenger airbag, indicator light 173
Front seats 100
Fuel 377
Fuel filler cap 340
Fuel filler flap 340
Fuel gauge 152
Fuel quality 377
Fuel recommendation 377
Fuses 392

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 297
Gasoline 377
Gasoline particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 320
Gasoline particulate filter, see Exhaust particulate filter 320
Gasoline quality 378
Gear change, see Automatic transmission 125
Gearshift indicator 151
General driving notes 319
Glare shield, see Sun visor 299
Glass sunroof 96
Glass sunroof, initializing the glass sunroof and sun protection 99
Glove compartment 307
G-Meter 154
Go Kart Mode, see MINI Modes 131
GPS navigation, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
GREEN Mode 336
Green Mode, see MINI Modes 131
Guest profile, see MINI ID 62

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 134
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 298
Hands-free device, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hands-free system 6
Hazard warning system 393
HDC, see Hill Descent Control 219
Head airbag 171
Headlight control, automatic 160
Headlight flasher 156
Headlight glass 389
Headlights, care 402
Headlights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 389
Headlights, turning up, dimming, see High Beam Assistant 157
Headliner 35
Head restraint cushions, care 405
Head restraints and seats 100
Head restraints, front 108
Head restraints, rear 109
Head-up display 140
Head-up display, care 404
Head-up display, store position, see Memory function 113
Heated steering wheel 291
Heavy cargo, stowing 311
High Beam Assistant 157
High-beam headlights 156
Higher speed range 319
Highway Assistant, Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see Speed control systems 224
Hill Ascent Control, see Drive-off assistant 134
Hill Descent Control 219
Hills 321
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 297
Homepage, see Internet 8

Hood 374
Horn 32
Hot exhaust system 319

I

iBrake, automatic brake intervention 176
Ice warning, see Outside temperature 154
Icons and displays 8
Identification marks, tires 347
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 15
Idle state, see Operating state of vehicle 41
Illustration, MINI Interaction Unit 47
Inclination 102
Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 173
Indicator lights 142
Individual air distribution 288
Individual settings, see MINI ID 62
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 301
Information 6
Information on Driver Assistance, displaying, see Assisted View 153
Input, MINI Interaction Unit 47
Inserts, see Supplementary documentation 8
Installation of child restraint systems 116
Instrument cluster, see Driving information 50
Instrument lighting 163
Integrated key 71
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 7
Integrated Universal Remote Control 297
Intelligent emergency call 394
Intelligent Personal Assistant 51
Intelligent Safety, see Collision warning systems 174
Intended use 10
Interaction Unit 45
Interior air, see Air quality 292
Interior camera 303
Interior equipment 297
Interior filter 292
Interior filter, see Air quality 292
Interior filter status display, see Air quality 292
Interior light, locked vehicle, see Welcome light 162
Interior lights 164
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 112
Interior mirror, dashboard overview 35
Interior mirror, manually dimmable 112
Interior motion sensor 93
Internet page 8
Intersection Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 176
Interval indicator, see Service notifications 155

J

Jacking points 371
Jacking points for the vehicle jack 371
JCW Mode, see MINI Modes 131
JCW Performance Brake 216
Joystick, see Automatic transmission 125
Jump-starting 395
Jump-starting terminals 395
Jump-start terminals 395

K

Key Card, see Service Card 78
Key, mechanical 71
Key, see Vehicle key 69
Kickdown, see Automatic transmission 125
Knee airbag 171

L

Labeling 347
Lane boundary, warning 189
Lane Change Assistant 240
Lane change with active destination guidance 241
Lane control assistant with active side collision mitigation, see Side Collision Protection 196

Lane Departure Warning 189
Lane keeping, Assisted Driving Mode, see Speed control systems 224
Lane lines, additional camera view displays 254
Lane threshold, warning 189
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 311
LATCH child restraint system 118
Launch Control 130
Leather care 403
LED headlights, changing, see Bulbs and lights 389
Left Turn Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 176
Letters and numbers, entering 47
Light-alloy wheels, care 404
Light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 193
Light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning 206
Lighting 159
Light replacement, see Bulbs and lights 389
Lights 156
Lights, care 402
Light switch, see Exterior lighting 159
List, Interaction Unit, see Selection lists 150
Load 311
Loading 310
Loading position, see Enlarging the cargo area 314
Loading the cargo area, see Loading 310
Locking, see Opening and Closing 69
Locking, settings 89
Lock, lug bolts 370
Long stationary periods, see Deep sleep mode 42
Loop, see Towing eye 399
Low-beam headlights 160
Lower back support, see Lumbar support 103
Lug bolt lock 370
Luggage rack, see Roof bars 323
Luggage straps 311
Lumbar massage, see Seat massage 103
Lumbar support 103

M

Maintenance 385
Maintenance recommendation, see Condition Based Service 385
Maintenance system 385
Make-up mirror 299
Malfunction, vehicle key 74
Maneuver Assistant 278
Manually unlocking doors, see Integrated key 71
Manual mode, transmission 129
Marking, run-flat tire 352
Matte paintwork 403
Matt paint, care 403
Maximum cooling 289
Maximum speed, winter tires 351
Measurement indicator, see Driving information 50
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 393
Memory function 113
Messages, see Check Control 141
Messages, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Microfilter, see Interior filter 292
Mild Hybrid technology 391
MINI Connected, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
MINI Digital Key 75
MINI EXPERIENCE Modes, see MINI Modes 131
MINI ID 62
MINI Intelligent Personal Assistant 51
MINI Interaction Unit 45
MINI maintenance system, see Maintenance system 385
MINI Modes 131
Minimum tread depth, tires 349
MINI Remote Software Upgrade 57
MINI Sound 284
MINI Toggle Bar, see Switch cluster 34
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Mobility system, see Tire repair set Plus 365
MODE button, see Speed control systems 224
Modifications, technical, see For your own safety 10
Moisture in headlight, see Headlight glass 389
Motorsport, see Driving on a race track 323
Mount for trailer hitch, care 326
Mounting of child restraint systems 116
Mug holder, front, see Cup holder, front 308
Mug holder, rear, see Cup holder, rear 309
Multifunction hook 312
Multi-function steering wheel 32
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 32

N

Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints, front 108
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints, rear 109
Net, cargo area 312
Neutral cleaner, light-alloy wheels, see Care 404
Notifications, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
No-touch opening and closing of the tailgate 86
No Turn on Red Information 204
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 398

O

OBD, see Diagnostic socket 386
Obstacle marking, additional camera view displays 254
Octane number, see Gasoline quality 378
OFF indicator, see Standby and drive-ready state 149
Off-road driving, see Driving on poor roads 322
Oil filler neck 379
Oil, refilling 379
Oil service interval, see Service notifications 155
Oil types to add, engine 380
Old battery 391
On-board diagnosis, see Diagnostic socket 386
Onboard toolkit 388
One-touch signaling 156
Opening and closing 69
Opening and closing the cargo area hands-free 86
Opening and closing the cargo area, see Access to the cargo area 84
Opening and closing the tailgate 84
Opening and closing the trunk hands-free 86
Opening the cargo area, see Access to the cargo area 84
Opening the vehicle from the inside, see Buttons for central locking system 88
Opening the vehicle from the outside, see Access to vehicle interior 79
Opening with smartphone, see MINI Digital Key 75
Operating elements, center console 34
Operating fluids 377
Operating menus, MINI Interaction Unit 45
Operating principle of MINI Interaction Unit 45
Operating state of vehicle 41
Operating temperature, see Engine temperature 150
Operation via voice 51
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 9
Outside air quality display, see Air quality 292
Outside temperature 154
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature 150
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 387

P

Paint, vehicle care 403

Paintwork 403
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 92
Panic mode 92
Panorama View 260
Panorama View, see Panorama View 260
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 96
Parallel parking assistance, see Automatic camera perspective 257
Park Distance Control 264
Parking 251
Parking aid lines, additional camera views 254
Parking assistance systems 251
Parking assistant 270
Parking Assistant Plus, see Parking assistance systems 251
Parking Assistant Professional, see Parking assistance systems 251
Parking Assistant, see Park Distance Control 264
Parking Assistant, see Parking assistance systems 251
Parking brake 134
Parking brake function, see Active Park Distance Control 267
Parking lights 161
Parking lines, see Automatic Park Assistant 270
Parking lock, see Engaging selector lever positions 125
Parking lock, see Selector lever positions 125
Parking with Automatic Hold 136
Particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 320
Parts and accessories 10
Pathway lighting 162
Pathway lighting, turning on 162
Payload 311
PDC, see Park Distance Control 264
Pedestrian Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 176
Performance display, see Sport displays 154
Performing initialization 362
Personal Assistant 51
Personal data, deleting 61
Personal eSIM, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Personal hotspot, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Personal Mode, see MINI Modes 131
Personal profile, see MINI ID 62
Personal settings 61
Physical units, see Setting units of measurement 155
Plastic parts, care 405
Pollutant emissions 386
PostCrash-iBrake 213
Power failure 391
Power gauge 148
Power interruption 391
Power windows 93
Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start 294
PreCrash functions, see Active Protection 212
Pressure monitor, tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Pressure, tires, see Tire inflation pressure 342
Pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 361
Pressure warning, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Pre-ventilation 293
Prevention of rear-end collision, see Rear-End Collision Preparation 199
Preventive maintenance 385
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Anti-trap mechanism 98
Protective function, windows, see Anti-trap mechanism 95

R

Race track 323
Radar sensors 37
Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 320
Radiator fluid 381

Radio information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Radio stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rain sensor 167
Rain sensor mode 167
READY indicator, see Standby and drive-ready state 149
Rear climate control, see Climate control 285
Rear-End Collision Preparation 199
Rear light, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 389
Rear luggage rack 333
Rear-mounted luggage rack 333
Rear seat backrests, folding down 314
Rear seat backrest tilt 104
Rear seats 104
Rear View Camera 256
Rear View Camera, see Cameras 36
Rear-view mirror, exterior 110
Rear window defroster 290
Rear window wiper, operation 168
Rear wiper 168
Recirculated-air mode 289
Recirculating air filter, see Interior filter 292
Recommended gear, see Gearshift indicator 151
Recommended tire brands 350
Reduced drive power 148
Refreshing the air, see Air quality 292
Refueling 340
Release fuel filler flap, manual 341
Releasing the parking lock, electronically 128
Remote 3D View 263
Remote control, see Remote Control Parking 282
Remote control, see Vehicle key 69
Remote control, universal 297
Remote Engine Start, see Pre-conditioning 294
Remote parking 282
Remote services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Replacement, wheels and tires, see Replacing wheels and tires 350
Replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 389
Replacing light-emitting diodes, see Bulbs and lights 389
Replacing parts 388
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 70
Replacing wheels and tires 350
Reporting safety defects 16
Reserve warning, see Range 152
Reservoir, washer fluid 382
Resetting, vehicle data 62
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 356
Reset, vehicle settings 62
Restricted Driving, see MINI Digital Key 75
Retreaded tires 351
Reversing Assistant 276
Risk of collision when exiting, see Exit Warning 187
Roadside parking lights 161
Rollback Prevention, see Drive-off assistant 134
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 298
Rolling to a stop with engine decoupled, see Coasting 335
RON, see Gasoline quality 378
Roof bars 323
Roofliner 35
Roof luggage rack, see Roof bars 323
Rope for tow-starting/towing 398
Rough roads, see Driving on poor roads 322
Route and Intersection Assistant, see Adjusting speed to route 248
Route, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RSC, see Run-flat tires 352
Rubber components, care 405
Run-flat tires 352
Run-flat tires, see Tires with emergency running properties 352

S

Safe braking 321
Safe Exit, see Exit Warning 187
Safe Share function, see MINI Digital Key 75
Safety 170
Safety and warning, see Collision warning systems 174
Safety package, see Active Protection 212
Safety switch, windows 96
Safety systems, see Airbags 170
Safety systems, see Collision warning systems 174
Satellite radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Saved stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Saving fuel 335
Sealant, see Tire repair set Plus 365
Seamless mode change, see Remote Control Parking 282
Seat belt reminder, see Seat belt warning 107
Seat belts 105
Seat belts, care 405
Seat belt warning 107
Seat calibration 103
Seat heating 291
Seating position for children 115
Seat massage 103
Seats and head restraints 100
Seats, front 100
Seats, rear 104
Securing, cargo 311
Securing, doors and windows 121
Securing vehicle to prevent rolling away, see Parking brake 134
Selecting the ventilation mode, see Ventilation 292
Selection list on Interaction Unit 150
Selector lever, see Automatic transmission 125
Semi-automatic camera perspective 257
Sensors, care 406
Service and warranty 11
Service Card 78
Service notifications 155
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service 385
Servotronic 221
SET button, see Speed control systems 224
Setting the language, see Setting the system language 53
Setting the system language 53
Setting the time, see Date and time 155
Setting units of measurement 155
Setup Card 75
Shift lights 151
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 129
Shift point indicator, tachometer 151
Shortcuts, Interaction Unit 48
Side airbag 170
Side Collision Protection 196
Side protection, see Automatic camera perspective 257
Side view 259
Signaling, horn 32
Sitting safely 100
Slipperiness, see Outside temperature 154
Slippery road, see Outside temperature 154
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice control 54
Snapshot camera, see Interior camera 303
Snow chains 353
Socket for on-board diagnosis, see Diagnostic socket 386
Sockets, electrical devices 299
Software version, see MINI Remote Software Upgrade 57
Soot particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 320
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 394
Sound of engine, see MINI Sound 284
Sound settings, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 368
Speed control systems 224

Speed indicator, see Trip data 50
Speed Limit Assist 246
Speed Limit Assistant 246
Speed limit device, Speed Limiter, see Speed control systems 224
Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info with no-passing indicator 222
Speed Limiter, manual, see Speed control systems 224
Speed Limit Info with no-passing indicator 222
Speedometer, see Trip data 50
Speed warning 222
Sport Boost function 131
Sport displays 154
SPORT Mode, JCW Mode, see MINI Modes 131
SPORT PLUS setting, see Setting for increased driving dynamics 218
Sport program, see Automatic transmission 125
Stability control systems 216
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 9
Standby state, see Operating state of vehicle 41
Start/Stop, automatic, see Auto Start/Stop function 122
Start/Stop switch 122
Start function during malfunction 74
Starting aid terminals 395
Starting, see Vehicle operating state 41
Starting the engine, see Vehicle operating state 41
Stationary periods, see Deep sleep mode 42
Stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 355
Status information, MINI Interaction Unit 47
Status of Owner's Manual 9
Status, vehicle 153
Steering column adjustment 113
Steering support, see Servotronic 221
Steering wheel, adjusting 113
Steering wheel, buttons 32
Steering wheel heating 291
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Automatic transmission 125
Steptronic transmission, see Automatic transmission 125
Steptronic transmission with double clutch, see Automatic transmission 125
Storage compartments 307
Storage, tires 352
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 113
Store seat position, see Memory function 113
Store steering wheel position, see Memory function 113
Storing the vehicle 387
Stowage, cargo 311
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 311
Summer tires, tread, see Tire tread depth 349
Sun visor 299
Supplementary documentation 8
Supplementary Owner's Manuals, see Supplementary documentation 8
Suspension 284
Swinging of trailer, see Trailer stabilization control 332
Switch cluster 34
Switches, see Dashboard 32
Switching off the engine, see Vehicle operating state 41
Switch, Start/Stop 122
SYNC program, Climate control 290

T

Tachometer 149
Tailgate, opening and closing with no-touch activation 86
Taillights, replacing, see Bulbs and lights 389
Taking the vehicle out of service 387
Technical changes, see For your own safety 10
Technical data 408

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Telephone, selection list on Interaction Unit 150
Teleservices, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, air conditioning system 287
Temperature display, see Outside temperature 154
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 91
Tilt alarm sensor 93
Tilt, backrest 102
Tilting down, front passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 112
Timeless Mode, see MINI Modes 131
Time zone 155
Tire brands, recommendation 350
Tire change, see Wheel change 369
Tire damage 349
Tire identification marks 347
Tire inflation pressure 342
Tire marking 347
Tire pressure 342
Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Tire pressure monitoring, see Tire Pressure Monitor 353
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 356
Tire Pressure Monitor, see Flat tire monitor 361
Tire pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 361
Tire repair set Plus 365
Tire replacement, see Replacing wheels and tires 350
Tires and wheels 342
Tire sealant, see Tire repair set Plus 365
Tire settings 354
Tires, run-flat 352
Tire tread 349
Toggle Bar, see Switch cluster 34
Toggle, see Automatic transmission 125
Tools 388
Torque display, see Sport displays 154
Tow bar 398
Towing 396
Towing eye 399
Tow rope 398
Tow-starting 396
Traction control system, see Dynamic Stability Control 217
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Traffic Jam Assistant, Assisted Driving Mode Plus, see Speed control systems 224
Traffic Light and Sign Warning 200
Trailer angle, Trailer Assistant 329
Trailer Assistant 329
Trailer hitch, ball head, removable 326
Trailer hitch, care 326
Trailer hitch, mount for 326
Trailer hitch view 259
Trailer stabilization control 332
Trailer towing 325
Trailer towing, activation 328
Trail Mode, see MINI Modes 131
Transporting children safely 115
Tread, tires 349
Trunk, see Cargo area 310
Tunnel car wash 401
Turn indicators, see Turn signals 156
Turning circle lines, additional camera view displays 254
Turning display, see No Turn on Red Information 204
Turn signal, indicator light 146
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 389
Turn signals 156
Turn Warning, see Active Blind Spot Detection 193

U

Ultrasonic sensors 39
Unintended alarm, see Unintentional alarm, avoiding 93
Unintentional alarm, avoiding 93
Units, see Setting units of measurement 155
Universal remote control 297
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 69

Unlocking, settings 89
Unpaved roads, see Driving on poor roads 322
Updates made after the editorial deadline 9
Updating software, see MINI Remote Software Upgrade 57
Upgrade, see MINI Remote Software Upgrade 57
Upgrading software, see MINI Remote Software Upgrade 57
Upholstery material care 404
Upper retaining strap, top tether 119
USB connection 300
USB port, position in vehicle 300
Used battery, disposing of 391
Use, intended 10

V

Vanity mirror 299
Vehicle battery 389
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 393
Vehicle care 403
Vehicle care products 403
Vehicle data, resetting 62
Vehicle equipment 9
Vehicle identification number 15
Vehicle issues 393
Vehicle key 69
Vehicle key, additional 70
Vehicle key, loss 70
Vehicle paint, care 403
Vehicle paintwork 403
Vehicle rolling away, see Parking brake 134
Vehicle sensors 36
Vehicle status 153
Vehicle storage 387
Ventilation 292
Ventilation, front 292
Ventilation, rear 292
Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation 293
Video recording, see Drive Recorder 209
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 15
Vivid Mode, see MINI Modes 131
Voice activation system 51
Voice control 51
Voice control, see MINI Intelligent Personal Assistant 51
Voice recognition 51
Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

W

Wake word 52
Warning for crossing traffic, see Cross Traffic Warning 206
Warning for exiting, see Exit Warning 187
Warning for opening doors, see Exit Warning 187
Warning function for incorrect driving direction, see Wrong Way Warning 202
Warning function for oncoming traffic, see Forward Collision Mitigation 176
Warning function, rear-end collision 199
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 193
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning 206
Warning lights 142
Warning messages, see Check Control 141
Warning systems for collision hazards 174
Warning triangle 393
Warranty 10
Warranty Booklet, see Warranty 10
Washer fluid 382
Washer nozzles, windshield 168
Washing the vehicle 401
Washing, vehicle 401
Water on road 320
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 322
Website, see Internet 8
Welcome lights 161
Welcome screen, driver profiles 62
Welcome window, driver profiles 62
Wheel change 369
Wheels and tires 342
Widgets, MINI Interaction Unit 47

Wi-Fi connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Windows, powered 93
Windscreen, removing condensation, see Defroster 290
Windshield cleaning system, see Wiper system 166
Windshield, removing condensation, see Defroster 290
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 382
Windshield washer nozzles 168
Windshield wipers, see Wiper system 166
Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 387
Winter tires 351
Winter tires, tread, see Tire tread depth 349
Wiper blades, replacing 388
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 382
Wiper, fold-away position 168
Wipers, see Wiper system 166
Wiper system 166
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 301
Wireless Charging tray 301
Wood parts, care 405
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 48
Wrong Way Warning 202

Y

Yield warning 200

01405B8EC69 ue

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

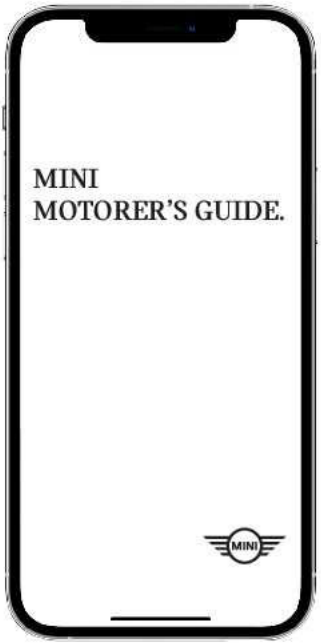
California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

MINI MOTORER'S GUIDE APP.
YOUR DIGITAL VEHICLE INFORMATION.

The MINI Motorer's Guide app explains the equipment of your vehicle and offers further scopes and functions:



Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

All information surrounding navigation, entertainment and communication

Photorealistic animations for various vehicle functions

Keyword search

360° view: Explore your vehicle interactively inside and out

Smart Scan for Apple iPhone: Icon and optical character recognition on the buttons in the vehicle

Available in more than 30 languages

Can be used offline after download

01405B8EC69 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B8EC69 - II/26